

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
Central Archaeological Library
Archaeological Survey of India
JANPATH, NEW DELHI

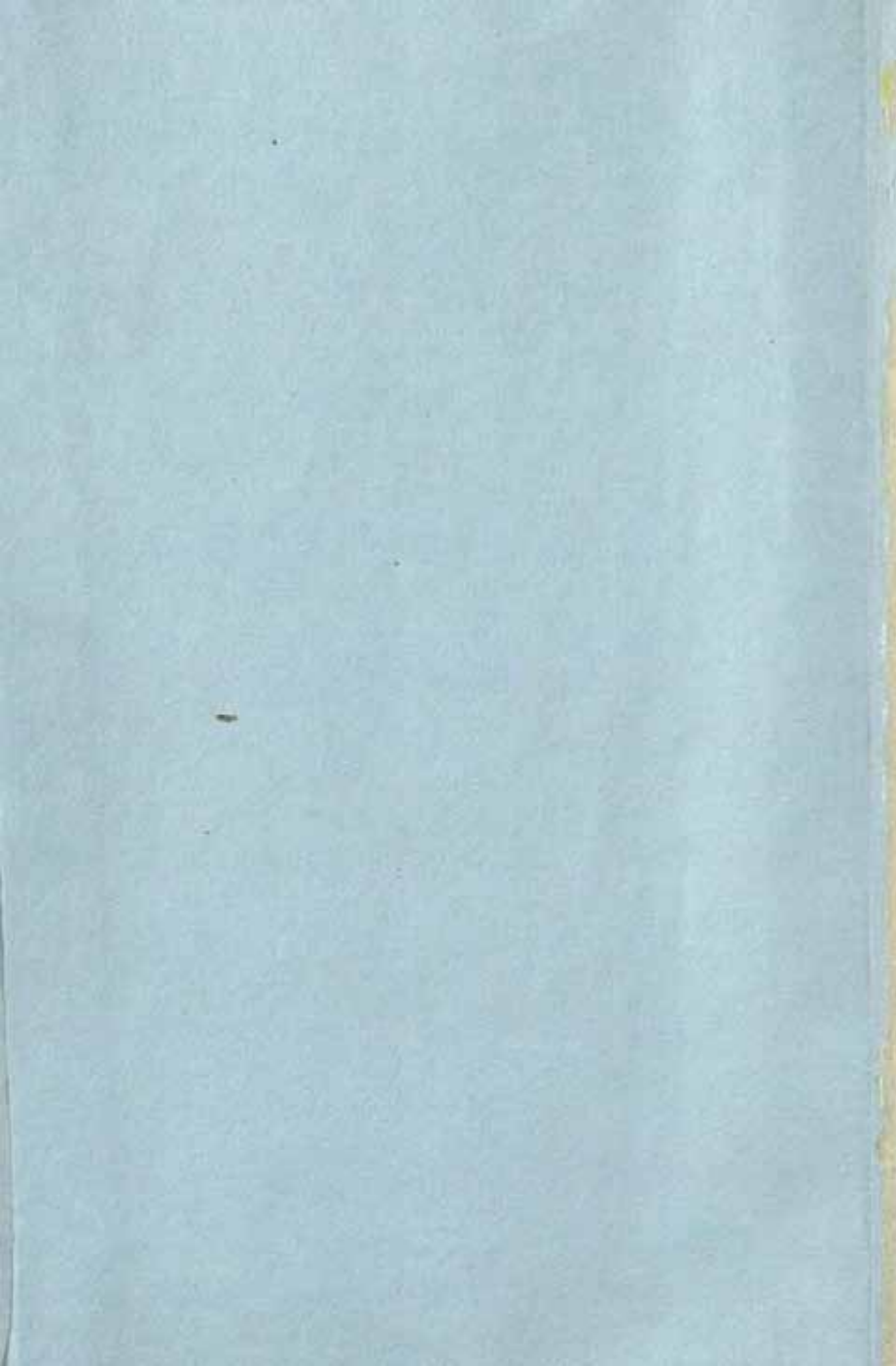
3397

Accession No.

929.79995

Call No.

LAN



THE
MOHAMMADAN
DYNASTIES

CHRONOLOGICAL AND GENEALOGICAL
TABLES WITH HISTORICAL
INTRODUCTIONS

BY
STANLEY LANE-POOLE



3397

LIBRAIRIE ORIENTALISTE
PAUL GEUTHNER

13, RUE JACOB-PARIS VI-e

1925

129.79995

Lam

IMPRIME EN ALLEMAGNE

92/53
K. L. Mukherjee
P. L. Calcutta
10/10/92

PREFACE

THE following Tables of Mohammadan Dynasties have grown naturally out of my twenty years' work upon the Arabic coins in the British Museum. In preparing the thirteen volumes of the *Catalogue of Oriental and Indian Coins* I was frequently at a loss for chronological lists. Prinsep's *Useful Tables*, edited by Edward Thomas, was the only trustworthy English authority I could refer to, and it was often at fault. I generally found it necessary to search for correct names and dates in the Arabic historians, and the lists of dynasties prefixed to the descriptions of their coins in my *Catalogue* were usually the result of my own researches in many Oriental authorities. It has often been suggested to me that a reprint of these lists would be useful to students, and now that the entire *Catalogue* is published I have collected the tables and genealogical trees in the present volume.

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL
LIBRARY, NEW DELHI.

Acc. No. 3397.
Date 13. 9. 55.
Call No. 929. 79995/Lan.

The work is, however, much more than a reprint of these tables. I have not only verified the dates and pedigrees by reference to the Arabic sources and added a number of dynasties which were not represented in the Catalogue of Coins, but I have endeavoured to make the lists more intelligible by prefixing to each a brief historical introduction. These introductions do not attempt to relate the internal history of each dynasty: they merely show its place in relation to other dynasties, and trace its origin, its principal extensions, and its downfall; they seek to define the boundaries of its dominions, and to describe the chief steps in its aggrandisement and in its decline. In the space at my command these facts could only be stated with the utmost brevity, but in the absence of any similar attempt to arrange, define, and explain the relative positions and successions of all the Mohammedan Dynasties in every part of the Muslim world, I hope the manual may be useful to students of history. To the collector of Arabic coins and

Saracenic antiquities I know, from personal experience, that it will be practically indispensable.

The plan I have followed is to arrange the dynasties in geographical order, beginning with Spain, which first threw off the control of the Caliphs of Baghdād. From the extreme west of the kingdoms of Islām I gradually work eastwards, till the end is reached in India and Afghānistān. Certain deviations from the strict geographical order are explained as they arise (see p. 107). Each dynasty has its historical introduction, a chronological list of its princes, and (when necessary) a genealogical tree. The years of the Christian era are given as well as those of the Hijra,* and when the latter occur in the introductory notices they are distinguished by italic

* The Hijra date is of course the more exact, as it is derived from Arabic historians; whilst the date A.D. is merely *the year in which that Hijra year began*, and does not necessarily correspond with it for more than a few months. The correspondence is near enough, however, for practical purposes; and a reference to the conversion tables in my *Catalogue of Indian Coins* will render it more precise. When the Hijra year began at the close of the Christian year the following year A.D. is given.

type. Beneath each chronological list is given [in square brackets] the name of the succeeding dynasty.

The two synoptic Tables of the Mohammadan Dynasties, (1) during and (2) after the Caliphate, will give a general idea of their relative positions, and roughly indicate the comparative extent of their dominions. The numismatist will find almost all the coin-striking dynasties within the limits of time assigned; and the Oriental student in general may find this map of the Mohammadan Empire instructive in its rough delineation of the relative territorial extent of the various dynasties, its assignment of each dynasty to its proper geographical position in the Muslim world, and its attempt to indicate the interweaving of the several houses and the supplanting of one by another in the various kingdoms and provinces of the East. It is interesting to trace the gradual absorption of the vast empire of the Caliphs from the opposite quarters of Africa and the Oxus provinces. We see how the

Omayyads of Cordova were the first to divide the authority of the head of the religion, and then how the Idrīsids, Aghlabids, Ṭulūnids, Ikhshīdids, Fāṭimids, and many others, destroyed the supremacy of the ‘Abbāsīd Caliphs of Baghdād in their Western provinces; and how, meanwhile, the Persian dynasties of Ṭāhirids, Ṣaffārīds, Sāmānīds, Ziyārīds, and Buwayhīds gradually advanced from the Oxus nearer and nearer to the City of Peace, until, when the Buwayhīds entered Baghdād on Dec. 19, 945, the Caliph ruled little more than his own palace, and often could not even rule there. Then a fresh change comes over the scene. The Turkish tribes begin to overrun the Moḥammadan Empire. The Ghaznawīds establish themselves in Afghānistān, and the Seljūks begin their course of conquest, which carries them from Herāt to the Mediterranean, and from Bukhārā to the borders of Egypt. When the Seljūk rule comes to be divided among many branches of the family, and division brings its invariable con-

sequence of weakness, we find several dynasties of Atābegs, or generals of Seljūkiān armies, springing up in the more western provinces of Syria and Diyār-Bakr and Al-'Irāk, whilst the Shāh of Khwārizm founds further East a wide empire, which increases with extraordinary rapidity, and eventually includes the greater part of the countries conquered by the Seljūks as well as that portion of Afghānistān which the Ghaznawids, and after them the Ghōrids, had subdued to their rule. And then comes the greatest change of all. The Mongols come down from their deserts and carry fire and sword over the whole eastern Moḥammadan Empire; the Turkish slaves, or Mamlūks, of Saladin found their famous dynasty in Egypt; the Berber houses of Marīn and Ziyān and Ḥafṣ are established along the north coast of Africa; and the Christians are rapidly recovering Andalusia from the Moors, who had given it so much of its beauty and renown. And here the epoch is chosen for beginning the second table, which begins at

the Mongol invasion and brings the history down to the present day.

Vertically the tables are divided under the headings of the chief divisions of the Mohammadan Empire. The various dynasties have been placed as nearly as possible, not only under their proper geographical head, but in the proper portion of the space allotted to that head: but the difficulties of arrangement and the necessity of economizing space have brought about a certain number of exceptions. The Turkish and Mongol tribes who wandered in Siberia, Turkistān, Kipchak, etc., are altogether omitted, because no exercise of ingenuity availed to provide a convenient place for them.

Horizontally the tables are divided, though the lines are not ruled through, into centuries, an inch representing one hundred years. The date of the beginning is taken at A.H. 41, the year of the foundation of the Omayyad Caliphate, because the Mohammadan Empire

was scarcely organized until this house came into power, and it would have been very difficult to indicate in any satisfactory manner the tide of Muslim conquest with its flow and ebb. Where space permits the names of a few leading kings and caliphs are inserted in the space allotted to their dynasty, especially when such names are familiar to European students.

In the orthography of Oriental names I have thought it best to be precise and consistent, except in some instances of names which have been adopted into the English language and cannot now be amended. Every letter of the Arabic and Persian alphabet is represented as a rule by one character, as shown in the table on p xix. The final *h*, which has an inflexional use, is omitted, since it serves no purpose in Roman writing: but it must be remembered that every name ending in short *a* (as -Baṣra, but not *ā* as Ṣan'ā) has a final *h* in Arabic. To indicate the elision of the *l* in the article *al* before certain letters, (as *d*, *s*, *r*),

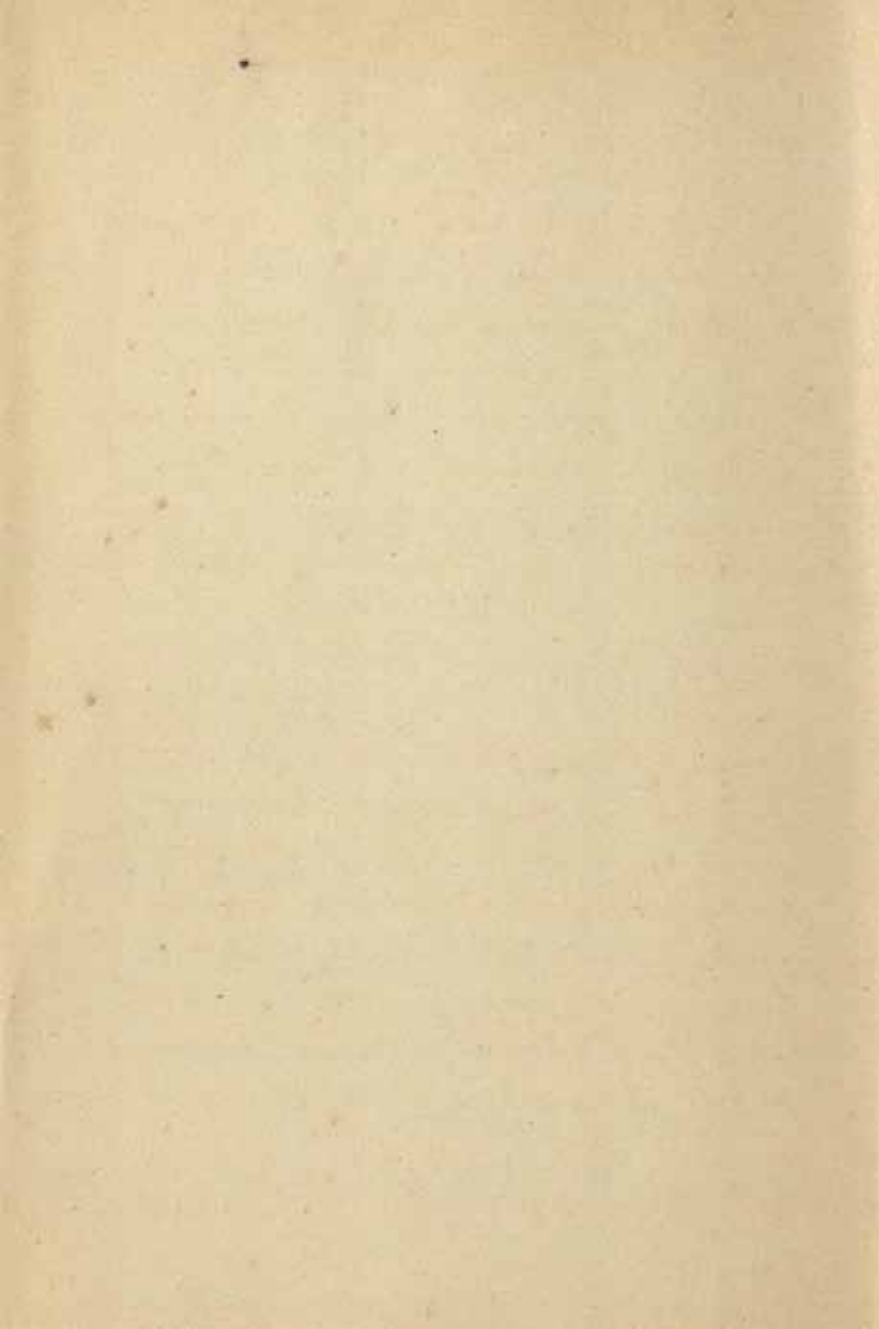
the *l* is printed in italic type: thus 'Abd-al-Raḥmān is to be pronounced 'Abd-ar-Raḥmān.* The *l* is retained (though not pronounced) because it is so written in Arabic. On the other hand I omit the article altogether *before* a name. All the Caliphs and a multitude of other dynasts have names with the prefixed *al*, and a considerable saving of space and some added clearness is gained by omitting it. To show, however, that the article is to be used in the original I retain the hyphen: thus -Ḥākim stands for Al-Ḥākim. The only sign not generally employed by Orientalists is the Greek colon (·) which I use to denote the quiescent *hamza* in the middle of a word: as -Ma'mūn, where there is a catch in the breath between the *a* and *m*.

To students who are not Orientalists, and who wish to be accurate without elaboration in the orthography of

* If the inflexion of the Arabic is to be reproduced the name would be 'Abdu-r-Raḥmān, and would require to be modified in accordance with its government in the sentence; but this would be carrying accuracy to an extreme of pedantry.

of the Faith,' were prefixed to the proper name; and adjectives or participles such as *Al-Manşūr* 'the victorious,' *Al-Sa'id* 'the Fortunate,' *Al-Rashīd* 'the Orthodox,' were appended to the title *Khalīfa* (caliph) or *Malik* (king). Thus we find the caliph Hārūn *al-Rashīd*, 'the Orthodox,' or 'rightly-directed,' caliph Aaron; and Saladin's full title was *Al-Malik Al-Nāşir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Yūsuf b. Ayyūb*, 'The Victorious* King, Redresser of the Faith, Joseph son of Job.' In the case of compound names such as these, the owner is generally called either by the participial title *Al-Nāşir*, *Al-Manşūr*, *Al-Rashīd*, etc., or by the laqab with the termination *al-dīn* ('of the Faith') or *al-dawla* ('of the State'), etc. Thus the brother of Saladin is known both as *Al-Ādil*, 'the Just [King]' and as *Sayf-al-dīn*, 'Sword of the Faith.' On the other hand the Atābegs of *Al-Mōşil* are generally cited by both

* Lit. 'Helping': one who helps the religion of Islām by his victories.



the proper name and the epithet, as 'Imād-al-dīn Zangī, 'Izz-al-dīn Mas'ūd; though the epithet by itself is sufficient. As a general rule the first name given in the chronological lists (omitting the patronymic Abū-such an one) may be used to designate the ruler, to the exclusion of the rest. When there are several similar titles it is better to add the proper name: for instance there are eight Al-Manṣūrs among the Mamlūk Sulṭāns, and it is necessary to distinguish them as Al-Manṣūr Kalā'ūn, Al-Manṣūr Lājīn, etc.

To give a list of the authorities I have used in compiling the lists of dynasties and historical notices would involve publishing a catalogue of an Orientalist's library. I have referred to all the leading Arabic historians, consulted special histories, and derived considerable help from articles in the Asiatic and numismatic journals. Where I am specially indebted to a particular author I refer to his work in a footnote. The coins, however, are the backbone of the book and the

historian's surest documents, and upon them I have relied throughout.

In a work abounding in names and figures it would be strange if misprints and mistakes did not occur. I shall be grateful to any scholar who will convict me of error; for those who 'serve tables' know the danger and annoyance of even slight inaccuracy.

S. L.-P.

THE ATHENÆUM,
1st October, 1893.

TABLE OF TRANSLITERATION

| | | | |
|---|----|---|----|
| ا | . | ض | d |
| ب | b | ط | t |
| پ | p | ظ | z |
| ت | t | ع | ' |
| ث | th | غ | gh |
| ج | j | ف | f |
| چ | ch | ق | k |
| ح | h | ک | k |
| خ | kh | گ | g |
| د | d | ل | l |
| ذ | dh | م | m |
| ر | r | ن | n |
| ز | z | ه | h |
| س | s | و | w |
| ش | sh | ی | y |
| ص | ṣ | | |

VOWELS

| | | | | | |
|---|--------------|---|---|----|---------------|
| ا | a (rarely e) | آ | ā | او | aw (rarely ō) |
| و | u (rarely o) | و | ū | ای | ay |
| ی | i | ی | ī | | |

PREFACE (1925)

The original edition of this work, published in London by Messrs. Constable in 1893, has long been out of print, and the present reproduction is in response to requests from professors and students of oriental history and numismatics, not only in Europe, but especially in the United States of America. The photographic process by which it is now produced does not admit of additions or corrections in the text; otherwise some of the results of the researches of Prof. Sachau, Sir E. Denison Ross, Sir T. Wolsley Haig, and others, particularly in reference to some minor dynasties in Asia Minor, northern Persia, and the Deccan, would have been included. I can only hope that, unrevised, the book may continue to be useful.

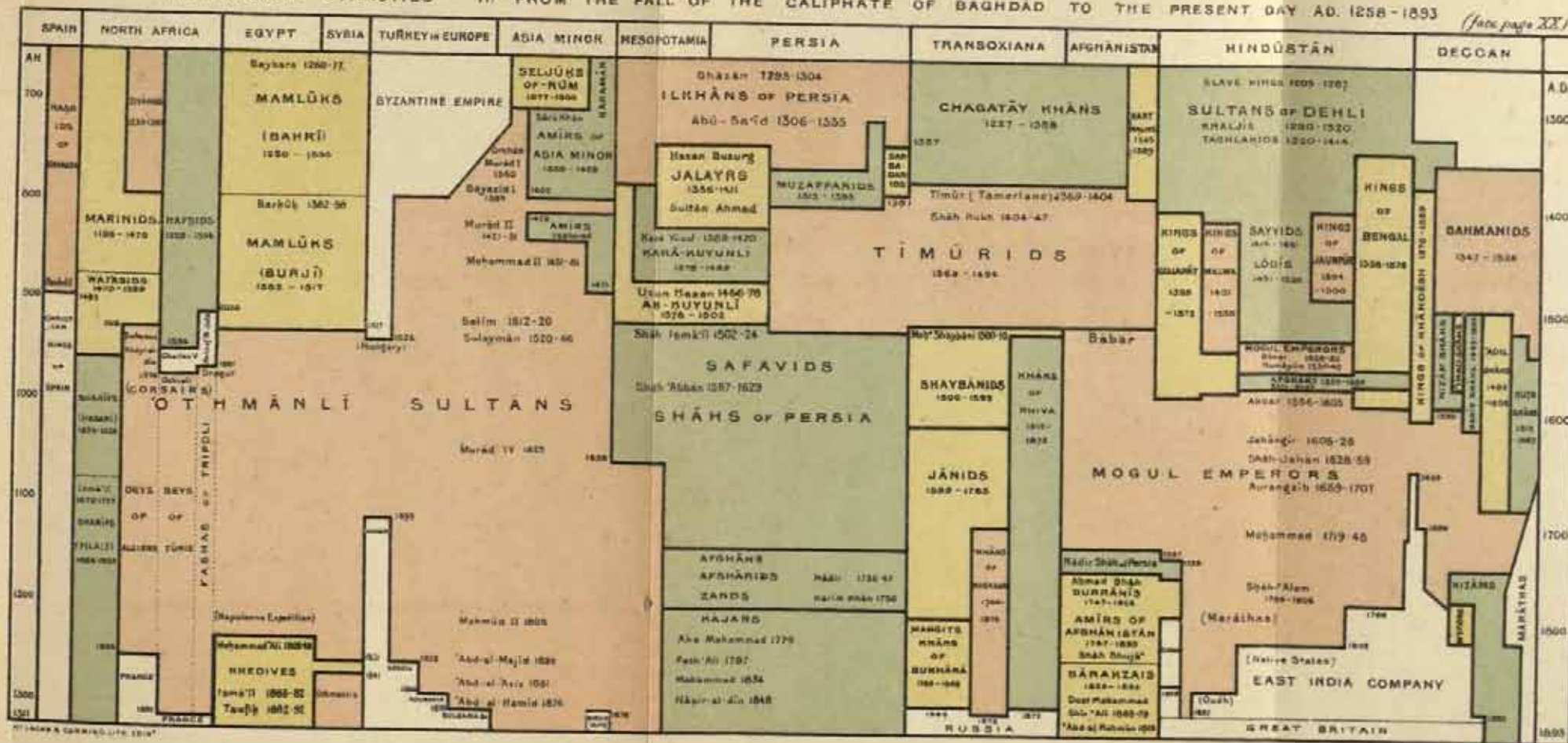
10 Brompton Square,
London, S.W.
1. August, 1925.

STANLEY LANE-POOLE.

MOHAMMADAN DYNASTIES

II. FROM THE FALL OF THE CALIPHATE OF BAGHDAD TO THE PRESENT DAY AD. 1258-1893

(face page XX)



CONTENTS

| | |
|--|-------------------|
| PREFACE | v |
| <i>Table of Dynasties during the Caliphate</i> | <i>face xviii</i> |
| <i>Table of Dynasties after the Caliphate</i> | <i>face xx</i> |
| THE CALIPHS SÆC. VII—XIII | 1 |
| Orthodox | 9 |
| Omayyads | 9 |
| <i>Table of Connexion of Lines of Caliphs</i> | <i>10</i> |
| <i>Genealogy of Omayyads</i> | <i>11</i> |
| 'Abbāsids | 12 |
| <i>Genealogy of 'Abbāsids</i> | <i>14</i> |
| SPAIN SÆC. VIII—XV | 16 |
| Omayyads of Cordova | 21 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | <i>23</i> |
| MINOR SPANISH DYNASTIES (REYES DE TALPAS) | 23 |
| Hammūdids (Malaga) | 23 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | <i>24</i> |

| | |
|---------------------------------------|----|
| Ḥammūdids (Algeciras) | 25 |
| ‘Abbādids (Seville) | 25 |
| Zayrids (Granada) | 25 |
| Jahwarids (Cordova) | 25 |
| Dhū-l-Nūnids (Toledo) | 25 |
| ‘Āmirids (Valencia) | 26 |
| Tojibids (Zaragoza) | 26 |
| Hūdids (Zaragoza) | 26 |
| Denia, Kings of | 26 |
| Naṣrids (Granada) | 28 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 29 |
| NORTH AFRICA SEC. VIII—XIX | 31 |
| Idrīsids (Morocco) | 35 |
| Aghlabids (Tunis) | 36 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 38 |
| Zayrids (Tunis) | 40 |
| Ḥammādids (Algiers) | 40 |
| Almoravides (Morocco, Algiers, Spain) | 41 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 44 |
| Almohades (North Africa, Spain) | 45 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 48 |
| Ḥafṣids (Tunis) | 49 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 52 |
| Ziyānids (Algiers) | 51 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 54 |
| Corsairs | 55 |
| Marinids (Morocco) | 57 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 59 |
| Sharifs (Morocco) | 60 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 62 |

CONTENTS

xxiii

| | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|-----|
| EGYPT AND SYRIA | SÆC. IX—XIX | 65 |
| Ṭūlūnids | | 68 |
| Ikhshidids | | 69 |
| Fātimids | | 70 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | | 72 |
| Ayyūbids | | 74 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | <i>face</i> | 76 |
| Mamlūks | | 80 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | | 82 |
| Khedives | | 84 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | | 85 |
| ARABIA FELIX (YAMAN) | SÆC. IX—XVIII | 87 |
| Ziyādids (Zabīd) | | 90 |
| Yaʿfurids (Šanʿā and Janad) | | 91 |
| Najābids (Zabīd) | | 92 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | | 93 |
| Šulayḥids (Šanʿā) | | 94 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | | 94 |
| Hamdānids (Šanʿā) | | 95 |
| Mahdids (Zabīd) | | 96 |
| Zurayʿids (ʿAden) | | 97 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | | 97 |
| Ayyūbids | | 98 |
| Rasūlids | | 99 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | | 100 |
| Ṭāhirids | | 101 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | | 101 |
| Rasīd Imāms (Saʿda) | | 102 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | <i>face</i> | 102 |
| Imāms of Šanʿā | | 103 |

| | | |
|--|------------|-----|
| SYRIA AND MESOPOTAMIA (Arab Period) | SÆC. X—XII | 105 |
| <i>Classification of Asiatic Dynasties</i> | | 107 |
| <i>Arab tribes</i> | | 109 |
| Ĥamdānids (-Mōšil, Aleppo) | | 111 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | | 113 |
| Mirdāsids (Aleppo) | | 114 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | | 115 |
| ‘Oḡaylids (-Mōšil, etc.) | | 116 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | face | 116 |
| Marwānids (Diyār-Bakr) | | 118 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | | 118 |
| Mazyadids (-Ḥilla) | | 119 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | | 120 |
| PERSIA AND TRANSOXIANA (Persian Period) | SÆC. IX—XI | 121 |
| Dulafids (Kurdistān) | | 125 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | | 125 |
| Sājids (Adharbījān) | | 126 |
| ‘Alids (Ṭabaristān) | | 127 |
| Ṭāhirids (Khurāsān) | | 128 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | | 128 |
| Šaffārids (Persia) | | 129 |
| Sāmānids (Transoxiana and Persia) | | 131 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | | 133 |
| Īlak Khāns (Turkistān) | | 134 |
| Ziyārids (Jurjān) | | 136 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | | 137 |
| Hasanwayhids (Kurdistān) | | 138 |
| Buwayhids (S. Persia and -‘Irāk) | | 139 |
| <i>Geographical distribution</i> | | 143 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | | 144 |
| Kākwayhids (Kurdistān) | | 145 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | | 145 |

CONTENTS

XXV

THE SELJÜKS (Western Asia) S.M.C. XI—XII . . . 147

| | |
|--|-----------------|
| <i>Genealogy</i> | <i>face</i> 152 |
| Great Seljüks | 153 |
| Seljüks of Kirmān | 153 |
| Seljüks of Syria | 154 |
| Seljüks of -Irāk and Kurdistan | 154 |
| Seljüks of -Rūm (Asia Minor) | 155 |
| Dānishmandids (Asia Minor) | 156 |

THE ATĀBEGS (Seljūk Officers) S.M.C. XII—XIII . . . 157

| | |
|---|-----|
| Bārids (Damascus) | 161 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 161 |
| Zangids (Mesopotamia and Syria) | 162 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 164 |
| Begtinids (Arbela) | 165 |
| Ortūqids (Diyār-Bakr) | 166 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 169 |
| Armenia, Shāhs | 170 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 170 |
| Adharbījān, Atābegs. | 171 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 171 |
| Salgharids (Fārs) | 172 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 173 |
| Hazāraspids (Lūrīstān) | 174 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 175 |
| Khwarizm Shāhs | 176 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 178 |
| Ḳutlugh Khāns (Kirmān) | 179 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 180 |

THE SUCCESSORS OF THE SELJŪKS IN THE WEST

| | |
|--|-----------------|
| SÆC. XIV—XIX | 181 |
| Amirs of Asia Minor | <i>face</i> 184 |
| 'Othmānī Sultāns | 186 |
| <i>Table of growth and decay of the Ottoman Empire</i> | 190 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 196 |
| THE MONGOLS SÆC. XIII—XVIII | 199 |
| <i>Sketch-tree of Mongol Dynasties</i> | 206 |
| Great Khāns | 207 |
| Ogotāy's line | 207 |
| Tulāy's line | 211 |
| <i>Genealogy of Great Khāns</i> | <i>face</i> 216 |
| Mongols of Persia | 217 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 221 |
| Golden Horde | 222 |
| Bātā's line (Blue Horde) | 224 |
| Orda's line (White Horde) | 226 |
| Rival Families | 229 |
| <i>Table</i> | 232 |
| Khāns of the Krim (Crimea) | 233 |
| Shaybān's line (Czars of Tiumen, etc.) | 236 |
| <i>Genealogy of the House of Jāī</i> | <i>face</i> 240 |
| Chagutāy Khāns (Transoxiana) | 241 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | <i>face</i> 242 |
| PERSIA SÆC. XIV—XIX | 243 |
| Jalayrs (-'Irāk, etc.) | 246 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 248 |
| Muḥaffarids (Fārs, etc.) | 249 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 250 |

CONTENTS

xxvii

| | |
|--|----------|
| Sarbadārīds (Khurāsān) | 251 |
| Karta (Herāt) | 252 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 252 |
| Ḳarā-Ḳuyunlī (Black Sheep Turkomāns) | 253 |
| Āḳ-Ḳuyunlī (White Sheep Turkomāns) | 254 |
| Shāhs of Persia | 255 |
| Ṣafavīds | 259 |
| Afghāns | 259 |
| Afshārīds | 259 |
| Zands | 260 |
| Ḳājārs | 260 |
| <i>Genealogies</i> | 261-2 |
| TRANSOXIANA S.E.C. XIV—XIX | 263 |
| Timūrīds | 265 |
| <i>Table of the descendants of Timūr</i> | face 268 |
| <i>Table of connexion of the Transoxian Khānates</i> | 269 |
| Shaybānīds | 270 |
| Sub-dynasties of Bukhārā and Samarḳand | 272 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 273 |
| Jānīds | 274 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 276 |
| Mangīts | 277 |
| Khiva, Khāns of | 278 |
| Khoḳand, Khāns of | 280 |
| INDIA AND AFGHĀNISTĀN S.E.C. X—XIX | 281 |
| Ghaznawīds (Afghānistān and Panjāb) | 285 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 290 |
| Ghōrīds (Afghānistān, Hindūstān) | 291 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | face 294 |

| | |
|-------------------------------|-------|
| Sultāns of Dehlī (Hindūstān) | 295 |
| Slave Kings | 299 |
| Khaljīs | 299 |
| Taghlakids | 300 |
| Sayyids | 300 |
| Lōdis | 300 |
| Afghāns | 300 |
| <i>Genealogies</i> | 301-3 |
| PROVINCIAL DYNASTIES OF INDIA | 304 |
| Governors and Kings of Bengal | 305 |
| Sharḡi Kings of Jaunpūr | 309 |
| Kings of Mālwa | 310 |
| Kings of Gujarāt | 312 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 314 |
| Kings of Khāndēsh | 315 |
| Bahmanids (Kulbarga, etc.) | 316 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 319 |
| ‘Imād Shāhs (Berār) | 320 |
| Nizām Shāhs (Aḥmadnagar) | 320 |
| Barid Shāhs (Bīdar) | 321 |
| ‘Ādil Shāhs (Bijāpūr) | 321 |
| Ḳuṭb Shāhs (Golkonda) | 321 |
| Mogul Emperors of Hindūstān | 322 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 329 |
| Amīrs of Afghānistān | 330 |
| Durrānīs | 334 |
| Bārakzais | 334 |
| <i>Genealogy</i> | 335 |
| Index to Rulers | 337 |

I. THE CALIPHS

SÆC. VII—XIII

1. ORTHODOX

2. OMAYYADS

3. 'ABBĀSIDS

I. THE CALIPHS

SÆC. VII—XIII

ON the death of the Prophet Moḥammad in A.D. 632, in the eleventh year after his Flight (Hijra, 622) from Mecca to -Medīna, his father-in-law Abū-Bakr was elected head of the Muslims, with the title of *Khalīfa* or Caliph ('successor'). Three other Caliphs, 'Omar, 'Othmān, and 'Alī, were similarly elected in turn, without founding dynasties, and these first four successors are known as the Orthodox Caliphs (*Al-Khulafā Al-Rāshidūn*). On the murder of 'Alī in 661 (A.H. 40), Mo'āwiya, a descendant of Omayya of the Prophet's tribe of the Quraysh, assumed the Caliphate, and founded the dynasty of the *Omayyad Caliphs*, fourteen in number, whose capital was Damascus. In 750 (132) this dynasty was supplanted (except in Spain) by that of the *Abbāsid Caliphs*, numbering thirty-seven, descended from 'Abbās, an uncle of the Prophet, and having Baghdād (founded 762, 145) as their capital. The 'Abbāsid Caliphate at Baghdād was exterminated by the Mongol Hūlāgū in 1258 (656). A line of their descendants, the *Abbāsid Caliphs of Egypt*, held a shadowy spiritual dignity

at Cairo, until the last of the house was carried to Constantinople by the Ottoman Sulṭān Salīm I., after the conquest of Egypt in 1517, and surrendered his title of Caliph to the conqueror.

At the accession of the first Caliph, Abū-Bakr, the rule of Islām comprised no territory outside Arabia; but during his brief reign of two years the tide of Moḥammadan conquest had already begun to swell. In 633 (12) the Battle of the Chains, followed by other victories, admitted the Muslims into Chaldaea (-'Irāk -'Arabī), and gave them the city of -Hīra. In 634 (13) the Battle of the Yarmuk opened Syria to their arms; Damascus fell in 635 (14); Emesa, Antioch, and Jerusalem in 636; and the conquest of Caesarea completed the subjugation of Syria in 638 (17). Meanwhile the victory of Kādīsīya in 635 (14) was followed by the conquest of Madā'in (Seleucia-Ctesiphon), the old double capital of Chaldaea, 637 (16); Mesopotamia was subdued, and the cities of -Basra and -Kūfa founded; and Khūzistān and Tustar were annexed in 638-40. The decisive Battle of Nahawand in 642 (21) put an end to the Sāsānid dynasty, and gave all Persia to the Muslims. By 661 (41) they were at Herāt, and soon carried their arms throughout Afghānistān and as far as the Indus, where they established a government in

Sind. In 674 (54) they occupied Bukhārā, and two years later Samarkand, but these early raids in Transoxiana were not converted into settled conquests until 711 (93). On the East the Caliphate had reached its utmost limits in little more than forty years after the Muslims first led a campaign outside Arabia.

On the West their progress was slower. In 641 (20) Egypt was conquered, and by 647 (26) the Barbary coast was overrun up to the gates of Roman Carthage; but the wild Berber population was more difficult to subdue than the luxurious subjects of the Sāsānids of Persia or the Greeks of Syria and Egypt. Ḳayrawān was founded as the African capital in 670 (50); Carthage fell in 693 (74), and the Arabs pushed their arms as far as the Atlantic. From Tangier they crossed into Spain in 710 (91), and the conquest of the Gothic kingdom was complete on the fall of Toledo in 712. Southern France was overrun in 725, and in spite of Charles the Hammer's victory near Tours in 732 (114), the Muslims continued to hold Narbonne and to ravage Burgundy and the Dauphiné. Thus in the West the Caliphate attained its widest extent within a century after its commencement.

To the North, the Greeks retained Anatolia, which

never belonged to the Caliphate, but the Muslims invaded Armenia, and reached Erzerûm about 700. Cyprus had been annexed as early as 649 (28), and Constantinople was several times besieged from 670 (50) onwards.

Thus the empire of the Caliphs at its widest extended from the Atlantic to the Indus, and from the Caspian to the cataracts of the Nile. So vast a dominion could not long be held together. The first step towards its disintegration began in Spain, where 'Abd-al-Rahmân, a member of the suppressed Omayyad family, was acknowledged as an independent sovereign in 755 (138), and the 'Abbâsid Caliphate was renounced for ever. Thirty years later Idris, a great-grandson of the Caliph 'Ali, and therefore equally at variance with 'Abbāsids and Omayyads, founded an 'Alid dynasty in Morocco, with Tudgha for its capital, 788 (172). The rest of the North African coast was practically lost to the Caliphate when the Aghlabid governor established his authority at Kayrawân in 800 (184). In the following century, Egypt, together with Syria, attained independence under the rule of Ibn-Ṭūlūn, by the year 877 (264). It is true that after the collapse of the Ṭūlūnids, governors were again appointed over Syria and Egypt by the 'Abbâsid Caliphs for thirty years; but in 934 (323) -Ikhsîd founded

his dynasty, and thenceforward no country west of the Euphrates ever recognized the temporal authority of the Caliphs of Baghdād, though their spiritual title was generally acknowledged on the coins and in the public prayer (*khuṣṣa*), except in Spain and Morocco.

In the East, the disintegration of the 'Abbāsid empire proceeded with equal rapidity. The famous general of -Ma'mūn, Ṭāhir Dhū-l-Yamīnayn, on being appointed Viceroy of the East in 819 (204), became to most intents independent; and his house, and the succeeding dynasties of the Saffārids, Sāmānids, and Ghaznawids, whilst admitting the spiritual lordship of the Caliphs, reserved to themselves all the power and wealth of the eastern provinces of Persia and Transoxiana. From the middle of the ninth century the 'Abbāsids had fallen more and more under the baneful influence of mercenary Turkish bodyguards and servile *maires du palais*; and the absorption of the whole of their remaining territory by the Buwayhids, who occupied even the 'City of Peace,' Baghdād itself, in 945 (334), was little more than a change in their alien tyrants. From this date the Caliphs merely held a court, but governed no empire, until their extinction by the Mongols in 1258 (656). Occasionally, however, as in the Caliphate of -Nāṣir, they

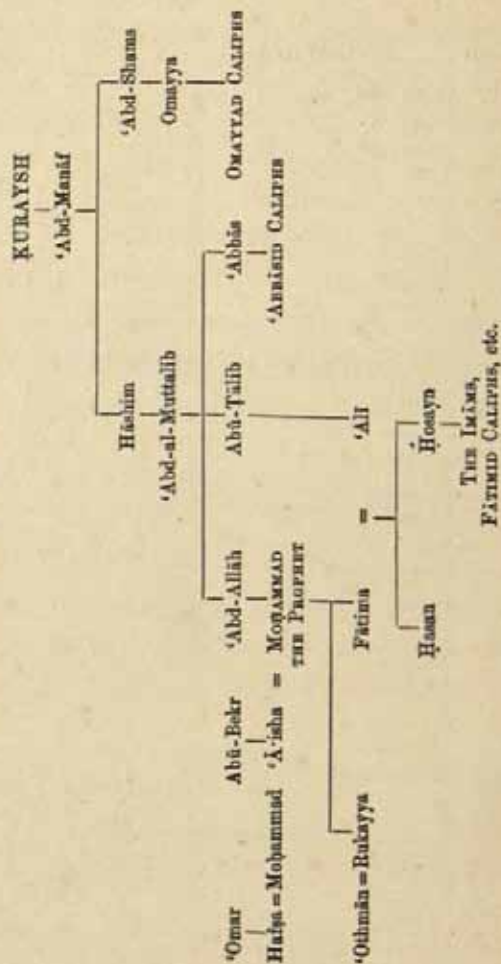
extended their authority outside the palace walls, and even ruled the whole province of Arabian -'Irāk (Chaldaea).

In classifying the dynasties which thus absorbed the 'Abbāsid empire, a geographical system is both natural and convenient. Beginning with the earliest secession, Spain, the dynasties of Andalusia and North Africa are placed first; those of Egypt and Syria come next; then follow the Persian and Transoxiane dynasties; whilst those of India, which spread over a dominion never subdued to the Caliphate, are placed last. In dealing with the Persian and Syrian sections, however, the geographical arrangement is necessarily modified, since the wide sweep of the Seljūks and Mongols temporarily obliterated the older divisions and formed fresh starting points in the dynastic history. The relative positions, both geographical and chronological, of the various dynasties are shown in the table prefixed to the volume.

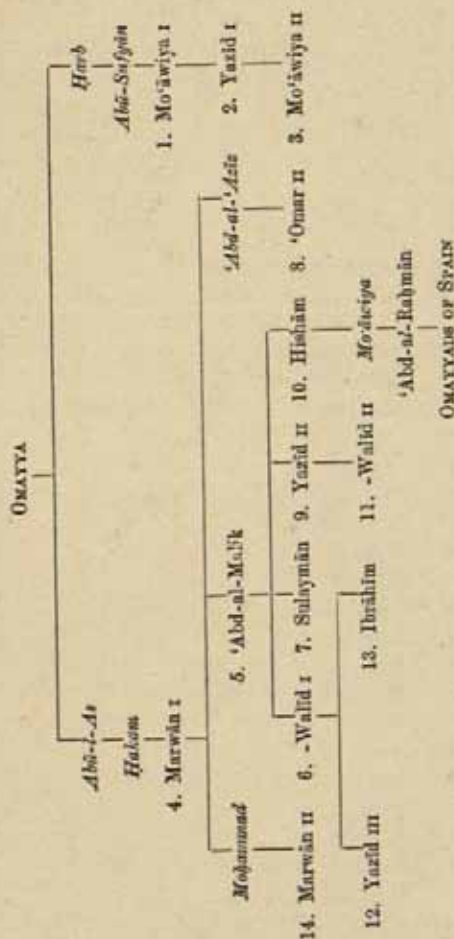
| A.H. | | A.D. |
|--------------------------|---------------------|---------|
| 11—40 | 1. ORTHODOX CALIPHS | 632—661 |
| 11 | Abū-Bakr | 632 |
| 13 | ‘Omar | 634 |
| 23 | ‘Othmān | 644 |
| 35 | ‘Alī | 656 |
| —40 | | —661 |
| [Succeeded by Omayyads.] | | |

| A.H. | | A.H. |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------|---------|
| 41—132 | 2. OMAYYAD CALIPHS | 661—750 |
| 41 | Mo‘āwiya I | 661 |
| 60 | Yazīd I | 680 |
| 64 | Mo‘āwiya II | 683 |
| 64 | Marwān I | 683 |
| 65 | ‘Abd-al-Malik | 685 |
| 86 | Walid | 705 |
| 96 | Sulaymān | 715 |
| 99 | ‘Omar | 717 |
| 101 | Yazīd II | 720 |
| 105 | Hisham | 724 |
| 125 | Walid II | 743 |
| 126 | Yazīd III | 744 |
| 126 | Ibrāhīm | 744 |
| 127 | Marwān II | 744 |
| —132 | | —750 |
| [‘Abbasids; Omayyads of Cordova] | | |

CONNECTION OF THE LINES OF CALIPHS



OMAYYAD CALIPHS



| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|-----------------------|----------|
| 132—656 | 3. 'ABBĀSID CALIPHS | 750—1258 |
| 132 | -Saffāh | 750 |
| 136 | -Maṣṣūr | 754 |
| 158 | -Mahdī | 775 |
| 169 | -Hādī | 785 |
| 170 | -Rashīd | 786 |
| 193 | -Amīn | 809 |
| 198 | -Ma'mūn | 813 |
| 218 | -Mu'taṣim | 833 |
| 227 | -Wāthiq | 842 |
| 232 | -Mutawakkil | 847 |
| 247 | -Muntaṣir | 861 |
| 248 | -Musta'in | 862 |
| 251 | -Mu'tazz | 866 |
| 255 | -Muhtadī | 869 |
| 256 | -Mu'tamid | 870 |
| 279 | -Mu'tadid | 892 |
| 289 | -Muḳtafi | 902 |
| 295 | -Muḳtadir | 908 |
| 320 | -Kāhir | 932 |
| 322 | -Rāḍī | 934 |
| 329 | -Muttakī | 940 |
| 333 | -Mustakfi | 944 |
| 334 | -Muṭi' | 946 |
| 363 | -Ṭā'i' | 974 |
| 381 | -Kādir | 991 |
| 422 | -Kā'im | 1031 |
| 467 | -Muḳtadī | 1075 |
| 487 | -Mustaḡhir | 1094 |
| 512 | -Mustarshid | 1118 |
| 529 | -Rashid | 1135 |

| | | | | | | | | |
|------|------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| 530 | -Muḩtafi | . | . | . | . | . | . | 1136 |
| 555 | -Mustanjid | . | . | . | . | . | . | 1160 |
| 566 | -Mustaḩi | . | . | . | . | . | . | 1170 |
| 675 | -Nâsir | . | . | . | . | . | . | 1180 |
| 622 | -Zâhir | . | . | . | . | . | . | 1225 |
| 623 | -Mustanşir | . | . | . | . | . | . | 1226 |
| 640 | -Musta'şim | . | . | . | . | . | . | 1242 |
| —656 | | | | | | | | —1258 |

[*Idriside, Aghlabide, Tûlûnide, Tûkiride, Şaffûride, Buwayhids,*
ḩamdânide, Ghaznawide.]

‘ABBĀSID CALIPHS

‘Abbās

‘Abd-Allāh

‘Alī

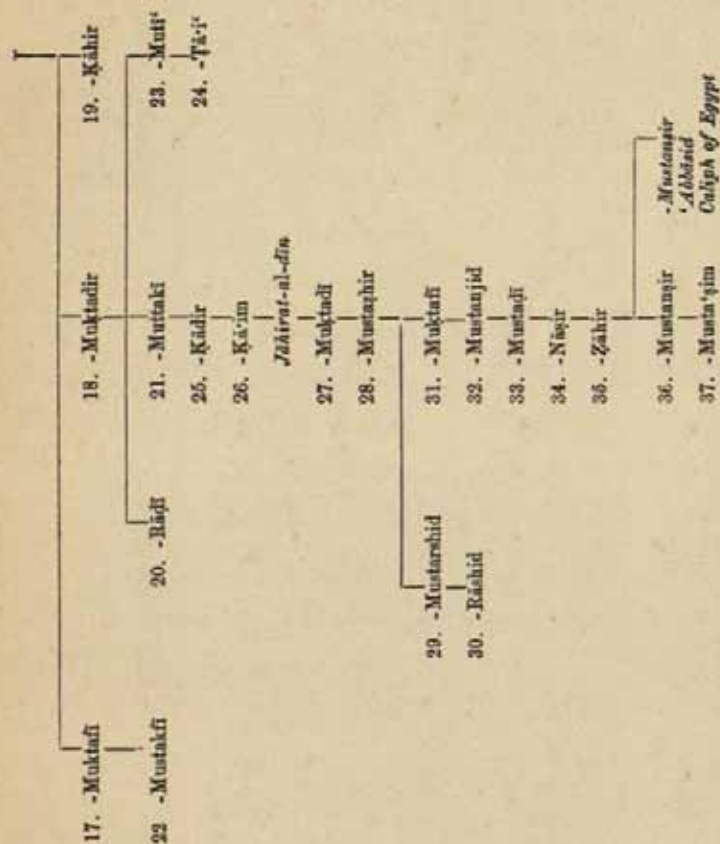
Moḥammad
‘Abd-Allāh
Mūsā
Sulaymān

Ibrāhīm
1. -Saʿīd
2. -Manṣūr
3. -Mahdī

4. -Hādī
5. -Rashīd
6. -Amin
7. -Marʾūn
8. -Muʿtaṣim
9. -Wāthiq
10. -Mutawakkil
11. -Muntaṣir
12. -Mustaʿīn
13. -Muʿtazz
14. -Muḥtadī
15. Muʿtamid
16. -Muʿtadid

Ibrāhīm
(rival Caliph, 202-3)

12. -Mustaʿīn
14. -Muḥtadī
15. Muʿtamid
16. -Muʿtadid



II. SPAIN

SÆC. VIII—XV

4. OMAYYADS OF CORDOVA

MINOR DYNASTIES

5. HAMMŪDIDS (MALAGA)

6. HAMMŪDIDS (ALGECIRAS)

7. 'ABBĀDIDS (SEVILLE)

8. ZAYRIDS (GRANADA)

9. JAHWARIDS (CORDOVA)

10. DHU-L-NŪNIDS (TOLEDO)

11. 'ĀMIRIDS (VALENCIA)

12. TOJIBIDS AND HŪDIDS (ZARAGOZA)

13. KINGS OF DENIA

ALMORAVIDES (*See NORTH AFRICA*)

ALMOHADES " " "

14. NASRIDS (GRANADA)

II. SPAIN

SÆC. VIII—XV

Spain was conquered by the Muslims in 710–12 (91–3), and ruled, like the other provinces of the Moḥammadan empire, by a series of governors appointed by the Omayyad Caliphs, until 756 (138). Among the few members of the Omayyad family who escaped from the general massacre which signalized the accession of the ‘Abbāsids was ‘Abd-al-Raḥmān, a grandson of Hishām, the tenth Omayyad Caliph. After some years of wandering, he took advantage of the disordered state of Spain, which was divided by the jealousies of the Berbers and the various Arab tribes, to offer himself as king. He met with an encouraging response, and landed in Andulasia at the close of 755. In the following year (138) he received the homage of most of Moḥammadan Spain, and successfully repelled an invasion of ‘Abbāsīd troops. His successors maintained themselves on the throne of Cordova with varying success against the encroachments of the Christians of the north, and the insurrections of the many factions among their own

subjects, for two centuries and a half. They contented themselves with the titles of Amīr and Sulṭān, until 'Abd-al-Raḥmān III adopted that of Caliph in 929 (317). He was the greatest of the line, and not only exercised absolute sway over his subjects and kept the Christian kings of Leon, Castile and Navarre in check, but warded off the chief danger of Moorish Spain, invasion from Africa, and maintained his authority on the Mediterranean by powerful fleets. After his death, no great Omayyad carried on his work, but the famous minister and general, Almanzor (Al-Manṣūr), preserved the unity of the kingdom. After this, at the beginning of the eleventh century, Moorish Spain became a prey to factions and adventurers, and a number of petty dynasties arose, who are known in Spanish history as the *Reyes de Taifas* or Party Kings. Most of these were absorbed by the most distinguished of their number, the cultured house of the 'Abbāids of Seville, who were the leaders of the Spanish Moors against the encroachments of the Christians, until they were forced to summon the *Almoravides* to their aid, and discovered that they had invited a master instead of an ally.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|---|----------|
| 138—422 | 4. OMAYYADS OF CORDOVA | 756—1031 |
| 138 | 'Abd-al-Rahmān I | 756 |
| 172 | Hishām I | 788 |
| 180 | -Hakam I | 796 |
| 206 | 'Abd-al-Rahmān II | 822 |
| 238 | Moḥammad I | 852 |
| 273 | -Mundhir | 886 |
| 275 | 'Abd-Allāh | 888 |
| 309 | 'Abd-al-Rahmān III. (Al-Khalifa Al-Nāṣir) . . | 912 |
| 350 | -Hakam II -Mustanṣir | 961 |
| 366 | Hishām II -Mu'ayyad | 976 |
| 399 | Moḥammad II -Mahdī | 1009 |
| 400 | Sulaymān -Musta'in | 1009 |
| 400 | Moḥammad II (again) | 1010 |
| 400 | Hishām II (again) | 1010 |
| 403 | Sulaymān (again) | 1013 |
| 407 | 'Alī b. Hammūd * | 1016 |
| 408 | 'Abd-al-Rahmān IV -Murtadā | 1018 |
| 408 | -Kāsim b. Hammūd | 1018 |
| 412 | Yahyā b. 'Alī | 1021 |
| 413 | -Kāsim (again) | 1022 |
| 414 | 'Abd-al-Rahmān V -Mustaṣhir | 1023 |
| 414 | Moḥammad III -Mustakfi | 1024 |
| 416 | Yahyā (again) | 1025 |
| 418 | Hishām III -Mu'tadd | 1027 |
| —422 | | —1031 |

[Minor Dynasties]

* Of the dynasty of Hammūdids. See Table 5.

OMAYYADS OF CORDOVA

*Hishām, 10th Omayyad Caliph**Mo'awiyah*

1. 'Abd-ul-Rahmān I

2. Hishām I

3. -Hakam I

3. 'Abd-ul-Rahmān II

5. Moḥammad I

6. Mundhir

7. 'Abd-Allāh

Moḥammad

8. 'Abd-ul-Rahmān III

9. -Hakam II

*'Abd-ul-Jabbār**Hishām**Sulaymān*

-Hakam

*'Abd-ul-Malik**Moḥammad**'Obayd-Allāh**'Abd-ul-Rahmān*

11. Moḥammad II

14. 'Abd-ul-Rahmān V

12. Sulaymān

13. 'Abd-ul-Rahmān IV

16. Hishām III

16. Moḥammad III

MINOR SPANISH DYNASTIES *

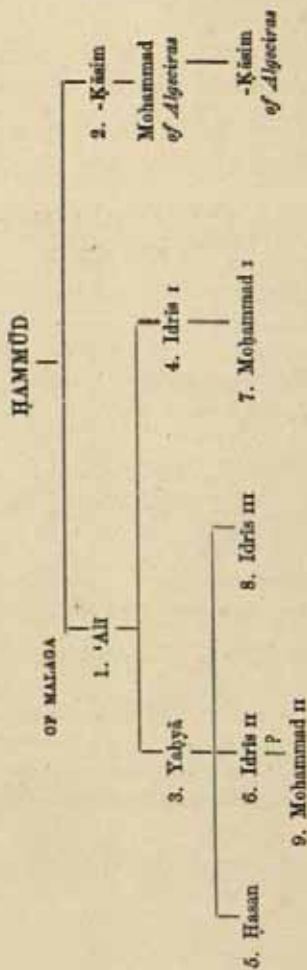
(REYES DE TAIFAS)

| A. H. | | A. D. |
|---------|----------------------------------|-----------|
| 407—449 | 5. HAMMŪDIDS † (MALAGA) | 1016—1057 |
| 407 | 'Alī - Nāṣir | 1016 |
| 408 | -Ḳāsim - Ma'mūn | 1018 |
| 412 | Yahyā Mu'tali | 1021 |
| 413 | -Ḳāsim (again) | 1022 |
| 416 | Yahyā (again) | 1025 |
| 427 | Idris I - Muta'ayyad | 1035 |
| 431 | Hasan - Mustanṣir | 1039 |
| 434 | Idris II - 'Ālī | 1042 |
| 438 | Moḥammad I - Mahdī | 1046 |
| 444 | Idris III - Muwaffaq | 1052 |
| 445 | Idris II (again) | 1053 |
| 446 | Moḥammad II - Musta'li | 1054— |
| —449 | | 1057 |
| | [Almoravides] | |

* In the tables and trees of these dynasties Codera's *Tratado de Numismática Árabe-Española* (1879) has been generally followed: which see for lists of various petty rulers here omitted.

† The Hammūdids took the title of Caliph or 'Prince of the Faithful.'

HAMMŪDIDS



| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|---------------------------|-----------|
| 431—450 | 6. ḤAMMŪDIDS (ALGECIRAS) | 1039—1058 |
| 431 | Moḥammad -Mahdī | 1039 |
| 440 | -Ḳāsim -Wāthiq | 1048 |
| —450 | | —1058 |

[*Abbāside of Seville*]

| | | |
|---------|---|-----------|
| 414—484 | 7. 'ABBĀDIDS (SEVILLE) | 1023—1091 |
| 414 | Abū-l-Ḳāsim Moḥammad I. b. Ismā'il | 1023 |
| 434 | Abū-'Amr 'Abbād -Mu'taḍid b. Moḥammad I | 1042 |
| 461— | Abū-l-Ḳāsim Moḥammad II -Mu'tamid b. 'Abbād | 1068— |
| 484 | | 1091 |

[*Almoravides*]

| | | |
|---------|---|-----------|
| 403—483 | 8. ZAYRIDS (GRANADA) | 1012—1090 |
| 403 | Zāwī b. Zayrī | 1012 |
| 410 | Ḥabbūṣ | 1019 |
| 430 | Bādīs b. Ḥabbūṣ -Muẓaffar -Nāsir | 1038 |
| 466 | 'Abd-Allāh b. Sayf-al-dawla Bulukkīn b. Bādīs | 1073 |
| 483 | Tamīm b. Bulukkīn | 1090 |

[*Almoravides*]

| | | |
|---------|--|-----------|
| 422—461 | 9. JAHWARIDS (CORDOVA) | 1031—1068 |
| 422 | Abū-l-Ḥazam Jahwar | 1031 |
| 435 | Abū-l-Walid Moḥammad b. Jahwar | 1043 |
| 450— | 'Abd-al-Malik b. Moḥammad | 1058— |
| 461 | | 1068 |

[*Abbāside of Seville*]

| | | |
|---------|--|-------|
| 427—478 | 10. DHU-L-NŪNIDS (TOLEDO) | |
| 427 | Ismā'il -Zāfir | 1035 |
| 429 | Yahyā -Ma'mūn b. Ismā'il | 1037 |
| 467— | Yahyā -Ḳādir b. Ismā'il b. -Ma'mūn | 1074— |
| 478 | | 1085 |

[*Alfonso VI of Leon*]

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|-------------------------------------|-----------|
| 412—478 | 11. 'ĀMIRIDS (VALENCIA) | 1021—1085 |
| 412 | 'Abd-al-'Aziz -Manṣūr | 1021 |
| 453 | 'Abd-al-Malik -Muṣaffar | 1061 |
| 457 | -Ma'mān of Toledo | 1065 |
| 467 | -Ḳādir " " | 1074 |
| 468 | Abū-Bakr b. 'Abd-al-Malik | 1075 |
| 478 | -Ḳāḍī 'Othmān b. Abū-Bakr | 1085 |
| " | -Ḳādir of Toledo | " |

[*Christians (the Cid): then Almoravides*]

| | | |
|---------|---|-----------|
| 410—536 | 12. TOJIBIDS & HŪDIDS (ZARAGOZA) | 1019—1141 |
| 410 | Mundhir -Manṣūr b. Yabyā -Tojibī | 1019 |
| 414 | Yabyā -Muṣaffar b. Mundhir | 1023 |
| 420 | Mundhir b. Yabyā | 1029 |
| 431 | Sulaymān -Musta'in b. Hūd | 1039 |
| 438 | Aḥmad Sayf-al-dawla -Muḥtadīr b. Sulaymān | 1046 |
| 474 | Yūsuf -Mu'tamīn b. Aḥmad | 1081 |
| 478 | Aḥmad -Musta'in b. Yūsuf | 1085 |
| 503 | 'Abd-al-Malik 'Imād-al-dawla b. Aḥmad | 1109 |
| 513— | Aḥmad Sayf-al-dawla b. 'Abd-al-Malik | 1119— |
| 536 | | 1141 |

[*Christians*]

| | | |
|---------|--|-----------|
| 408—468 | 13. KINGS OF DENIA | 1017—1075 |
| 408 | Mujāhid b. Yūsuf | 1017 |
| 436 | 'Alī Iḳbāl-al-dawla b. Mujāhid | 1044— |
| —468 | | 1075 |

[*Hūdids of Zaragoza*]

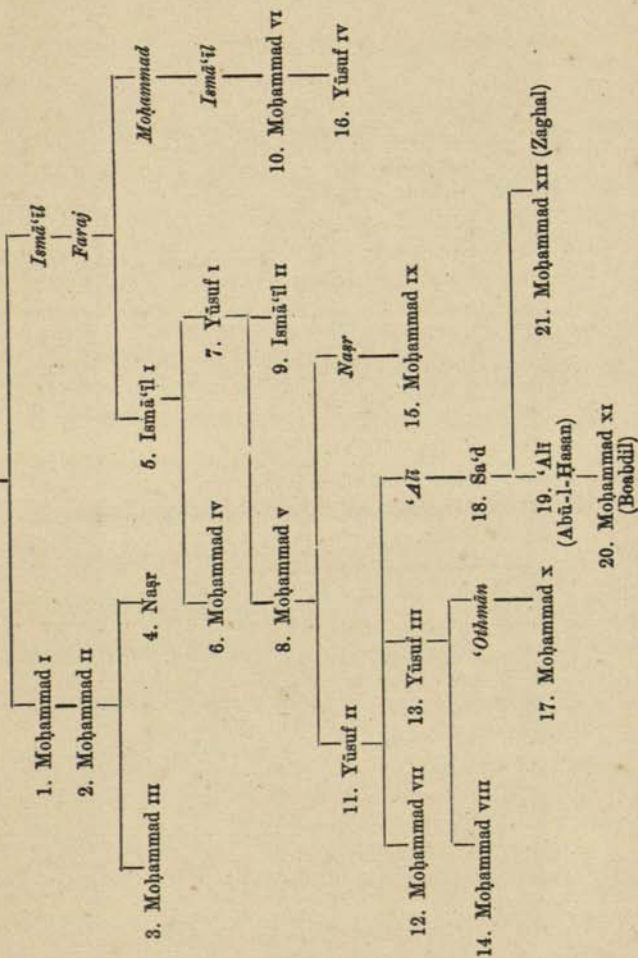
In 1086 the *Almoravides* came to Spain, summoned by the 'Abbādids to help them against Alfonso of Leon. In 1090 they came again, and this time they conquered the whole of Moorish Spain, and made it a province of their African empire (see Table 19). Their successors in Africa, the *Almohades*, similarly annexed the Spanish province in 1145-50 (see Table 20). A few petty dynasties sprang up at Valencia and Murcia between these two invasions, and during the decline of the Almohades' power; but the only important line was that of the Naṣrids or Banū-Naṣr of Granada, whose cultivated Court and beautiful palace, Alhambra, for a time revived the splendour and distinction of Moorish Spain as it had been in the days of the great Caliph 'Abd-al-Raḥmān III. Their long struggle against the advancing Christians, however, ended in the fall of Granada before the assaults of Ferdinand and Isabella in 1492, and with the flight of Boabdil the last remnant of Mohammadan rule vanished from the Peninsula.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|--|-----------|
| 629—897 | 14. NAŠRIDS (GRANADA) | 1232—1492 |
| 629 | Moḥammad I - Ghālib | 1232 |
| 671 | Moḥammad II - Faḳīh | 1273 |
| 701 | Moḥammad III | 1302 |
| 708 | Naṣr Abū-l-Juyūsh | 1309 |
| 713 | Ismā'il I Abū-l-Walid | 1314 |
| 725 | Moḥammad IV | 1325 |
| 733 | Yūsuf Abū-l-Ḥajjāj | 1333 |
| 755 | Moḥammad V - Ghānī | 1354 |
| 760 | Ismā'il II | 1359 |
| 761 | Moḥammad VI Abū-Sa'id | 1360 |
| 763 | Moḥammad V (again) | 1362 |
| 793 | Yūsuf II | 1391 |
| 794 | Moḥammad VII | 1392 |
| 810 | Yūsuf III Abū-l-Ḥajjāj - Nāṣir | 1407 |
| 820 | Moḥammad VIII - Mutamaṣṣik | 1417 |
| 831 | Moḥammad IX - Ṣaghīr | 1427 |
| 833 | Moḥammad VIII (again) | 1429 |
| 835 | Yūsuf IV | 1432 |
| 835 | Moḥammad VIII (third time) | 1432 |
| 848 | Moḥammad X | 1444 |
| 849 | Sa'd - Musta'in | 1445 |
| 850 | Moḥammad X (again) | 1446 |
| 857 | Sa'd (again) | 1453 |
| 866 | 'Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan | 1461 |
| 887 | Moḥammad XI (Boabdil) | 1482 |
| 888 | 'Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan (again) | 1483 |
| 890 | Moḥammad XII (Zaghal) | 1485 |
| 892 | Moḥammad XI (Boabdil, again) | 1486 |
| —897 | | —1492 |

[*Ferdinand and Isabella of Castile*]

NAŞIDS OF GRANADA

Yūsuf b. NAŞR



III. NORTH AFRICA

SÆC. VIII—XIX

15. IDRĪSIDS (MOROCCO)

16. AGHLABIDS (TUNIS, ETC.)

FĀṬIMIDS (*See EGYPT*)

17. ZAYRIDS (TUNIS)

18. HAMMĀDIDS (ALGIERS)

19. ALMORAVIDES (MOROCCO, ALGIERS, SPAIN)

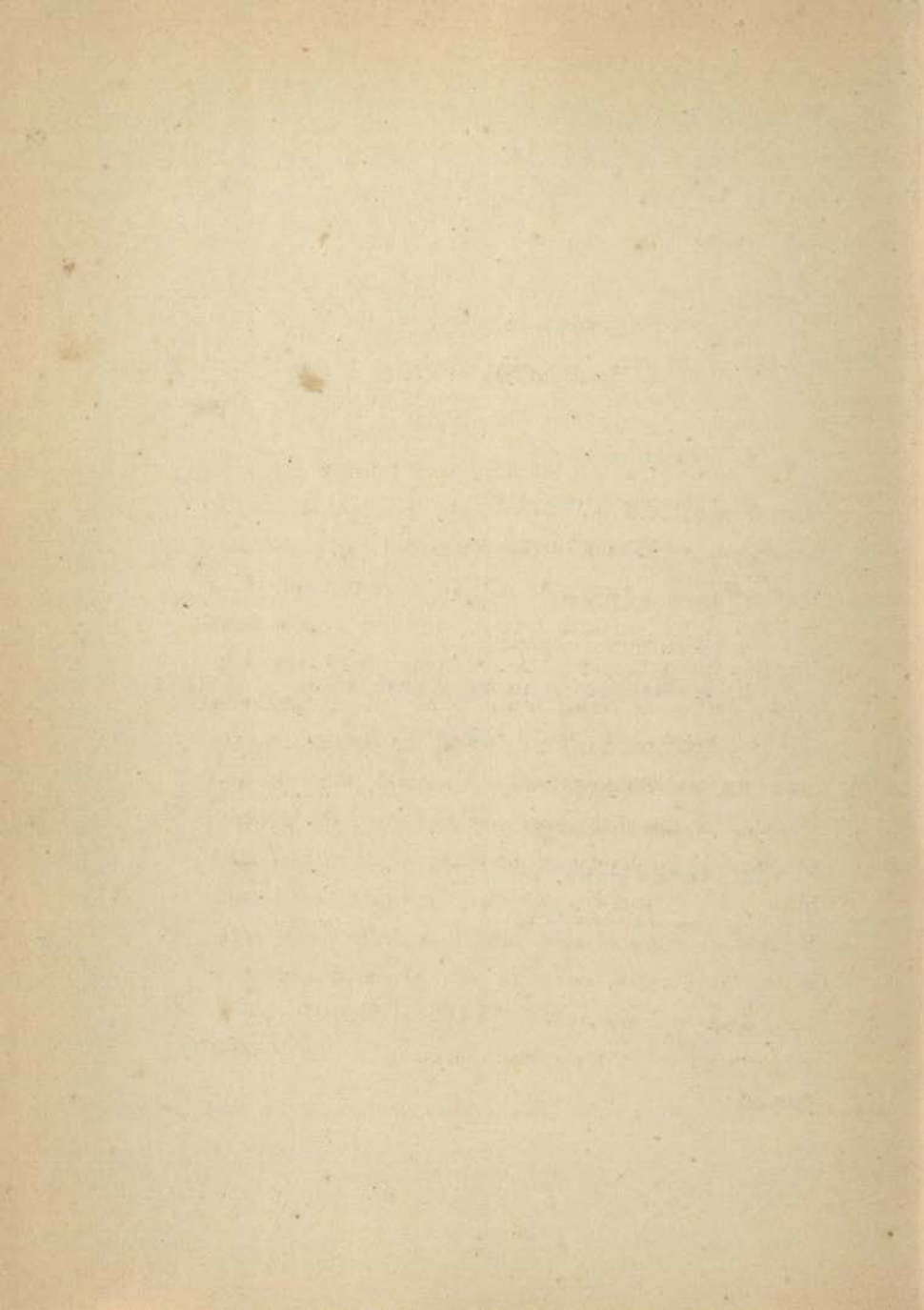
20. ALMOHADES (NORTH AFRICA, SPAIN)

21. MARĪNIDS (MOROCCO)

22. ZIYĀNIDS (ALGIERS)

23. ḤAFṢIDS (TUNIS)

24. SHARĪFS (MOROCCO)



III. NORTH AFRICA

SÆC. VIII—XIX

The narrow strip of habitable land between the great African desert and the Mediterranean Sea was always the nursery of schismatics. The superstitious and credulous Berbers offered a favourable soil for the germination of all varieties of Moḥammadan heresy. Any prophet who found himself without honour in his own country had only to go to the Berbers of North Africa to be sure of a welcome and an enthusiastic following; whilst the distance from the centre of the Caliphate and the natural turbulence and warlike character of the population predisposed the 'Abbāsids to ignore the disloyalty of provinces which profited them little and cost them ceaseless energy and expense to control. Hence the success of such strange developments of Islām as the Almoravides and Almohades, the establishment of 'Alid dynasties such as the Idrīsids and Fāṭimids, and in our own time the widespread authority of the Prophet-Sanūsī.

North Africa had been subdued by the Arabs with difficulty between the years 647 (26) and 700, and had since been ruled with varying success by the lieutenants of the Caliphs. So long as Yazīd b. Ḥātim, the popular and energetic governor of Ḳayrawān for the 'Abbāsids, lived, the tendency of the Berbers to foster rebellion and schism was held in check, but on his death in 787 (170) North Africa became a prey to anarchy, which was only suppressed by allowing the local dynasties, which then sprang up, to exercise independent authority. After the year 800 the 'Abbāsid Caliphs had no influence whatever west of the frontier of Egypt.

A.H.
172—375

15. IDRĪSIDS
(MOROCCO)

A.D.
788—985

In the year 785 (168) an insurrection of the partisans of the family of 'Alī took place at -Medina. Among those who took part in it was Idrīs b. 'Abd-Allāh b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan b. 'Alī b. Abū-Ṭālib. On the suppression of the revolt Idrīs fled to Egypt, and thence to Morocco where he founded an 'Alid dynasty in the region about Ceuta. His coins bear the names of the towns of Tudgha and -Walīla. The Idrīsīd dominions reached their greatest extent about 860, and gradually dwindled until the extinction of the dynasty in 985 (375). Some of the dates are not recorded by Ibn-Khaldūn.

| | | |
|-----|---|-----|
| 172 | Idrīs I | 788 |
| 177 | Idrīs II b. Idrīs I | 793 |
| 213 | Moḥammad b. Idrīs II | 828 |
| 221 | 'Alī I b. Moḥammad | 836 |
| 234 | Yaḥyā I b. Moḥammad | 849 |
| | Yaḥyā II b. Yaḥyā | |
| | 'Alī II b. 'Omar b. Idrīs II | |
| | Yaḥyā III b. -Kāsim b. Idrīs II | |
| 292 | Yaḥyā IV b. Idrīs b. 'Omar | 904 |
| 310 | -Ḥasan | 922 |

[Miknasa Berbers]

A. H.
184—296

16. AGHLABIDS
(TUNIS, ETC.)

A. D.
800—909

Ibrāhīm b. -Aghlab was governor of the province of Zāb for the Caliph at the time of confusion which followed upon the death of Yazīd the 'Abbāsīd governor-general of 'Africa' (Afrikiya, *i.e.* Tunis) in 787 (170), and was appointed to the government of the whole African province by the Caliph Hārūn -Rashīd in 800 (184); but did not interfere with the authority of the Idrīsids in the far west. His dynasty was practically independent, and the Aghlabids seldom troubled to put the Caliphs' names on their coins in token even of spiritual suzerainty. They were not only enlightened and energetic rulers on land, but employed large fleets on the Mediterranean, harried the coasts of Italy, France, Corsica, and Sardinia, and conquered Sicily in 827-78; which island remained in Moḥammadan hands until the conquest by the Normans. The Aghlabid domination in Africa when at its best was indeed the period of the greatest ascendancy of the Arabs in the Mediterranean: their

corsairs were the terror of the seas, and besides Sicily they took Malta and Sardinia, and even invaded the suburbs of Rome. The incapacity of the later Aghlabid princes, however, and the growth of sectarian disaffection under the fostering influence of the Shi'ite Idrisids in the west, paved the way for the Fātimid triumph in 909 (296).

| | | |
|------|-----------------------------|------|
| 184 | Ibrāhīm I | 800 |
| 196 | 'Abd-Allāh I | 811 |
| 201 | Ziyādat-Allāh I | 816 |
| 223 | Abū-'Aḳāl -Aghlab | 837 |
| 226 | Moḥammad I | 840 |
| 242 | Aḥmad | 856 |
| 249 | Ziyādat-Allāh II | 863 |
| 250 | Moḥammad II | 864 |
| 261 | Ibrāhīm II | 874 |
| 289 | 'Abd-Allāh II. | 902 |
| 290 | Ziyādat-Allāh III | 903 |
| —296 | | —909 |

[Fātimids]

AGHLABIDS

-AGHLAB

1. Ibrāhīm

2. 'Abd-Allāh i

3. Ziyādat-Allāh i

4. -Aghlab

5. Moḥammad

6. Abūmad

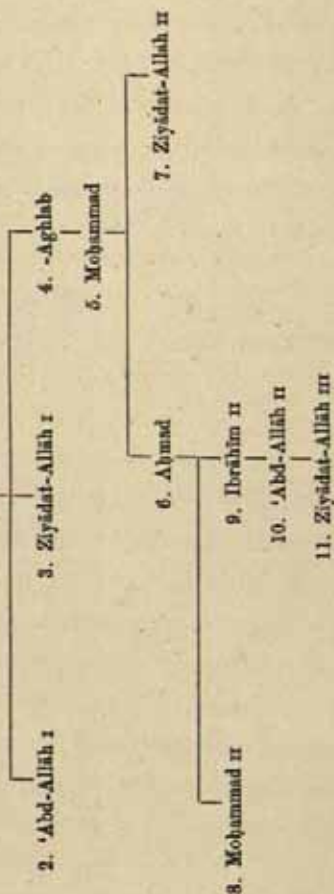
7. Ziyādat-Allāh ii

8. Moḥammad ii

9. Ibrāhīm ii

10. 'Abd-Allāh ii

11. Ziyādat-Allāh iii



The Aghlabids were succeeded by the *Fāṭimids*, who, however, belong more particularly to the series of Egyptian Dynasties (see Table 27). Their empire, which at one time included the whole north African coast from Egypt to the Atlantic, together with Sicily and Sardinia, became split up into various kingdoms as soon as their removal of their seat of government to Cairo in 972 (362) weakened their control of the more western provinces. Their lieutenant over Africa, Yūsuf Bulukkīn, chief of the Sanhaja Berbers, soon declared himself independent and founded the dynasty of the *Zayrids*, whilst another dynasty, the *Ḥammādids*, established themselves at Bougie (Bujāya) in Algeria and restricted the Zayrids' authority to little more than the province of Tunis. Further west in Morocco various tribes of Berbers, -Miknasa, Maghrawa, etc., acquired independence, and occupied the site of the Idrīsids' kingdom, but hardly attained to the dignity of dynasties. These were in turn subdued by the *Almoravides*, who also took a large part of the territory of the *Ḥammādids* of Algeria; but it was reserved for the *Almohades* to reign in the capitals of Hammād and Zayrī.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|--|----------|
| 362—543 | 17. ZAYRIDS | 972—1148 |
| | (TUNIS) | |
| 362 | Yūsuf Bulukkīn b. Zayrī | 972 |
| 373 | Manṣūr b. Yūsuf | 983 |
| 386 | Bādīs b. Manṣūr | 996 |
| 406 | -Mu'izz b. Bādīs | 1015 |
| 453 | Tamīm b. -Mu'izz | 1061 |
| 501 | Yahyā b. Tamīm | 1107 |
| 509 | 'Alī b. Yahyā | 1115 |
| 515 | -Ḥasan b. 'Alī | 1121 |
| —543 | | —1148 |
| | <i>[Roger of Sicily; then Almohades]</i> | |

| | | |
|---------|--|-----------|
| 398—547 | HAMMĀDIDS | 1007—1152 |
| | (ALGERIA) | |
| 398 | Hammād | 1007 |
| 419 | -Kāid b. Hammād | 1028 |
| 446 | Muḥassin b. -Kāid | 1054 |
| 447 | Bulukkīn b. Moḥammad b. Hammād | 1055 |
| 454? | -Nāṣir b. 'Alnās b. Moḥammad | 1062? |
| 481 | -Manṣūr b. -Nāṣir | 1088 |
| 498 | Bādīs | 1104 |
| 500 | -'Azīz | 1106 |
| ? | Yahyā b. -'Azīz | — |
| —547 | | —1152 |
| | <i>[Almohades]</i> | |

A.H.

A.D.

448—541 19. ALMORAVIDES (-MURĀBIṬ) 1056—1147
(MOROCCO, PART OF ALGERIA, SPAIN)

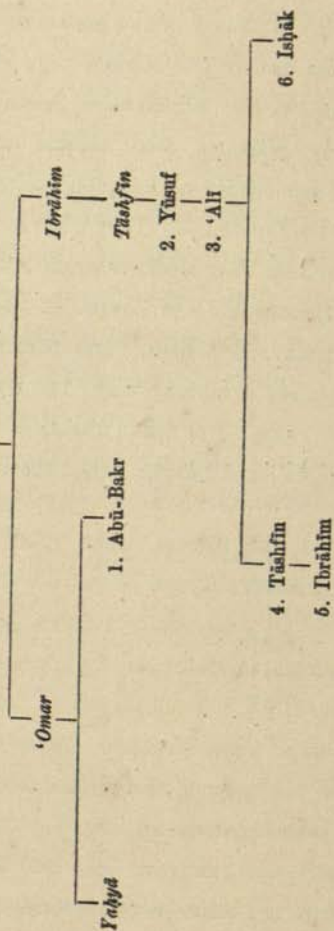
In the middle of the eleventh century the successes of the Christians in Spain, the energy of the Genoese and Pisans in recovering for Christendom the islands of Corsica and Sardinia, and the valour of the Normans in Southern Italy, had thoroughly humbled the power of the Muslims in the Mediterranean. The Fātimids of Egypt alone maintained the ancient prestige of the Saracens. The Zayrids of Tunis were incapable even of repressing the frequent revolts which disturbed their restricted dominion; and the rivalry between Zayrids, Ḥammādids, and Fātimids prevented any collective action against the Christians. It was time for a Moḥammadan revival, and among a people so easily excited to religious exaltation as the Berbers a revival was always possible if a prophet could be found. The prophet appeared among the tribe of Lamtuna in the person of 'Abd-Allāh b. Tāshfin. This man preached a holy war for the glory of Islām, and the Berbers were not slow to follow him. His adherents called themselves *Al-Murābiṭin*, which means literally 'pickets who have hobbled their horses on the enemy's frontier,' and hence 'Protagonists for the Faith.'

The Spaniards corrupted the name into Almoravides, and the French *marabout*, or devotee, is another perversion of it. The Almoravides acknowledged the supremacy of the 'Abbāsid Caliphs. The Lamtuna Berbers under 'Abd-Allāh were joined by the great clan of the Masmūda, and led by Abū-Bakr and his second cousin Yūsuf b. Tāshfin, reduced Sijilmāsa and Aghmāt by 1068 (460), founded the city of Morocco (Marrākush), and in the course of the next fifteen years spread over Fez, Mequinez (Miknasa), Ceuta (Sabta), Tangier (Tanja), Salee, and the west of Morocco. In 1086 Yūsuf b. Tāshfin, whose great qualities both as general and as administrator had secured the devotion of the Protagonists, was entreated by the 'Abbāids of Spain to come over and help them against the assaults of Alfonso vi. and Sancho of Aragon and the invincible valour of the Cid Campeador Rodrigo Diaz de Bivar. Yūsuf utterly crushed the Castilian army at the battle of Zallāka, or, as the Spaniards call it, Sacralias, near Badajoz, October 23, 1086; but he did not follow up his victory. Leaving 3000 Berbers to support the Andalusians he returned to Africa. But in 1090 the King of Seville again prayed him to come and help him against the Christians, and this time Yūsuf annexed the whole of Moorish Spain, with the exception of

Toledo, which remained in the possession of the Christians, and Zaragoza, where the Hūdids were suffered to subsist. The success of the Almoravides, however, was fleeting. Their hardy warriors soon became enervated in soft Andalusia, and offered no adequate resistance to the steady advance of the Christians. They made no attempt to recover the command of the Mediterranean, and were content to leave the Ḥammādids and Zayrids in possession of most of Algeria, Tunis, and Tripoli. The Almoravide dynasty had lasted less than a century when the fanatical rush of the *Almohades* swept over the whole of north Africa and southern Spain, and left no rival house standing.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|--------------------|------|
| 448 | Abū-Bakr | 1056 |
| 480 | Yūsuf | 1087 |
| 500 | ‘Alī | 1106 |
| 537 | Tāshfin | 1143 |
| 541 | Ibrāhīm | 1146 |
| 541 | Ishāk | 1147 |

ALMORAVIDES

*Wartantak**Warkit*

A.H.

A.D.

524—667 20. ALMOHADES (-MUWAHHIDS) 1130—1269

(ALL NORTH AFRICA)

The Muwahhids (in Spanish, Almohades) or Unitarians were so called because their doctrine was a protest against the realistic anthropomorphism of orthodox Islām. Their prophet Abū-'Abd-Allāh Moḥammad b. Tūmart, a Berber of the Masmuda tribe, began to preach the doctrine of the Unity of God (-*Tawḥīd*) and took the symbolic title of the Mahdī, at the beginning of the 12th century. Dying in 1128 (522) he left the command of the Unitarians to his friend and general 'Abd-al-Mu'min, who formally accepted the chief authority over the Masmuda Muwahhids in 1130. In 1140 (534) 'Abd-al-Mu'min began a long career of conquest. He annihilated the army of the Almoravides in 1144, captured Oran, Tilimsān, Fez, Ceuta, Aghmāt, and Salee in two years, and by the successful siege of Morocco in 1146 (541) put an end to the Almoravide dynasty. Meanwhile he had sent an army into Spain (1145) and in the course of five years reduced the whole Moorish part of

the Peninsula to his sway. Master of Morocco and Spain, he next carried his conquests eastwards, and in 1152 (547) abolished the *Ḥammādid* rule in Algeria; in 1158 (553) he drove the Norman successors of the *Zayrids* out of Tunisia, and by the annexation of Tripoli united the whole coast from the frontier of Egypt to the Atlantic together with Moorish Spain under his sceptre. The Holy War with the Christians in Spain was the chief anxiety of his successors, and the disastrous defeat at Las Navas in 1235 (632) was the signal for the expulsion of the *Almohades* from the Peninsula, which was then divided between the ever-encroaching Christians and the local *Mohammadan* dynasties, among whom the *Naṣrids* of Granada (Table 14) offered the most stubborn resistance to the enemy, and held out until the fall of their city in 1492 delivered the whole of Spain over to Ferdinand and Isabella the Catholic. The loss of Spain was quickly followed by the undermining of the *Almohades'* power in Africa. Tripoli had long before been annexed by Saladin (1172). Their lieutenants in Tunis, the *Hafṣids*, threw off their allegiance and founded an independent dynasty in 1228; whose example was followed by the *Ziyānids* of Tlemṣen (Tilimsān) in western Algeria, in 1235; while, amidst the confusion created by many pretenders to

the throne of Morocco, the chiefs of the mountain tribe of the *Marīnids* pushed their way to the front and put an end to the dynasty of the Almohades by the conquest of their capital, Morocco, in 1269 (667).

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|--|-------|
| 524 | 'Abd-al-Mu'min | 1130 |
| 558 | Abū-Ya'qūb Yūsuf I | 1163 |
| 580 | Abū-Yūsuf Ya'qūb -Mansūr | 1184 |
| 595 | Moḥammad -Nāṣir | 1199 |
| 611 | Abū-Ya'qūb Yūsuf II -Mustanṣir | 1214 |
| 620 | 'Abd-al-Wāḥid -Makhlū' | 1223 |
| 621 | Abū-Moḥammad 'Abd-Allāh -'Ādil | 1224 |
| 624 | Yaḥyā -Mu'taṣim | 1227 |
| 626 | Abū-l-'Ulā Idrīs -Ma'mūn | 1229 |
| 630 | 'Abd-al-Wāḥid -Rashīd | 1232 |
| 640 | Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī -Sa'id | 1242 |
| 646 | Abū-Ḥafṣ 'Omar -Murtaḍa | 1248 |
| 665 | Abū-l-'Ulā -Wāthiq | 1266 |
| —667 | | —1269 |

[*Marīnids, Ziyānids, Ḥafṣids*]

ALMOHADES

'Alī

1. 'Abd-al-Mur'mīn

2. Abū-Ya'qūb Yūsuf I

3. Abū-Yūsuf Ya'qūb
-Manṣūr4. Moḥammad
-Nāṣir7. 'Abd-Allāh
-ʿAdil5. Abū-Ya'qūb Yūsuf II
-Muṣṭaṣir6. 'Abd-al-Wāḥid
-Makhlū'9. Idrīs
-Ma'mūn10. 'Abd-al-Wāḥid
-Rashīd

Isḥāq

12. 'Omar
-Murṭada11. Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī
-Sa'īd

'Abd-Ḥafṣ 'Omar

Moḥammad

13. Abū-l-'Ulā
-Wāṭṭik

A. H.
625—94121. HAFSIDS
(TUNIS)A. D.
1228—1534

The Hafsids were at first lieutenants of the Almohades in their province of Tunis. The government passed from father to son, and the dynasty became independent. For three centuries the Hafsids governed Tunis with justice and mildness, and cultivated friendly commercial relations with the trading republics of Italy. The Corsair Khayr-al-din Barbarossa conquered Tunis in the name of the Ottoman Sultan in 1534, and though the Emperor Charles v. restored the Hafsid king in 1535 and placed a Spanish garrison at the Goletta of Tunis, the province remained chiefly in the hands of the Corsairs, who re-took Tunis itself in 1568 and the Goletta in 1574;* since when, it has been a province of the Ottoman Empire, but in 1881 became practically a possession of France. Tripoli, which had been taken from the kingdom of Tunis by the Spaniards in 1510, was added to the Ottoman Empire by the Corsairs in 1551.

* See my *Barbary Corsairs* (1890), ch. viii, xii, xiv, xv.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|---|-------|
| 625 | Abū-Zakaryā Yahyā 1 | 1228 |
| 647 | Abū-'Abd-Allāh Moḥammad 1 -Mustanṣir | 1249 |
| 675 | Abū-Zakaryā Yahyā 11 | 1277 |
| 678 | Abū-Ishāq Ibrāhīm 1 | 1279 |
| 683 | Abū-Hafṣ 'Omar 1 | 1284 |
| 694 | Abu-'Abd-Allāh Moḥammad 11 -Mustanṣir | 1295 |
| 709 | Abu-Bakr 1 -Shadīd | 1309 |
| 709 | Abū-l-Baḳā Khālīd 1 | 1309 |
| 711 | Abū-Yahyā Zakaryā | 1311 |
| 717 | Abu-Ḍarba Moḥammad 111 -Mustanṣir | 1317 |
| 718 | Abū-Yahyā Abū-Bakr 11 -Mutawakkil | 1318 |
| 747 | Abū-Hafṣ 'Omar 11 | 1346 |
| [747 | <i>Marinid occupation</i> | 1346 |
| 750 | Abū-l-'Abbās Aḥmad 1 -Faḍl | 1349 |
| 751 | Abū-Ishāq Ibrāhīm 11 -Mustanṣir | 1350 |
| 770 | Abū-l-Baḳā Khālīd 11 | 1368 |
| 772 | Abu-l-'Abbās Aḥmad 11 -Mustanṣir | 1370 |
| 796 | Abū-Fāris 'Abd-al-'Azīz | 1394 |
| 837 | Moḥammad 1v -Muntaṣir | 1433 |
| 839 | Abū-'Amr 'Othmān | 1435 |
| 893 | Abū-Zakaryā Yahyā 111 | 1488 |
| 899 | Abū-'Abd-Allāh Moḥammad v | 1493 |
| 932 | -Ḥasan | 1525 |
| -941 | | -1534 |

[*Coronair Pashas, and Beys, under the Ottoman Sultans*]

A.H.
633—79622. ZİYÂNIDS
(ALGERIA)A.D.
1235—1393

The Ziyânids, lieutenants of the Almohades in Algeria, followed the example of their neighbours the Ḥafṣids to make themselves independent as soon as their masters began to grow feeble. Their capital was Tlemçen (Tilimsān). In their turn the Ziyânids succumbed to the power of the Marīnids of Morocco in 1393.

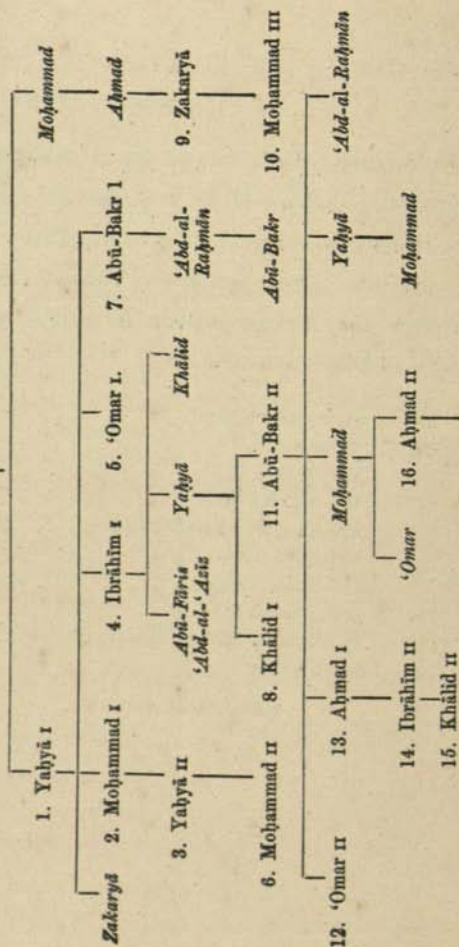
| | | |
|-----|---|------|
| 633 | Yagmorasan b. Ziyān | 1235 |
| 681 | ‘Othmān I | 1282 |
| 703 | Abū-Ziyān I | 1303 |
| 707 | Abū-Ḥammū Mūsā I | 1307 |
| 718 | Abū-Tāshfin ‘Abd-al-Raḥmān I | 1318 |
| 749 | { Abū-Sa‘īd ‘Othmān II Abū-Thābit-Zāim | 1348 |
| 753 | Abū-Ḥammū Mūsā II | 1352 |
| 788 | Abū-Tāshfin ‘Abd-al-Raḥmān II | 1386 |
| 796 | Abū-Ziyān II | 1393 |

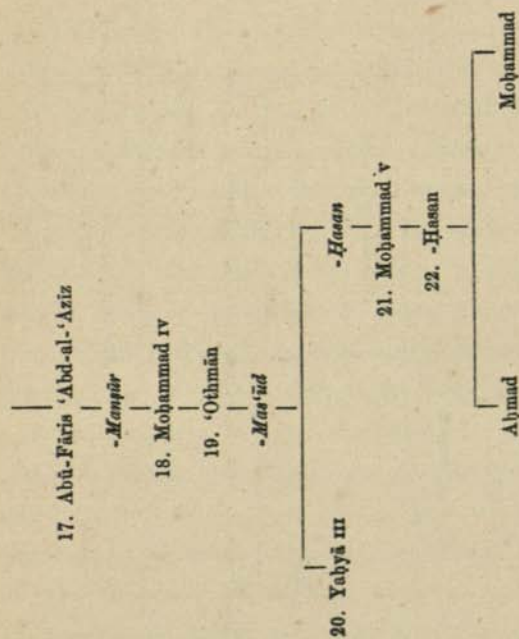
[Marīnids of Morocco]

3397

HAFŞIDS

'Abd-al-Wāhid b. 'Abd-Ḥafṣ





ZIYÂNIDS

ZIYÂN

1. Yagmorasan

2. 'Othmān I

Abū-Zakaryā Yahyā

3. Abū-Ziyān I

4. Mūsā I

5. 'Abd-al-Raḥmān I

6a.

'Othmān II

6b. Abū-Thābit

Yūsuf

7. Mūsā II

8. 'Abd-al-Raḥmān II

9. Abū-Ziyān II

From the 16th to the present century the North African provinces of Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli were in the possession, more or less nominal, of the '*Othmānī* or Ottoman Sultāns of Turkey. The annexation of these provinces was due to the energy of the Barbary Corsairs. Previously to the arrival of Barbarossa, the Spaniards under Don Pedro Navarro had established several strong positions on the African coast, at the Peñon de Alger, Bougie (Bujāya), Oran (Wahrān), Tripoli, etc., with a view to overawing the petty pirates of Algiers. In 1509 Urūj Barbarossa, a Lesbian adventurer, occupied the island of Jarba, off the coast of Tripoli, and began his operations against the Spaniards. He took Jijil in 1514, Algiers in 1516, Tinnis and Tlemçen (Tilimsān) from the Marīnids in 1517; and in 1519 his brother Khayr-al-dīn Barbarossa was recognised by the Ottoman Sultān as Beglerbeg or Governor-General of the province of Algiers, which corresponded very nearly to the Algeria of to-day, though the Spaniards kept their hold on the fortress or Peñon de Alger until 1530 and held Oran till 1706. In 1534 Khayr-al-dīn took Tunis from the Hafsids, but the city was retaken by the Emperor Charles v. in the following year, and not restored to the Corsairs of Algiers till 1568. It was again captured for the moment

by Don John of Austria in 1573, but finally annexed by Ochiali (Ulāj 'Alī) in 1574. Meanwhile another Corsair, Dragut (Torghūd), reduced Tripoli to the authority of the Porte in 1551, and drove out the Knights of St. John, who had held it since their expulsion from Rhodes in 1522.

The three provinces of Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli were thus annexed to the Turkish Empire in 1519, 1568, and 1551, respectively. Algiers was governed first by a series of twenty-six Pashas, appointed from Constantinople; but in 1671 the janissary garrison of Algiers elected a *Dey* from amongst themselves, whose power soon eclipsed that of the Pasha, and in 1710 the two offices were united in that of *Dey*, which subsisted until the French conquest in 1830. Tunis was governed until 1705 by *Deys* appointed by the Porte, after which the Turkish soldiery elected their own *Bey*s, one of whom still affects to reign, though Tunis has been occupied by France since 1881. Tripoli is still a Turkish province governed by a Pasha appointed by the Sultān. Morocco alone of the North African provinces has never owned Christian rule, though the Spaniards held various forts on the coast, and still retain Ceuta; and the English once owned Tangier, but neglected to keep it.*

* See my *Barbary Corsairs* (1890).

A.H.
591—87523. MARINIDS
(MOROCCO)A.D.
1195—1470

The Marinids traced their dynasty from 1195 (591), as rulers in the highlands of Morocco; but they did not succeed to the capital of the Almohades till 1269 (667). Soon after 1393 (796) they added to their kingdom the territory of the Ziyānids in western Algeria. They were superseded by their kinsmen the Wat'asids in 1470.

| | | |
|-----|-----------------------|------|
| 591 | 'Abd-al-Ḥaḡḡ | 1195 |
| 614 | 'Othmān I | 1217 |
| 637 | Moḥammad I | 1239 |
| 642 | Abū-Yahyā Abū-Bakr | 1244 |
| 656 | Abū-Yūsuf Ya'qūb | 1258 |
| 685 | Abū-Ya'qūb Yūsuf | 1286 |
| 706 | Abū-Thābit 'Āmir | 1306 |
| 708 | Abū-l-Rabi' Sulaymān | 1308 |
| 710 | Abū-Sa'id 'Othmān II | 1310 |
| 731 | Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī | 1331 |
| 749 | Abū-Aynān | 1348 |
| 759 | -Sa'id | 1358 |
| 760 | Abū-Sālim Ibrāhīm | 1359 |
| 762 | Abū-'Omar Tāshfin | 1361 |
| 763 | 'Abd-al-Ḥalīm | 1361 |
| 763 | Abū-Ziyān Moḥammad II | 1361 |
| 768 | 'Abd-al-'Azīz | 1366 |

| | | |
|-----|---|------|
| 774 | Moḥammad iii -Sa'id | 1372 |
| 776 | { Abū-l-'Abbās Aḥmad -Mustanṣir 'Abd-al-Raḥmān } | 1374 |
| 786 | Mūsā | 1384 |
| 786 | -Muntasir | 1384 |
| 788 | Moḥammad iv -Wathīq | 1386 |
| 789 | Abū-l-'Abbās Aḥmad -Mustanṣir (again) | 1387 |
| 796 | Abū-Fāris | 1393 |
| ? | Fāris -Mutawakkil | ? |
| 811 | Abū-Sa'id | 1408 |
| 819 | { Sa'id Ya'qūb } | 1416 |
| 827 | 'Abd-Allāh | 1424 |
| 875 | Sharif | 1470 |

WAT'ASIDS

| | | |
|-----|--------------------------------|------|
| 875 | Sa'id, Shaykh Wat'as | 1470 |
| 906 | Moḥammad i b. Sa'id | 1500 |
| 936 | Aḥmad b. Moḥammad | 1530 |
| 957 | Moḥammad ii b. Aḥmad | 1550 |

[Sharifs of Morocco]

A.H.
951—1311
reigning

24. SHARĪFS
(MOROCCO)

A.D.
1544—1893
reigning

The title *Sharif* (lit. 'noble') implies descent from the Prophet Moḥammad, from whom the Sharifs of Morocco trace their lineage through Ḥasan the elder son of Fāṭima by 'Alī. The Sharifs possessed themselves of Tarudant in 1515, and Morocco and Fez soon afterwards, but their formal assumption of sovereignty dates from 1544 (951). The series falls into two divisions, Ḥasanī and Filālī Sharifs, and a period of anarchy for six years occurred between the two. Their boundaries have always remained much as they are in the present day, but there has frequently been a rival Sharif at Fez in opposition to the Sharif of Morocco. The Sharifs claim to be inheritors of the title of Caliph and Prince of the Faithful.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|----------|--|-----------|
| 951—1069 | A. HASANĪ SHARĪFS | 1544—1658 |
| 951 | Moḥammad I -Shaykh | 1544 |
| 965 | 'Abd-Allāh | 1557 |
| 981 | Moḥammad II | 1573 |
| 983 | Abū-Marwān 'Abd-al-Malik I | 1575 |
| 986 | Abū-l-'Abbās Aḥmad I -Manṣoor | 1578 |
| 1012 | { Shaykh Abū-Fāris } rivals | 1603 |
| | { Zaydān } | |
| 1016 | Zaydān (alone) | 1608 |
| 1038 | Abū-Marwān 'Abd-al-Malik II | 1628 |
| 1040 | Walid | 1630 |
| 1045 | Moḥammad III | 1635 |
| 1064 | Aḥmad II | 1654 |
| —1069 | | —1658 |

| | | |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| 1075—1311 | B. FILALĪ SHARĪFS | 1664—1893 |
| 1075 | -Rashīd b. -Sharīf b. 'Alī | 1664 |
| 1083 | Ismā'īl -Samīn | 1672 |
| 1139 | Aḥmad -Dhahabī | 1727 |
| 1141 | 'Abd-Allāh* | 1729 |
| 1171 | Moḥammad I | 1757 |
| 1204 | -Yazīd | 1789 |
| 1206 | Hishām | 1792 |
| 1209 | Sulaymān | 1795 |
| 1238 | 'Abd-al-Raḥman | 1822 |
| 1276 | Moḥammad II | 1859 |
| 1290 | Hasan (now reigning) | 1873 |

* Interrupted by 'Alī b. Ismā'īl, 1147-9; -Mustafī b. Ismā'īl, 1151-3, and Zayn-al-'Abidin, 1158.

HASANĪ SHARĪFS

-HASAN

1. Moḥammad I

2. 'Abd.-Allāh

3. Moḥammad II

4. 'Abd.-al-Malik I

7. Zaydān

8. 'Abd.-al-Malik II

11. Aḥmad II

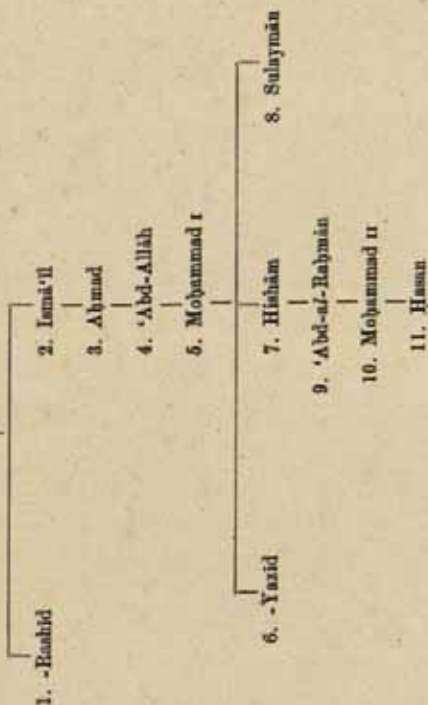
5. Aḥmad I

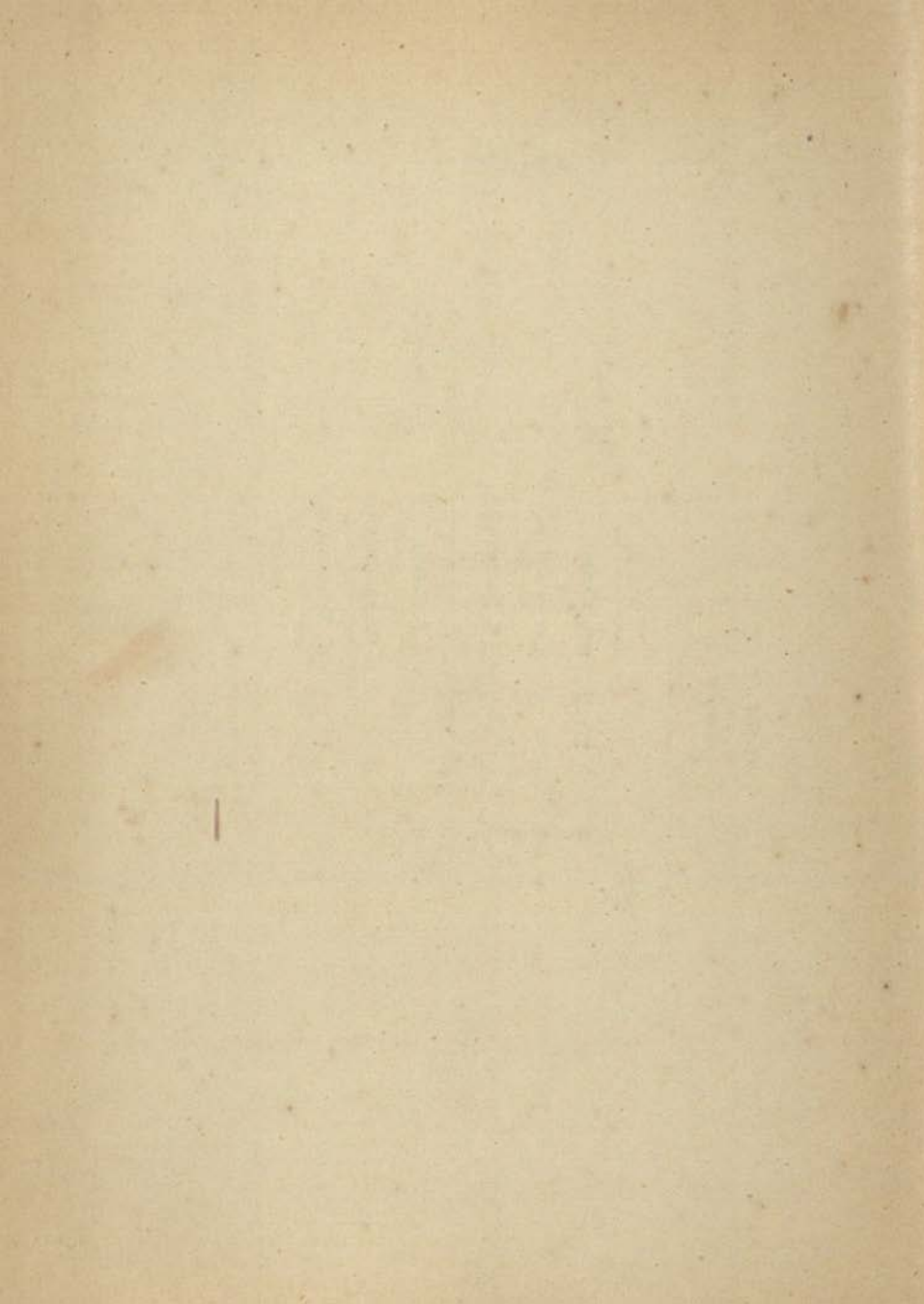
66. Abū-Fāris

9. -Walid

66. Shaykh

FILALI SHARIFS

Sharif b. 'Ali



IV. EGYPT AND SYRIA

SÆC. IX—XIX.

25. ṬŪLŪNIDS

26. IKHSHĪDIDS

27. FĀṬIMIDS

28. AYYŪBIDS

29. MAMLŪKS

‘OTHMĀNLĪS (*See X*)

30. KHEDĪVES

IV. EGYPT AND SYRIA

SÆC. IX—XIX

Egypt and Syria have generally formed one government in Moḥammadan history. Syria was conquered by the Arabs in 635–638 (14–17), and Egypt in 641 (21). From the time of the conquest to 868 (254) Egypt was ruled as a separate province by 98 governors appointed by the Omayyad and ‘Abbāsīd Caliphs; but the new governor in 868, Aḥmad b. Ṭulūn, founded a dynasty which lasted 37 years. This was succeeded after an interval by the Ikhshīdids, who in turn gave place to the greatest of mediæval Egyptian dynasties, that of the Fāṭimid Caliphs. Under these last, however, Syria became the seat of independent dynasties (Mirdāsids, Būrids, Zangids), but was again united to Egypt by Saladin, the founder of the Ayyūbid dynasty, and so continued until both became separate provinces of the Ottoman Empire. In 1831 Ibrāhīm Pasha, eldest son of Moḥammad ‘Alī, again joined Syria to the dominions of the ruler of Egypt, but it was restored to the Porte in 1841 by the intervention of the European Powers, and has ever since been a Turkish vilāyat.

A.H.
254—292

ṬULŪNIDS

A.D.
868—905

Ṭulūn was a Turkish slave, who was sent by the Sāmānid ruler of Bukhārā as a present to the Caliph -Ma'mūn, and attained high rank in the court at Baghdād and Surra-man-ra'ā. His son Aḥmad succeeded to his father's dignity in 240, and was appointed deputy-governor of Egypt in 868 (254), where he soon made himself practically independent. In 877 (264) he was allowed to incorporate Syria in his government, and the two countries remained in the possession of his dynasty until its extinction in 905 (292). The Ṭulūnids were renowned for the wealth and luxury of their capital -Ḳaṭāi' (between -Fusṭāṭ and the later Cairo) and for their public works.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|---|------|
| 254 | Aḥmad b. Ṭulūn | 868 |
| 270 | Khumārawayh b. Aḥmad | 883 |
| 282 | Jaysh Abū-l-Asākir b. Khumārawayh | 895 |
| 283 | Hārūn b. Khumārawayh | 896 |
| 292 | Shaybān b. Aḥmad | 904 |
| | | —905 |

[Governors under the 'Abbāsīd Caliphs]

A.H.
323—358

IKHSHĪDIDS

A.D.
935—969

After a brief interval, during which the governors of the 'Abbāsid Caliphs again held precarious sway in Egypt and Syria, Moḥammad -Ikhshīd established another quasi-independent dynasty. -Ikhshīd was the generic title of the rulers of Farghāna, beyond the Oxus, and Ṭughj, the father of Moḥammad, was the son of a Farghāna officer in the service of the Caliph of Baghdād. Ṭughj rose to be governor of Damascus, but was disgraced and died in prison. Moḥammad retrieved his father's misfortune and became in turn governor of Damascus in 318, and in 321 governor of Egypt. He did not take over the office, however, till 935 (323). In 938 (327) he assumed the title of -Ikhshīd, and in 941 (330) Syria was added to his dominions, together with Mecca and Medīna in the following year.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|-------------------------------------|------|
| 323 | Moḥammad -Ikhshīd b. Ṭughj . . . | 935 |
| 334 | Abū-l-Ḳāsim Ūngūr b. -Ikhshīd . . . | 946 |
| 349 | Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī b. -Ikhshīd . . . | 960 |
| 355 | Abū-l-Misk Kāfūr [a eunuch] . . . | 966 |
| 357 | Abū-l-Fawāris Aḥmad b. 'Alī . . . | 961 |
| —358 | | —969 |

[Fātimīds]

A.H.

297—567

A.D.

27. FĀṬIMIDS

909—1171

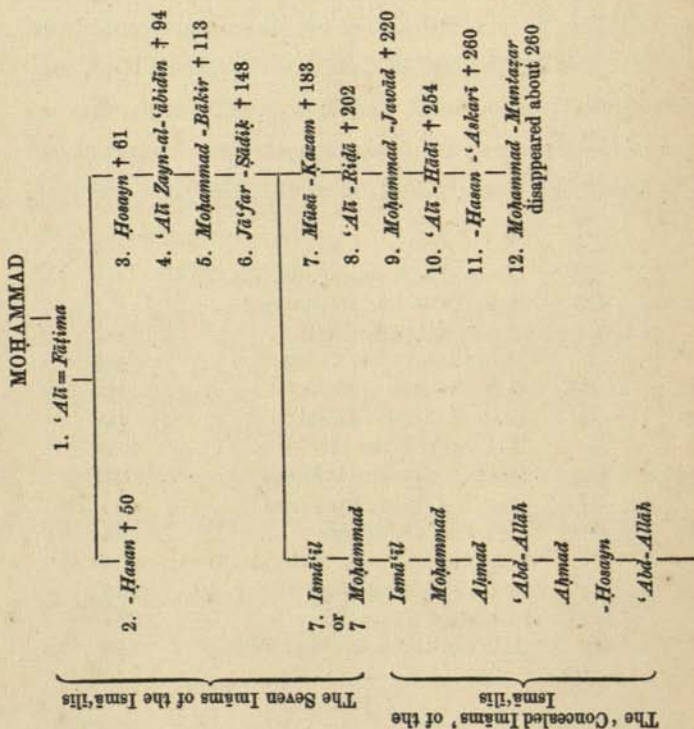
The Fāṭimids, like the Idrīsids, were (or pretended to be) descendants of Fāṭima the daughter of the Prophet (see the genealogical table, p. 72). The Idrīsids had prepared the way for them, and numerous *da'īs* or missionaries had impregnated the Berbers with Shi'ite doctrine, until the task of the new Prophet 'Obayd Allāh, who took the title of Al-Mahdī, and claimed to be Caliph and Prince of the Faithful, became simple: in 909 (297) he suppressed the effete remnant of the Aghlabids and soon made himself master of all North Africa, with the exception of the Idrisid kingdom in Morocco. The Fāṭimid capital was the city of -Mahdiyya (the 'Africa' of Froissart) near Tunis. Half a century later they added Egypt and Syria to their dominions. Jawhar the Fāṭimid general conquered the former country from the boy-king of the Ikhshīdīd dynasty in 969 (356), and founded the fortified palace of -Kāhira, which developed into the city of Cairo. Southern Syria was taken at the same time, and Aleppo was incorporated in 991 (381) in the Fāṭimid Empire, which now stretched from the Syrian desert and the Orontes to the

borders of Morocco. The removal of the seat of government from Ḳayrawān and -Mahdiyya to Cairo, however, cost the Fātimids the loss of their western provinces (see p. 39); and the Normans gained Sicily in 1071, Malta in 1098, Tripoli in 1146 and -Mahdiyya and Ḳayrawān in 1148: but the power of the Fātimid Caliphs in Egypt and Syria long continued undiminished and their wealth and commerce spread throughout the Mediterranean lands. Saladin supplanted the last Fātimid Caliph in 1171 (567).

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|---|-------|
| 297 | -Mahdī Abū-Moḥammad 'Obayd-Allāh . . . | 909 |
| 322 | -Ḳā'im Abū-l-Ḳāsim Moḥammad . . . | 934 |
| 334 | -Manṣūr Abū-Tāhir Ismā'il . . . | 945 |
| 341 | -Mu'izz Abū-Tamīm Ma'a'dd . . . | 952 |
| 365 | -'Azīz Abū-Manṣūr Nazār . . . | 975 |
| 386 | -Ḥākim Abū-'Alī -Manṣūr . . . | 996 |
| 411 | -Zāhir Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī . . . | 1020 |
| 427 | -Mustanṣir Abū-Tamīm Ma'a'dd . . . | 1035 |
| 487 | -Musta'li Abū-l-Ḳāsim Aḥmad . . . | 1094 |
| 495 | -Āmir Abū-'Alī -Manṣūr . . . | 1101 |
| 524 | -Ḥāfiẓ Abū-l-Maymūn 'Abd-al-Majīd . . . | 1130 |
| 544 | -Zāfir Abū-l-Manṣūr Ismā'il . . . | 1149 |
| 549 | -Fā'iz Abū-l-Ḳāsim 'Isā . . . | 1154 |
| 555 | -Āḍid Abū-Moḥammad 'Abd-Allāh . . . | 1160 |
| —567 | | —1171 |

[*Ayyūbids*]

The Twelve Imāms of the Imāmi Sect



FĀṬĪMIDS

1. -Mahdi

2. -Kāim

3. -Maṣūṛ

4. -Mu'izz

5. -'Aziz

6. -Ḥakim

7. -Zāhir

8. -Mustanṣir

9. Musta'li

10. -Amir

Mohammad

11. -Ḥafiz

12. -Zāfir

13. -Fāiz

14. -'Adid

A. H.
564—648

28. AYYŪBIDS

A. D.
1169—1250

Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn, or Saladin, the son of Ayyūb (Job), was of Kurdish extraction, and served under Nūr-al-dīn (Nouredin) Maḥmūd b. Zangī, who had lately made himself king of Syria (see IX.). By him Saladin and his uncle Shīrkūh were sent to Egypt, where a civil war invited interference. Friendly assistance developed into annexation, and after the death of Shīrkūh Saladin became virtual master of Egypt in 1169 (564), though the last Fāṭimid Caliph did not die till three years later. In the first month of 567 (Sept. 1171) Saladin caused the *Khutba* or public prayer to be said at Cairo in the name of the contemporary 'Abbāsid Caliph -Mustaḍī, instead of the Fāṭimid -'Āḍid, who lay on his death-bed. The change was effected without disturbance, and Egypt became once more Sunnite instead of Shi'ite. The Holy Cities of the Hijāz generally formed part of the dominion of the ruler of Egypt; and in 1173 (569) Saladin sent his brother Tūrān-Shāh to govern the Yaman (see

V.). Tripoli was taken from the Normans in 1172 (568). The death of his former master Nūr-al-dīn in the same year laid Syria open to invasion, and in 1174 (570) Saladin entered Damascus and swept over Syria (570-572) up to the Euphrates in spite of the opposition of the Zangids. He did not annex Aleppo until 1183 (579), after the death of Nūr-al-dīn's son, -Ṣāliḥ. He reduced -Mōṣil and made the various princes of Mesopotamia his vassals in 1185-6 (581). He was now master of the country from the Euphrates to the Nile, except where the Crusaders retained their strongholds. The battle of Hittin, 4 July, 1187, destroyed the Christian kingdom of Jerusalem; the Holy City was occupied by Saladin within three months; and hardly a castle, save Tyre, held out against him. The fall of Jerusalem roused Europe to undertake the Third Crusade. Richard I. of England and Philip Augustus of France set out for the Holy Land in 1190, and joined in the siege of Acre in 1191. After a year and a half's fighting, peace was concluded in 1192 for three years without any advantage having been gained by the Crusaders. In March 1193 (589) Saladin died.

On his death, his brothers, sons, and nephews, divided the

various provinces of his wide kingdom, but one amongst them, his brother Sayf-al-dīn -'Ādil, the Saphadin of the Crusader chroniclers, gradually acquired the supreme authority. At first Saladin's sons naturally succeeded to their father's crowns in the various divisions of the kingdom:— -Afḍal at Damascus, -'Azīz at Cairo, -Zāhir at Aleppo. But in 1196 (592) -Afḍal was succeeded by -'Ādil at Damascus; in 1199 (596) -Manṣūr the successor of -'Azīz was supplanted by -'Ādil at Cairo; and Aleppo alone remained to the direct descendants of Saladin until 1260 (648).

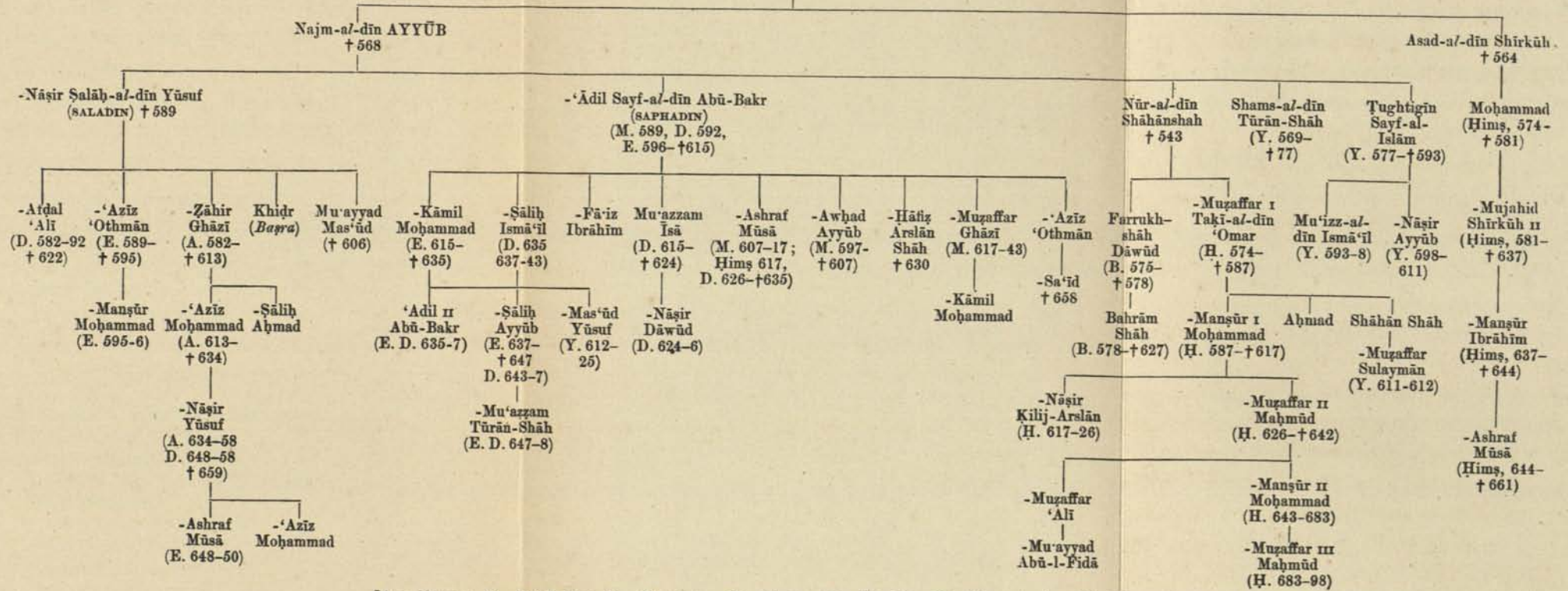
Having acquired the sovereignty of Egypt and most of Syria in 1196-9, and appointed one of his sons to the government of Mesopotamia about 1200 (597), -'Ādil enjoyed the supreme authority in the Ayyūbid kingdom till his death in 1218 (615). His descendants carried on his rule in the several countries; and we find separate branches reigning in Egypt, Damascus, and Mesopotamia, all sprung from -'Ādil. Those who reigned at Ḥamāh, Emesa, and in the Yaman, were descended from other members of the Ayyūbid family.

In 1250 (648) the 'Ādili Ayyūbids of Egypt, the chief branch of the family, who also frequently held Syria,

AYYŪBIDS

Shādhī b. Marwān

(To face p. 76)



[A. = Aleppo; B. = Ba'albakk; D. = Damascus; E. = Egypt; H. = Ḥamāh; M. = Mesopotamia; Y. = Yaman.]

made way for the Bahrī Mamlūks or Slave Kings. The Damascus branch, after contesting the sovereignty of Syria with the Egyptian and Aleppo branches, was incorporated with Aleppo, and both were swept away in the Tatar avalanche of Chinghiz Khān in 1260 (658). The same fate had overtaken the Mesopotamian successors of -ʿĀdil in 1245 (643). The Mamlūks absorbed Emesa in 1262 (661). The Ayyūbids had given place to the Rasūlids in Arabia as early as 1228 (625). But at Hamāh a branch of the family of Saladin continued to rule with slight intermission until 1341 (742), and numbered in their line the well-known historian Abū-l-Fidā.

A.H.

A. EGYPT

A.D.

| | | |
|------|--|-------|
| 564 | -Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Yūsuf (<i>Saladīn</i>) | 1169 |
| 589 | -ʿAzīz ʿImād-al-dīn ʿOthmān . . . | 1193 |
| 595 | -Manṣūr Moḥammad . . . | 1198 |
| 596 | -ʿĀdil Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr* (<i>Saphadīn</i>) | 1199 |
| 616 | -Kāmil Moḥammad* . . . | 1218 |
| 635 | -ʿĀdil 11 Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr* . . . | 1238 |
| 637 | -Ṣalīb Najm-al-dīn Ayyūb* . . . | 1240 |
| 647 | -Muʿaẓẓam Tūrān-Shāh* . . . | 1249 |
| 648 | -Ashraf Mūsā . . . | 1250 |
| —650 | | —1252 |

[*Mamlūks*]

* These Sultāns also ruled at Damascus

A. H.

A. D.

B. DAMASCUS

| | | |
|------|--|-------|
| 582 | -Aḡḡal Nūr-al-dīn 'Alī | 1186 |
| 592 | -'Ādil Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr (<i>see Egypt</i>) | 1196 |
| 616 | -Mu'azzam Sharaf-al-dīn 'Isā | 1218 |
| 624 | -Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Dāwūd | 1227 |
| 626 | -Ashraf Mūsā (<i>of Mesopotamia</i>) | 1228 |
| 635 | -Ṣalīḥ Ismā'īl | 1237 |
| 635 | -Kāmil (<i>of Egypt</i>) | 1237 |
| 635 | -'Ādil (") | 1238 |
| 637 | -Ṣalīḥ (") | 1240 |
| 637 | -Ṣalīḥ Ismā'īl (<i>restored</i>) | 1240 |
| 643 | -Ṣalīḥ (<i>of Egypt</i>) | 1245 |
| 647 | -Mu'azzam (<i>of Egypt</i>) | 1249 |
| 648 | -Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Yūsuf (<i>of Aleppo</i>) | 1250 |
| —653 | | —1260 |

[Mongols]

C. ALEPPO

| | | |
|------|---|-------|
| 582 | -Zāḥir Ghiyāth-al-dīn Ghāzī | 1186 |
| 613 | -'Azīz Ghiyāth-al-dīn Moḥammad | 1216 |
| 634 | -Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Yūsuf (<i>see Damascus</i>) | 1236 |
| —658 | | —1260 |

[Mongols]

D. MESOPOTAMIA

| | | |
|------|--|-------|
| 597? | -Awḡad Najm-al-dīn Ayyūb | 1200? |
| 607 | -Ashraf Muḡaffar-al-dīn Mūsā (<i>see Damascus</i>) | 1210 |
| 628 | -Muḡaffar Ghāzī | 1230 |
| —643 | | —1246 |

[Mongols]

A. H.

A. D.

E. HAMĀH

| | | |
|------|---|-------|
| 574 | -Muṣaffar I Taḳī-al-dīn 'Omar | 1178 |
| 587 | -Maṣṣūr I Moḥammad | 1191 |
| 617 | -Nāṣir Ḳilij-Arslān. . . . | 1220 |
| 626 | -Muṣaffar II Taḳī-al-dīn Maḥmūd | 1229 |
| 642 | -Maṣṣūr II Moḥammad | 1244 |
| 683 | -Muṣaffar III Maḥmūd | 1284 |
| —698 | | —1298 |

[*Governors under the Mamlūk Sultāns*]

| | | |
|------|--|-------|
| 710 | -Mu'ayyad Abū-l-Fidā Ismā-'il (<i>the historian</i>) | 1310 |
| 733 | -Afḍal Moḥammad | 1332 |
| —742 | | —1341 |

[*Mamlūks*]

F. EMESA (HIMS)

| | | |
|------|--------------------------------------|-------|
| 574 | -Moḥammad b. Shirkūh | 1178 |
| 581 | -Mujāhid Shirkūh | 1185 |
| 637 | -Maṣṣūr Ibrāhīm | 1239 |
| 644 | -Ashraf Muṣaffar-al-dīn Mūsā | 1245 |
| —661 | | —1262 |

[*Mamlūks*]

G. ARABIA

| | | |
|-------------|---|-------|
| 569 | -Mu'aḥḥam Tūrān-Shāh b. Ayyūb | 1173 |
| 577 | -Sayf-al-Islām Ṭuḡhtigīn b. Ayyūb | 1181 |
| 593 | -Mu'izz-al-dīn Ismā-'il | 1196 |
| 598 | -Nāṣir Ayyūb. . . . | 1201 |
| 611 | -Muṣaffar Sulaymān | 1214 |
| 612 | -Mas'ūd Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Yūsuf | 1215 |
| —625 or 626 | | —1228 |

[*Rasūlids*]

A.H.
650—922

29. MAMLŪK SULTĀNS

A.D.
1252—1517

Mamlūk means 'owned,' and was generally applied to a white slave. The Mamlūk Sultāns of Egypt were Turkish and Circassian slaves, and had their origin in the purchased body-guard of the Ayyūbid Sultān -Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb. The first of their line was a woman, Queen Shajar-al-durr, widow of -Ṣāliḥ; but a representative of the Ayyūbid family (Mūsā) was accorded the nominal dignity of joint sovereignty for a few years. Then followed a succession of slave kings, divided into two dynasties, the Baḥrī ('of the River') and the Burjī ('of the Fort') who ruled Egypt and Syria down to the beginning of the 16th century. In spite of their short reigns and frequent civil wars and assassinations, they maintained as a rule a well-organized government, and Cairo is still full of proofs of their appreciation of art and their love of building.* Their warlike qualities were no less conspicuous in their successful resistance to the Crusaders, and to the Tatar hordes that overran Asia and menaced Egypt in the 13th century.

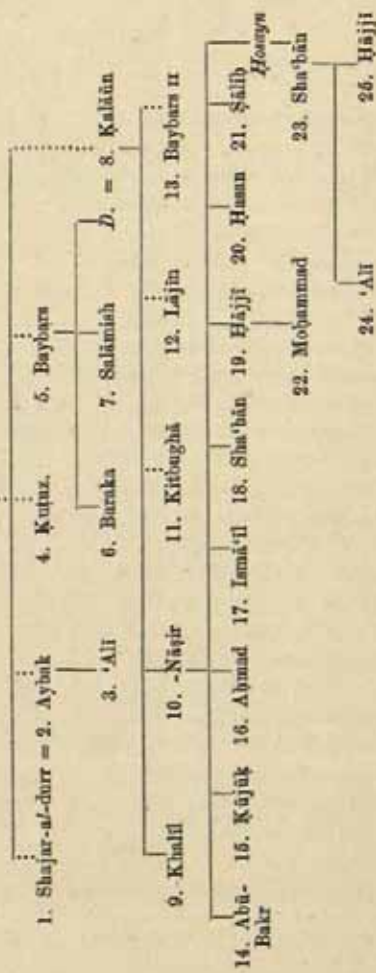
* See my *Cairo* (1892) chap. iii, and *Art of the Saracens of Egypt* (1886) chap. i.

| A.H. | A. BAHRĪ MAMLŪKS | A.D. |
|---------|--|-----------|
| 648—792 | | 1250—1390 |
| 648 | Shajar-al-durr | 1250 |
| 648 | -Mu'izz 'Izz-al-dīn Aybak | 1250 |
| 655 | -Manşūr Nūr-al-dīn 'Alī | 1257 |
| 657 | -Muẓaffar Sayf-al-dīn Qūṭuz | 1259 |
| 658 | -Ẓāhir Rukn-al-dīn Baybars -Bundukdārī | 1260 |
| 676 | -Sa'id Nāşir-al-dīn Baraka Khān | 1277 |
| 678 | -'Ādil Badr-al-dīn Salāmish | 1279 |
| 678 | -Manşūr Sayf-al-dīn Qalāūn | 1279 |
| 689 | -Ashraf Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Khalīl | 1290 |
| 693 | -Nāşir Nāşir-al-dīn Moḥammad | 1293 |
| 694 | -'Ādil Zayn-al-dīn Kitbughā | 1294 |
| 696 | -Manşūr Ḥusām-al-dīn Lājīn | 1296 |
| 698 | -Nāşir Moḥammad (again) | 1298 |
| 708 | -Muẓaffar Rukn-al-dīn Baybars -Jāshankir | 1308 |
| 709 | -Nāşir Moḥammad (third time) | 1309 |
| 741 | -Manşūr Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr | 1340 |
| 742 | -Ashraf 'Alā-al-dīn Qūjūq | 1341 |
| 742 | -Nāşir Shihāb-al-dīn Aḥmad | 1342 |
| 743 | -Ṣalīḥ 'Imād-al-dīn Ismā'il | 1342 |
| 746 | -Kāmil Sayf-al-dīn Sha'bān | 1345 |
| 747 | -Muẓaffar Sayf-al-dīn Ḥājji | 1346 |
| 748 | -Nāşir Nāşir-al-dīn Ḥasan | 1347 |
| 752 | -Ṣalīḥ Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Ṣalīḥ | 1351 |
| 755 | -Nāşir Ḥasan (again) | 1354 |
| 762 | -Manşūr Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Moḥammad | 1361 |
| 764 | -Ashraf Nāşir-al-dīn Sha'bān | 1363 |
| 778 | -Manşūr 'Alā-al-dīn 'Alī | 1376 |
| 783 | -Ṣalīḥ Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Ḥājji | 1381 |
| 784 | <i>Barqūq</i> (see <i>Burjis</i>) | 1382 |
| 791 | Ḥājji again, with title of -Muẓaffar | 1389 |
| —792 | | —1390 |

[*Burjī Mamlūks*]

BAHRĪ MAMLŪKS

-ŞĀLIH AYYŪB



•• Dotted lines indicate the relation between master and slave.

| A. H. | | A. D. |
|---------|--|-----------|
| 784—922 | B. BURJĪ MAMLŪKS | 1382—1517 |
| 784 | -Zāhir Sayf-al-dīn Barkūk | 1382 |
| | [Interrupted by Hājji 791-2.] | |
| 801 | -Nāṣir Nāṣir-al-dīn Faraj | 1398 |
| 808 | -Manṣūr 'Izz-al-dīn 'Abd-al-'Azīz | 1405 |
| 809 | -Nāṣir Faraj (again) | 1406 |
| 815 | -'Ādil -Musta'in ('Abbāsīd Caliph) | 1412 |
| 815 | -Murayyad Shaykh | 1412 |
| 824 | -Muṣaffar Aḥmad | 1421 |
| 824 | -Zāhir Sayf-al-dīn Taṭār | 1421 |
| 824 | -Ṣalīb Nāṣir-al-dīn Moḥammad | 1421 |
| 825 | -Ashraf Sayf-al-dīn Bars-bey | 1422 |
| 842 | -Azīz Jamāl-al-dīn Yūsuf | 1438 |
| 842 | -Zāhir Sayf-al-dīn Jaḥmaḳ | 1438 |
| 857 | -Manṣūr Fakhr-al-dīn 'Othmān | 1453 |
| 857 | -Ashraf Sayf-al-dīn Ināl | 1453 |
| 865 | -Murayyad Shihāb-al-dīn Aḥmad | 1460 |
| 865 | -Zāhir Sayf-al-dīn Khāshḳadam | 1461 |
| 872 | -Zāhir Sayf-al-dīn Bilbey | 1467 |
| 872 | -Zāhir Timurbughā | 1468 |
| 873 | -Ashraf Sayf-al-dīn Kāit-Bey | 1468 |
| 901 | -Nāṣir Moḥammad | 1495 |
| 904 | -Zāhir Kānsūh | 1498 |
| 905 | -Ashraf Jānbālāt | 1499 |
| 906 | -Ashraf Kānsūh -Ghūrī | 1500 |
| 922 | -Ashraf Tūmān-Bey | 1516 |
| | | —1517 |
| | [Ottoman Sulṭāns.] | |

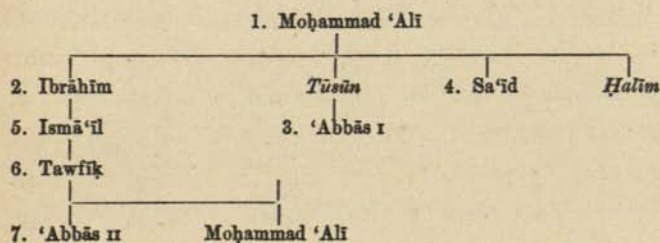
As there are seldom more than two kings of a family in the above list a genealogical table is unnecessary.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|-----------|--------------|-----------|
| 1220—1311 | 30. KHEDIVES | 1805—1893 |

After the conquest by Salīm I in 1517 (922) Egypt remained for three centuries a Turkish Pāshālik, where, however, the authority of the Pasha sent from Constantinople was minimized by a council of Mamlūk Beys. The arrival of Napoleon in 1798 put an end to this divided system; but after the victories of England at Abū-kīr and Alexandria and the consequent retreat of the French in 1801, the old dissensions revived. In 1805, however, Moḥammad 'Alī, the commander of an Albanian regiment in the Turkish army of Egypt, after massacring a number of the Mamlūk chiefs, made himself master of Cairo. A second massacre in 1811 completed the work, and henceforward Egypt has been governed, in nominal subordination to the Porte, by the dynasty of Moḥammad 'Alī, whose fourth successor, Ismā'īl Pasha, in 1866, adopted the official title of Khedive. Syria was annexed in 1831, but restored to Turkey under pressure of England in 1841. The Sūdān was conquered in successive expeditions, down to the time of Ismā'īl, but abandoned after

the death of General Gordon in 1885. The southern boundary of Egypt is now drawn near the second cataract of the Nile, and since the suppression of 'Arābī's military revolt by English troops in 1883, the administration of Egypt has been conducted under the advice of English officials.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|-------------------------------|------|
| 1220 | Moḥammad 'Alī | 1805 |
| 1264 | Ibrāhīm | 1848 |
| 1264 | 'Abbās I | 1848 |
| 1270 | Sa'id | 1854 |
| 1280 | Ismā'il | 1863 |
| 1300 | Tawfīq | 1882 |
| 1309 | 'Abbās II (regnant) | 1892 |



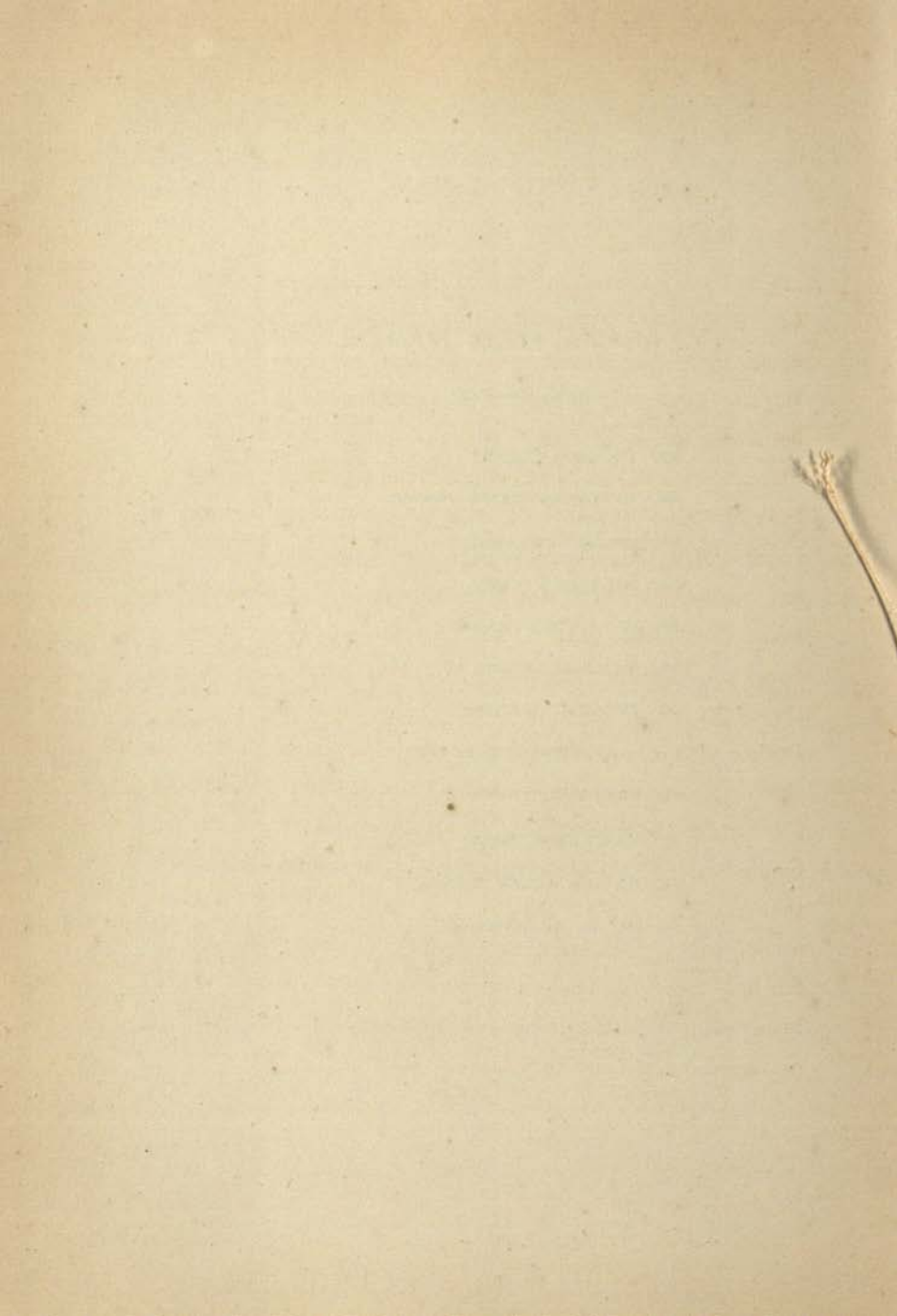
V. ARABIA FELIX (YAMAN)

SÆC. IX—XVIII

- 33. ZIYĀDIDS (ZABĪD)
- 34. YA'FURIDS (ṢAN'Ā, JANAD)
- 35. NAJĀHIDS (ZABĪD)
- 36. ṢULAIHIDS (ṢAN'Ā)
- 37. HAMDĀNIDS (ṢAN'Ā)
- 38. MAHDIDS (ZABĪD)
- 39. ZURAY'IDS ('ADEN)

AYYŪBIDS (*See EGYPT*)

- 40. RASŪLIDS (YAMAN)
- 41. ṬĀHIRIDS (YAMAN)
- 42. RASSID IMĀMS (SA'DA)
- 43. IMĀMS OF ṢAN'Ā



V. THE YAMAN

SÆC. IX—XVIII

The history of Arabia after the Moḥammadan revolution bore a close resemblance to its pre-Islamic annals. The Arabs under the Caliphate were very like the Arabs of 'the Days of Ignórance,' a people of many disconnected tribes headed by chiefs, and many towns and districts governed by Shaykhs, who were sometimes under control, and at others asserted their independence and styled themselves Amírs or Imāms. The Caliphs appointed a governor of the Yaman, and a sub-governor of Mecca or Medína; but the outlying towns recognized chiefly the authority of their local Shaykhs. In the beginning of the third century of the Hijra, which saw the dismemberment of the great Islamic empire by the rise of powerful dynasties on its skirts, the governor of the Yaman followed the example of the Idrísids and Aghlabids in North Africa; and about the time when the Tāhirids were amputating the right hand of the 'Abbāsid empire in Khurāsān, Moḥammad the *Ziyādid* established his authority at Zabīd, the city he had founded in the Tihāma, and thus inaugurated the rule of independent dynasties in Arabia, though the Caliphs still continued to appoint governors at intervals.

| A. H. | | A. D. |
|---------|---------------|----------|
| 204—409 | 33. ZIYĀDIDS* | 819—1018 |
| | (ZABĪD) | |

The Ziyādids, or Banū Ziyād, ruled at Zabīd for two centuries, and their kingdom included a considerable part of the Yaman. As their power waned, various independent rulers and dynasties sprang up: the *Ya'furids* established themselves at Ṣan'ā and Janad; Sulaymān b. Ṭarf subdued a wide territory bordering the northern coast of the Yaman, with 'Aththar for its capital; and the Carmathian 'Alī b. -Faql even plundered Zabīd itself shortly after 904 (292). Under the last Ziyādid, the government of their province fell entirely into the hands of a succession of slaves, until Najāḥ, an Abyssinian slave of Marjān, the last Ziyādid *Maire du palais*, substituted his own dynasty, the *Najāhids*, at Zabīd in 1021 (412).

* The history of the Arabian dynasties may be read in H. C. Kay's comprehensive work *Yaman, its early mediæval history*, 1892, which includes a translation of the Arabic history of 'Omāra and other important and interesting materials.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|--|-------|
| 204 | Moḥammad b. 'Abd-Allāh b. Ziyād | 819 |
| 245 | Ibrāhīm b. Moḥammad | 859 |
| 289 | Ziyād b. Ibrahim | 901 |
| 291? | Abū-l-Jaysh Ishāk b Ibrāhīm | 903? |
| 371 | 'Abd-Allāh (<i>or</i> Ziyād, <i>or</i> Ibrāhīm) b Ishāk | 981 |
| —409 | | —1018 |

Vazīra

| | | |
|--------|----------------------------|-------|
| 371 | Ruḥd | 981 |
| e. 373 | -Ḥosayn b Salāma | 983 |
| 402 | Marjān | 1011 |
| —412 | | —1021 |

Nafīs, 407—12

[*Najādhids*]

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|---------------|---------|
| 247—345 | 34. YA'FURIDS | 861—956 |

(ṢAN'Ā AND JANAD)

| | | |
|--------|--|--------|
| 247 | Ya'fur b. 'Abd-al-Raḥmān | 861 |
| 259 | Moḥammad b Ya'fur | 872 |
| 279 | 'Abd al-Ḳādir b. Aḥmad b. Ya'fur | 892 |
| 279 | Ibrāhīm b. Moḥammad | 892 |
| e. 285 | As'ad b. Ibrāhīm | e. 898 |
| 288 | <i>Basid Imām -Ḥadī</i> | 900 |
| 299 | <i>Carathian 'Alī b. -Faḍl</i> | 911 |
| 303 | As'ad <i>restored</i> | 915 |
| 332 | Moḥammad b. Ibrāhīm | 943 |
| 352 | 'Abd-Allāh b. Kaḥṭān | 963 |
| —387 | | —997 |

[Dynasty becomes insignificant]

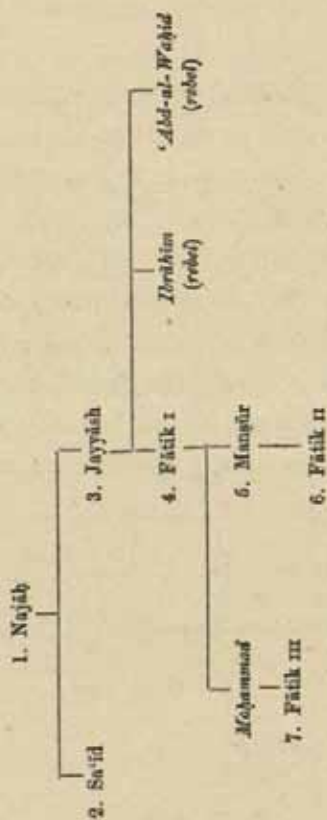
| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|--------------|-----------|
| 412—553 | 35. NAJĀHIDS | 1021—1158 |
| | (ZABĪD) | |

Najāḥ, the Abyssinian slave of the last Mayor of the Palace of the Ziyādid dynasty, ruled Zabīd till his death in 1060 (452); the town was then (454) seized by the Sulayḥids and formed part of their dominions until 473, when the son of Najāḥ recovered it, though it changed hands between the two dynasties several times during his life (see p. 94). After 1089 (482) Zabīd remained continuously with the Najāḥids, until their dynasty (which had fallen, like the Ziyādids, under the influence of vezirs) gave place to the *Mahdids* in 1059 (554).

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|--------|---|---------|
| 412 | -Mu'ayyad Najāḥ (+452) | 1021 |
| 454 | 'Adī -Dā'ī, <i>Sulayḥid</i> | 1062 |
| 473 | Sa'id -Aḥwal b. Najāḥ | 1080 |
| 482 | Jayyāsh b. Najāḥ | 1089 |
| 498 | -Fātik 1 b. Jayyāsh | 1104 |
| 503 | -Manṣūr b. -Fātik | 1109 |
| c. 517 | -Fātik 11 b. -Manṣūr | c. 1123 |
| 531 | -Fātik 111 b. Moḥammad b. -Manṣūr | 1136 |
| —554 | | —1159 |

[*Mahdids.*]

NAJAHIDS



A.H.
429—495

36. SÜLAYHIDS

A.D.
1037—1101

(ŞAN'Ā)

The *dā'i* (missionary) 'Alī b. Moḥammad, founder of the Shī'ite dynasty of the Sülayhids, or Banū Sulayḥ, made himself independent at Masār in 1037 (429), annexed Zabīd after the death of Najāḥ, in 1062 (454), conquered Şan'ā and all the Yaman by 1063 (455), and took possession of Mecca 455-6. His capital was Şan'ā; but he also held Zabīd until his death in 1080 (473), and his son -Mukarram recovered it in 475, but lost it in 479, took it again about 1088 (481), and almost immediately lost it for the last time. In 480 -Mukarram removed his capital from Şan'ā to Dhū-Jibla in Mikhlāf Ja'far.

A.H.

429

473

484

—492

Abū-Kāmil 'Alī b. Moḥammad . . .

-Mukarram Aḥmad . . .

-Maṣṣūr Abū-Himyar Sabā . . .

A.D.

1037

1080

1091

—1098

'Alī the Sülayhid

Moḥammad -Kāḍī

-Muṣaffar

'Abd-Allāh

1. 'Alī -Dā'i

2. -Mukarram

[Hamdānids of Şan'ā]

Aḥmad

3. -Maṣṣūr Sabā

A. H.
492—569

37 HAMDĀNIDS

A. D.
1098—1173

(ŞAN'Ā)

The various branches of the Banū Hamdān were descended from the tribes of Ḥāshid and Bakīl, which held a high rank among the Yaman Arabs, and occupied the country about Şan'ā and Sa'da. They supplied rulers to Şan'ā after the Şulayhids for three quarters of a century, up to the Ayyūbid invasion.

| A. H. | | A. D. |
|--------|--------------------------------|---------|
| 492 | Ḥātim b. -Ghashīm | 1098 |
| 502 | 'Abd-Allāh b. Ḥātim | 1108 |
| 504 | Ma'n b. Ḥātim | 1110 |
| e. 510 | Hishām b. -Ḳubbayt | e. 1116 |
| | -Ḥamās b. -Ḳubbayt | |
| | Ḥātim b. -Ḥamās | |
| 545 | Ḥātim b. Aḥmad | 1150 |
| 556 | 'Alī -Waḥid b. Ḥātim | 1160 |
| —569 | | —1173 |

[Ayyūbids.]

A.H.
554—569

38. MAHDIDS

A.D.
1159—1173

(ZABĪD)

The Mahdids, or Banū-l-Mahdī, succeeded the Najāhids at Zabīd. 'Alī b. -Mahdī was a devotee and prophet in the Tihāma, who acquired a following whom he named -Anṣār and Muhājirūn, or Helpers and Refugees (after the example of Moḥammad), and eventually 1150 (545) began to occupy forts and subdue the country, till at length he was able to attack and conquer Zabīd 1159 (554). His successors held the Tihāma, together with some districts and towns beyond, until the Ayyūbid conquest.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|--------------------------------|-------|
| 554 | 'Alī b. -Mahdī | 1159 |
| 554 | -Mahdī b. 'Alī | 1159 |
| 558 | 'Abd-al-Nabī b. 'Alī | 1162 |
| —569 | | —1173 |

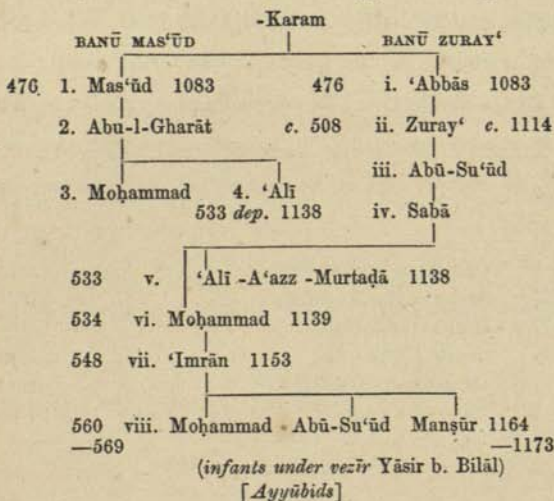
[Ayyūbids.]

A.H.
476—569

39. ZURAY'IDS
(‘ADEN)

A.D.
1083—1173

The two sons of -Karam, ‘Abbās and Mas‘ūd, were appointed joint governors of ‘Aden in 1083 (476) by the Ṣulayḥid -Mukarram, and the joint system of government continued for several generations. The ‘Aden princes Abū-Su‘ūd and Abū-Gharāt asserted their independence of the king of Ṣan‘ā, but were not always able to maintain it. The dynasty was, next to the Ṣulayḥids, the most important in the Yaman, and survived till the Ayyūbid conquest.*



* The list is taken from H. C. Kay's *Yaman* (Edw. Arnold, 1892), p. 307.

A. H.
569—625Ayyūbids
(YAMAN)A. D.
1173—1228

The Ayyūbid conquest in 1173 (569) is the great crisis in the mediæval history of Arabia. The kinsmen of Saladin swept over the Yaman and overturned its dynasties with the same uncompromising thoroughness as they displayed in Egypt, Syria, and Mesopotamia. The Hamdānids of Ṣan'ā, the Mahdids of Zabīd, and the Zuray'ids of 'Aden, were alike suppressed by the Kurdish conqueror Tūrān Shāh, son of Ayyūb, and for half a century, 1173—1227 (569—625) the Yaman remained in the hands of the great family which ruled Egypt and Syria. The list of the Ayyūbids of Arabia has already been given (p. 79) in connexion with the leading branch of Egypt, but is here repeated for convenience.

| A. H. | | A. D. |
|-------|-----------------------------------|-------|
| 569 | -Mu'azzam Tūrān -Shāh | 1173 |
| 577 | Sayf-al-Islām Toghtigīn | 1181 |
| 593 | Mu'izz-al-dīn Ismā'il | 1196 |
| 598 | -Naṣir Ayyūb | 1201 |
| 611 | -Muḥaffar Sulaymān | 1214 |
| 612 | -Mus'ūd Yūsuf | 1215 |
| —625 | | —1228 |

[Rasūlids]

A.H.
626—85840. RASŪLIDS
(YAMAN)A.D.
1229—1454

The Rasūlids succeeded the Ayyūbids in the government of all the Yaman, from Ḥaḍramawt to Mecca, and their power was maintained for over two centuries. They took their name from an envoy (*rasūl*) of the 'Abbāsīd caliph, whose son, 'Alī b. Rasūl, was appointed governor of Mecca by the last Ayyūbīd Sultān of Arabia, -Mas'ūd, in 1222 (619). On the death of Mas'ūd in 1228 (625) 'Alī's son Nūr-al-dīn 'Omar established his authority over the Yaman.

| | | |
|------|---------------------------------|-------|
| 626 | -Maṣṣūr 'Omar b. 'Alī | 1229 |
| 647? | -Muṣaffar Yūsuf | 1249? |
| 694 | -Ashraf 'Omar | 1295 |
| 696 | -Mu'ayyad Dāwūd | 1297 |
| 721 | -Mujāhid 'Alī | 1321 |
| 764 | -Afḍal -'Abbās | 1363 |
| 778 | -Ashraf Ismā'il I | 1376 |
| 803 | -Nāṣir Aḥmad | 1400 |
| 829 | -Maṣṣūr 'Abd-Allāh | 1426 |
| 830 | -Ashraf Ismā'il II | 1427 |
| 831 | -Zāhir Yaḥyā | 1428 |
| 842 | -Ashraf Ismā'il III | 1438 |
| 845 | -Muṣaffar Yūsuf | 1441 |

Rival claimants:

| | | |
|-------|------------------------------|--------|
| 846 | -Mufaddal Moḥammad | 1442 |
| 846 | -Nāṣir 'Abd-Allāh | 1442 |
| 854-8 | -Mas'ūd | 1450-4 |
| 855 | -Mu'ayyad -Ḥosayn | 1451 |

[*Tahirids.*]

RASŪLIDS

RASŪL

'Alī

1. - Mansūr 'Omar

2. - Muzaffar Yūsuf

3. - Ashraf 'Omar

4. - Mu'ayyad Dāwūd

5. - Mujaḥhid 'Alī

6. - Afḍal - 'Abbās

7. - Ashraf Ismā'īl I

8. - Nāṣir Aḥmad

11. - Zāhir Yahyā

9. - Mansūr 'Abd-Allāh

10. - Ashraf Ismā'īl II

12. - Ashraf Ismā'īl III

'Omar

13. - Muzaffar Yūsuf

A.H.

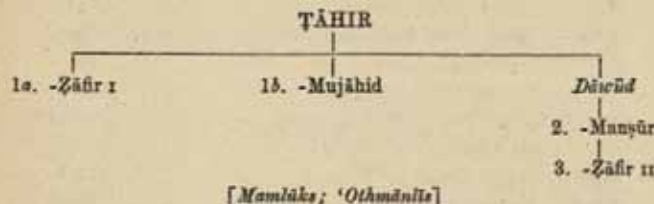
850—923

41. TĀHIRIDS

(YAMAN)

The Tāhirids, or Banū Tāhir, succeeded to the Yaman on the break-up of the Rasūlids, and maintained their authority until the conquest of Arabia by the last but one of the *Mamlūk Sulṭāns* of Egypt, Ḳānsūh -Ghūrī. The '*Oṭhmānī Turks* then occupied the country, thus made ready for their rule, in 1517 (923), but were forced to abandon it in 1633, in favour of the native Imāms.

| | | |
|------|--|-------|
| 850 | { Zāfir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn 'Āmir I (Zabīd, †870) . } | 1446 |
| | { -Mujāhid Shams-al-dīn 'Alī ('Aden, †883) . } | |
| 883 | -Manṣūr Tāj-al-dīn 'Abd-al-Waḥḥāb . | 1478 |
| 894 | -Zāfir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn 'Āmir | 1488 |
| —923 | | —1517 |



| A. H. | | A. D. |
|------------|------------------|-------------|
| 280—c. 700 | 42. RASSID IMĀMS | 893—c. 1300 |
| | (SA'DA) | |

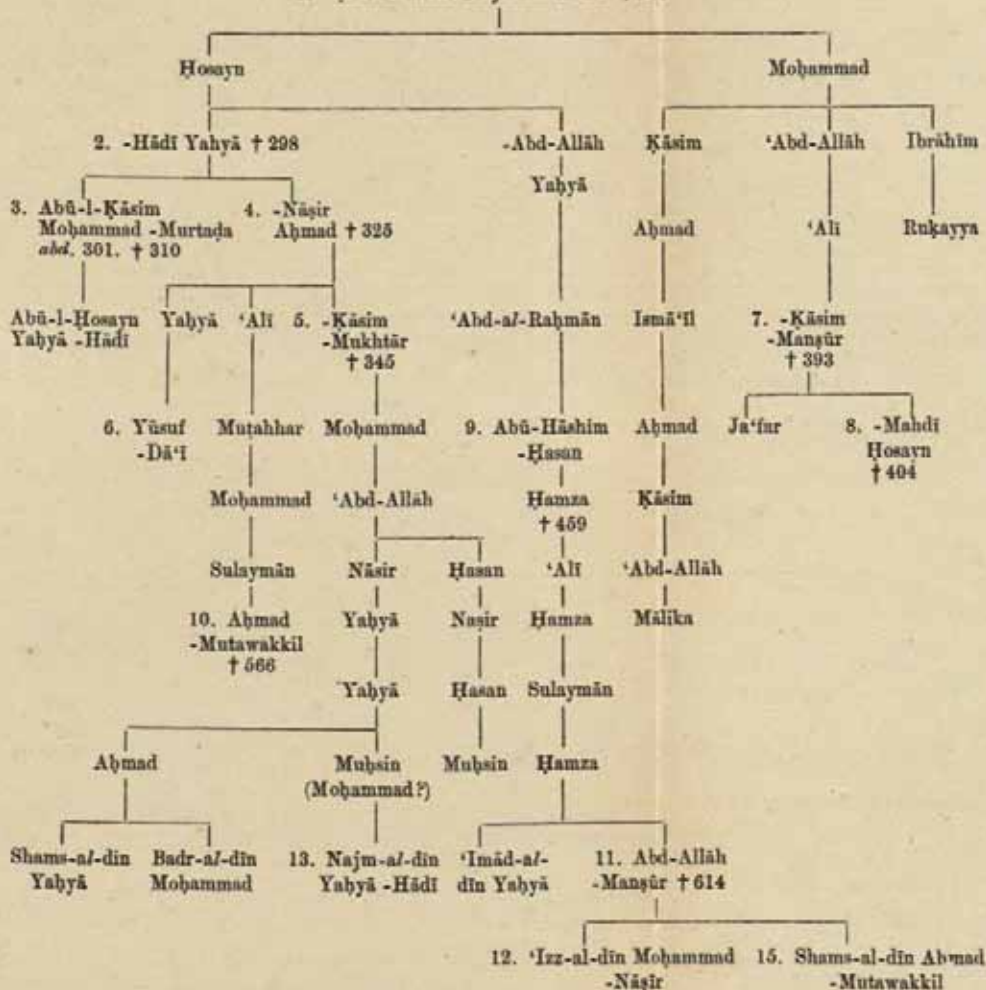
A line of Imāms of the Zaydite sect of the Shī'ites was founded at Sa'da in the Yaman by -Hādī Yahyā, grandson of -Kāsim -Rassi, a schismatic of the time of -Ma'mūn the 'Abbāsīd Caliph, and lasted down to the present day. The series is confused and the dates often uncertain, but the following list and genealogical table give the results of the latest researches.*

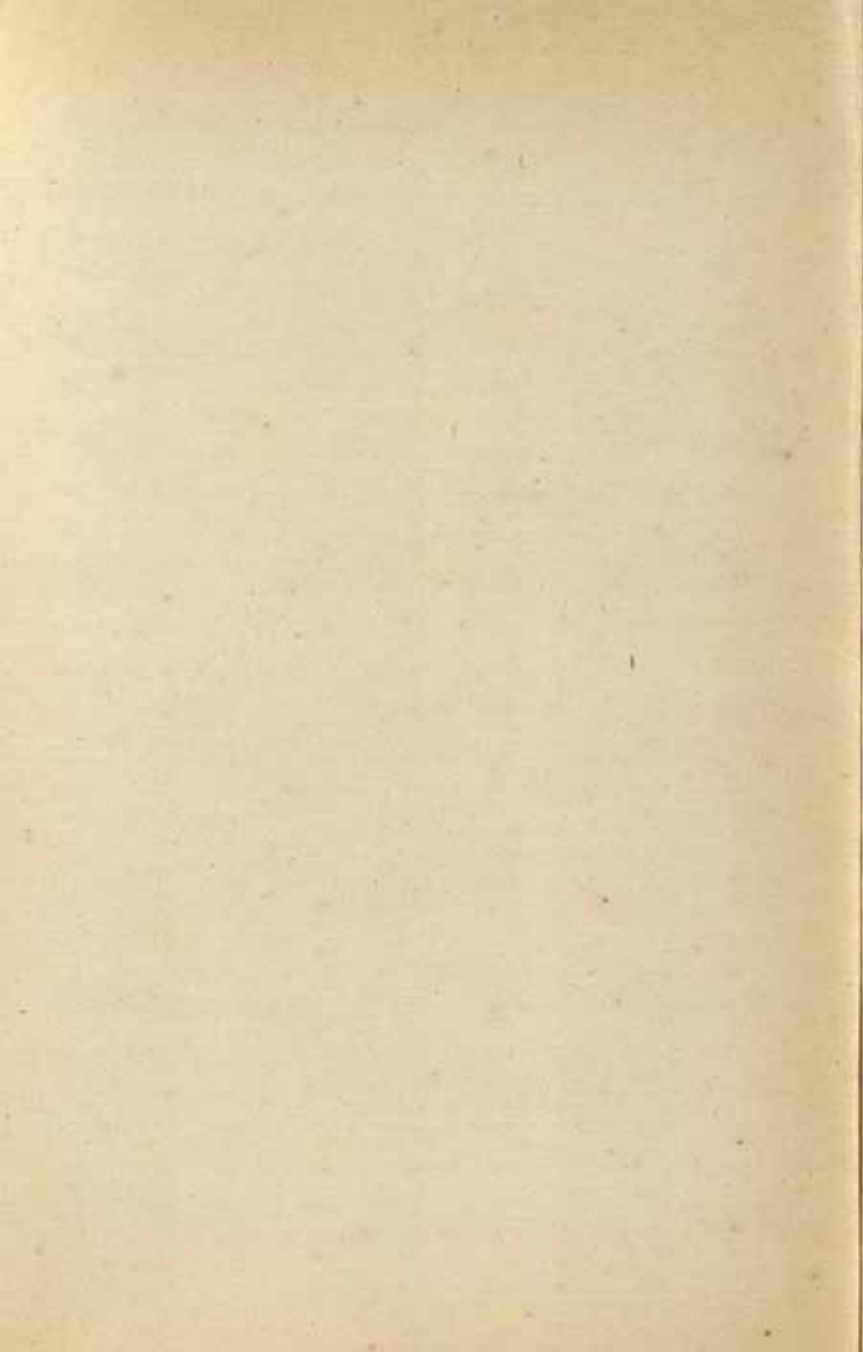
| | | |
|--------|--|-----------|
| † 246 | -Kāsim -Rassi Tarjumān-al-dīn | † 860 |
| 280 | -Hādī-ilā-l-ḥaqq Yahyā | 893 |
| 298 | -Murtaḍā Abū-l-Kāsim Moḥammad | 910 |
| 301 | -Nāṣir Aḥmad | 913 |
| 324 | -Kāsim -Mukhtār | 935 |
| | Yūsuf -Dā'ī | |
| | -Kāsim -Maṣṣūr | |
| 393 | -Mahdī -Ḥosayn † 404 | 1003 |
| 426 | Abū-Hāshim -Ḥasan | 1035 |
| 430 | -Nāṣir Abū-l-Faṭḥ -Daylamī | 1038 |
| 532 | -Mutawakkil Aḥmad † 566 | 1137 |
| 593 | -Maṣṣūr 'Abd-Allāh † 614 | 1196 |
| 614-23 | -Nāṣir 'Izz-al-dīn Moḥammad | 1217-1226 |
| 614 | -Hādī Najm-al-dīn Yahyā | 1217 |
| 623? | -Mahdī Aḥmad b. -Ḥosayn | 1226? |
| 656 | -Mutawakkil Shams-al-dīn Aḥmad | 1258 |
| c. 680 | -Muntaṣir Dāwūd | 1281 |

* See H. C. Kay's *Yaman*, 1892, for further details.

RASSID IMĀMS

1. -Kāsim -Rassi Tarjumān-al-dīn †246





A.H. A.D.
c. 1000— 43. IMĀMS OF ṢAN'Ā c. 1591—

The preceding Imāms had their chief seat at Sa'da, but they frequently succeeded in taking Ṣan'ā. It was not, however, until the expulsion of the 'Othmānī Turks in 1635 (1043) that Ṣan'ā became the permanent capital of the Imāmate of the Yaman. The Imāms who ruled there are generally distinguished by the title of Imāms of Ṣan'ā, but they were really only a continuation of the previous line of Sa'da, since their founder was -Kāsim -Maṣṣūr, a descendant of Yūsuf -Dā'i, great-grandson of -Hādī Yahya, the founder of the Rassid Imāmate. The following list, chiefly after Niebuhr, is incomplete, for representatives of the same family still possess authority in the Yaman.

| | | |
|---------|---------------------------------|---------|
| c. 1000 | -Kāsim -Maṣṣūr | c. 1591 |
| 1029 | -Mu'ayyad Moḥammad | 1620 |
| 1054 | -Mutawakkil Ismā'il | 1644 |
| 1087 | -Majid Moḥammad | 1676 |
| | -Mahdī Ahmād | |
| 1093 | -Hādī Moḥammad | 1682 |
| 1095 | -Mahdī Moḥammad | 1684 |
| 1126 | -Naṣir Moḥammad | 1714 |
| 1128 | -Mutawakkil -Kāsim | 1716 |
| 1139 | -Maṣṣūr -Ḥosayn | 1726 |
| 1139 | -Hādī -Majid Moḥammad | 1726 |
| 1140 | -Maṣṣūr (restored) | 1727 |
| 1160 | -Mahdī -'Abbās | 1747 |
| c. 1190 | -Maṣṣūr | c. 1776 |

VI. SYRIA AND MESOPOTAMIA

(ARAB PERIOD)

SÆC. X—XII

- 44. ḤAMDĀNIDS (—MŌṢIL, ALEPPO)
- 45. MIRDĀSIDS (ALEPPO)
- 46. 'OḲAYLIDS (—MŌṢIL, ETC.)
- 47. MARWĀNIDS (DIYĀR—BAKR)
- 48. MAZYADIDS (—ḤILLA)

VI. SYRIA AND MESOPOTAMIA

(ARAB PERIOD)

SÆC. X—XII.

In classifying the Moḥammadan dynasties of Asia, the purely geographical system adopted for Africa must be modified, in order to present the various groups of dynasties in historical sequence. These dynasties fall naturally into the following divisions:—VI. The Arab dynasties of Syria and Mesopotamia previous to the invasion of the Seljūk Turks; VII. The Persian and Transoxine dynasties before the Seljūks; VIII. The Seljūk family in all its ramifications; IX. The dynasties founded by officers who had served in the Seljūk armies, and subsisting between the decay of the Seljūk power and the invasion of the Mongols; X. The western successors of the Seljūks, especially the ‘Othmānlī Turks; XI. The Mongol family of Chingiz Khān in all its branches; XII. The dynasties which sprang up in Persia on the decline of the Mongol power; XIII. The dynasties which sprang from Timūr

(Tamerlane) in Transoxiana on the decay of the older branch of the Mongols; XIV. The dynasties of India (including Afghānistān).

In this arrangement the geographical progress from west to east is still generally preserved. We have first Syria and Mesopotamia down to the great sweep of the Seljūk invasion; then Persia and Transoxiana to the same epoch. The Seljūks and their officers and successors in the west follow. A new power, that of the Mongols, then comes to sweep away for a time all these lesser dynasties, save the 'Othmānlis. The Mongols in turn grow weak, and their Persian supplanters, notably the several dynasties of Shāha, to the present day, are placed next. Further north and east, the Mongols were continued in a new line, that of Timūr; and the dynasties sprung from this renowned chief, together with their Uzbeg successors in Transoxiana, are brought down to the present day. Still moving eastward, we arrive at India, and begin the series of Moḥammadan dynasties of Hindūstān with their historical source, the Ghaznawids of Afghānistān, and carry them down to the fall of the Mogul Empire and the establishment of British supremacy in India.

The first of these groups is formed of the dynasties founded by Arab tribes in Syria and Mesopotamia. The geographical division is not arbitrary, for the mountains of Kurdistān and the Zagros range form a natural boundary between Persia and Mesopotamia, which, at least in the earlier centuries of Moḥammadan history, was seldom over-stepped. The Buwayhids indeed combined lower Mesopotamia with their Persian empire, but as a rule a dynasty which ruled in Diyār-Bakr or -Jazīra did not extend its sway beyond the mountains to the east, though it frequently spread into Syria. The first group is not only distinct geographically; it is also an ethnological class. With the exception of the Marwānids, who were Kurds, the dynasties classed in this group were all pure Arabs. The Arab tribes which had migrated from their native deserts northwards into Syria and Mesopotamia had always been a political power with which the Caliphs had to reckon, and on the rapid decay of the central authority at Baghdād the various clans which roamed the Syrian desert and the valley of the Euphrates began to form permanent settlements, to occupy towns and forts, and found dynasties. Thus the Taghlib tribe furnished the *Ḥamdānīd* dynasty in -Mōṣil, Aleppo, and other cities;

the Banū Kilāb set the *Mirdāsids* on the throne of Aleppo; the Banū 'Oḡayl established their rule in Diyār-Bakr and -Jazīra (Mesopotamia) and part of -'Irāk (Chaldaea); and the Banū Asad set up the powerful *Manyadid* dynasty at -Ḥilla. Yet while they exercised authority over cities, districts, and even whole provinces, these Arab chiefs did not abandon their national life, but for the most part continued to dwell in tents with their tribesmen, and wander as the needs of their flocks or their predatory instincts suggested.

A. H.
317—394

44. *HAMDĀNIDS*

A. D.
929—1003

(-MŌṢIL, ALEPPO, ETC.)

The Ḥamdānid family, descended from the Arab tribe of Taghlib, had settled in the neighbourhood of -Mōṣil, and Ḥamdān b. Ḥamdūn had taken a prominent part in the political events of that city as early as 873 (260). In 894 (281) Moḥammad b. Ḥamdān was in possession of Māridīn, but was expelled by the Caliph -Mu'taḍid; in 904 (292) Abū-l-Hayjā 'Abd-Allāh b. Ḥamdān was appointed governor of -Mōṣil and its dependencies; and from this time the power of the Ḥamdānids greatly increased. In 919 (307) Ibrāhīm b. Ḥamdān was made governor of Diyār-Rabī'a, where he was succeeded by his brother Dāwūd in 921 (309); Sa'īd b. Ḥamdān became governor of Nahāwand in 924 (312), and several other members of the family received appointments. 'Abd-Allāh made his son -Ḥasan his lieutenant at -Mōṣil, which, with an interval, (317—319), the latter held, together with Diyār-Rabī'a, and Diyār-Bakr, until his deposition by his son Abū-Taghlib in 968 (358). In 941 (330) he was given the title of Nāṣir-*al-dawla* by the Caliph; and at the same time his brother 'Alī was named Sayf-*al-dawla*.

The latter, after governing Wāsiṭ, took Aleppo from the Ikbshīdids in 944 (333), and won a great reputation in his wars against the Greeks. The Ḥamdānids were Shī'ites, and Sayf-al-dawla paid homage to the Fātimid Caliphs. After the deaths of these two brothers, the power of the dynasty rapidly declined. The *Fātimids* absorbed the dominions of Sayf-al-dawla's grandsons in Syria, and the *Buwayhids* ousted Abū-Taghlib from Mesopotamia in 977-9 (367-9). The recovery of -Mōṣil by his brothers -Ḥosayn and Abū-Ṭāhir was but a temporary and brief revival.

I. OF -MŌṢIL

| | | |
|------|--|------|
| 317 | Nāṣir-al-dawla Abū-Moḥammad -Ḥasan | 929 |
| 358 | 'Uddat-al-dawla Abū-Taghlib -Ghaḍanfīr | 968 |
| —369 | | —979 |
| 371 | { Abū-Ṭāhir Ibrāhīm | 981 |
| —380 | { Abū-'Abd-Allāh -Ḥosayn | —991 |

[*Bucayhids*, '*Oḡaylids*]

II. OF ALEPPO

| | | |
|-----|---------------------------------------|------|
| 333 | Sayf-al-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī . . | 944 |
| 356 | Sa'd-al-dawla Abū-l-Ma'ālī Sharif . . | 967 |
| 381 | Sa'id-al-dawla Abū-l-Faḍāl Sa'id . . | 991 |
| 392 | { Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī | 1001 |
| 394 | { Abū-l-Ma'ālī Sharif | 1003 |

[*Fātimids*]

A.H.

414—472

A.D.

1023—1079

45. MIRDĀSIDS

(ALEPPO)

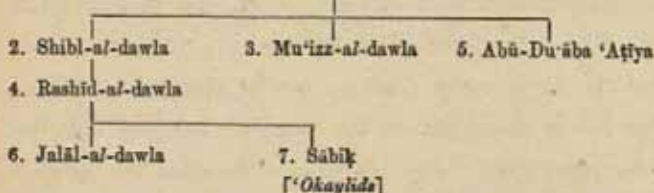
Asad-*al-dawla* Abū-ʿAlī Šāliḥ b. Mirdās, of the Arab tribe of the Banū Kilāb, raided the neighbourhood of Aleppo (Ḥalab) with his Bedouins as early as 1011; and in 1023 (414) the inhabitants revolted against the Fāṭimid governor, and delivered the city to Šāliḥ, who ruled Aleppo until killed in a battle with the Egyptians in 1029 (420). His son Shibl-*al-dawla* Naṣr succeeded him, but was also killed by the Fāṭimid army in 1037 (429), and it was not until five years later that another son, Muʿizz-*al-dawla* Tamāl, who had governed -Raḥba, recovered Aleppo from the Egyptians. In 1057 (449) Tamāl again abandoned Aleppo to Egypt, whilst his brother ʿAṭīya occupied -Raḥba. This fresh Fāṭimid rule was terminated in 1060 (452) by the conquest of the city by Rashīd-*al-dawla*, son of Shibl-*al-dawla*; but he was expelled in the following year by his uncle Muʿizz-*al-dawla*, who died in 454, and bequeathed Aleppo to his brother ʿAṭīya. Rashīd-*al-dawla*, however, recovered the city in the same year,

and 'Atīya seized -Raḳḳa, whence he was expelled by the 'Oḳaylid Muslim b. Kuraysh in 1070 (463). Rashid-al-dawla was succeeded in 468 by his son Jalāl-al-dawla, who took Manbij from the Greeks, and whose brother Sābiḳ (or Shabīb) held Aleppo until its conquest by the 'Oḳaylid Muslim in 1079 (472).*

| | | |
|------|---|-------|
| 414 | Ṣalīb b. Mirdās | 1023 |
| 420 | Shibl-al-dawla Abū -Kāmil Naṣr | 1029 |
| 429 | <i>Fātimids</i> | 1037 |
| 434 | Mu'izz-al-dawla Abū 'Ulwān Tamāl | 1042 |
| 449 | <i>Fātimids</i> | 1057 |
| 452 | Rashid-al-dawla Maḥmūd | 1060 |
| 453 | Mu'izz-al-dawla <i>restored</i> | 1061 |
| 454 | Abū-Du'āba 'Atīya | 1062 |
| 454 | Rashid-al-dawla <i>restored</i> | 1062 |
| 468 | Jalāl-al-dawla (Ṣamṣām-al-dawla) Naṣr | 1075 |
| 468 | Abū-l-Faḍāl Sābiḳ | 1078 |
| —472 | | —1079 |

MIRDĀS

1. Ṣalīb



* See H. Sauvage, *A Dinar of Salih ibn Mirdas of Aleppo* (*Numismatic Chronicle*, 1873).

A.H.
386—489

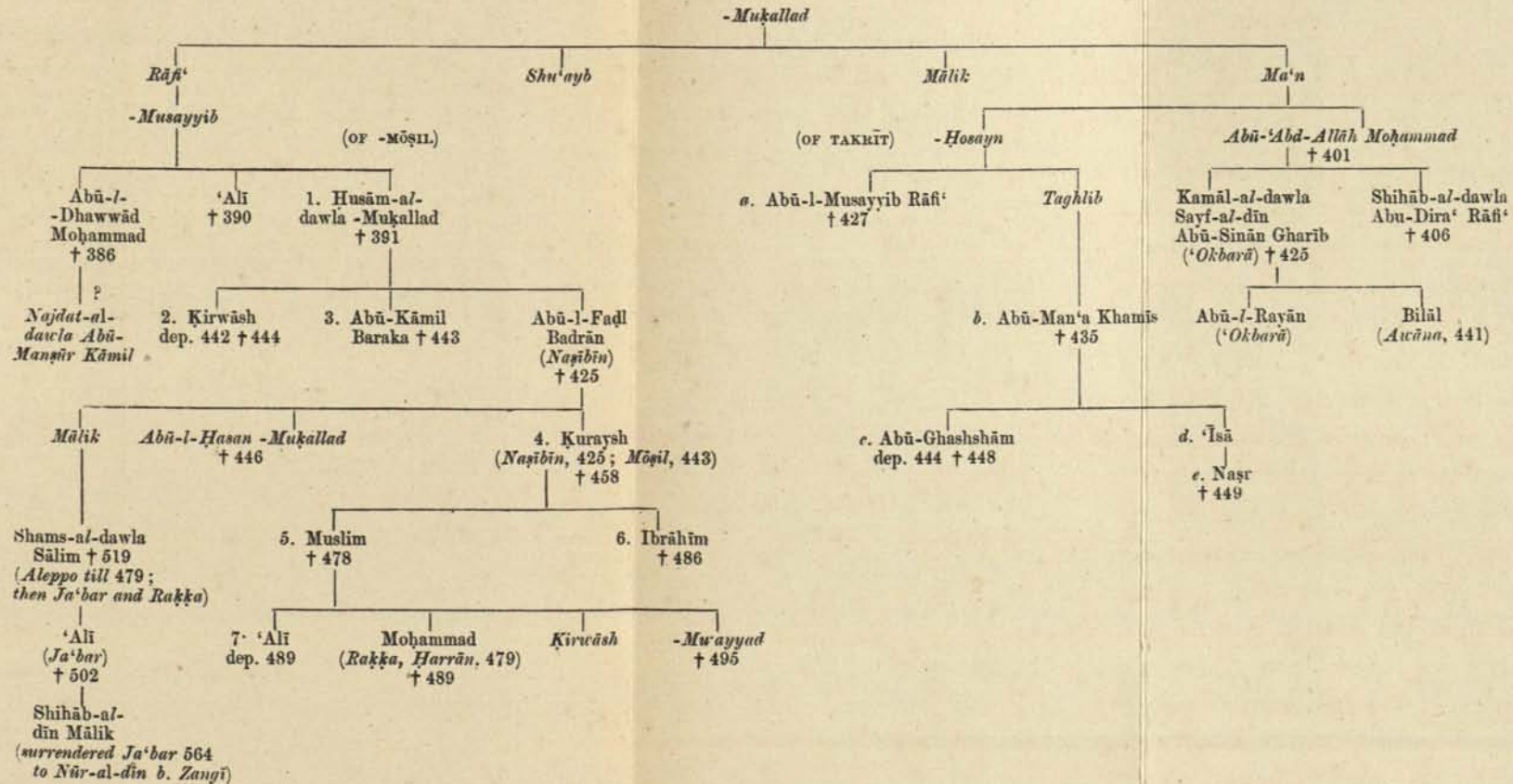
46. 'OḲAYLIDS

A.D.
996—1096

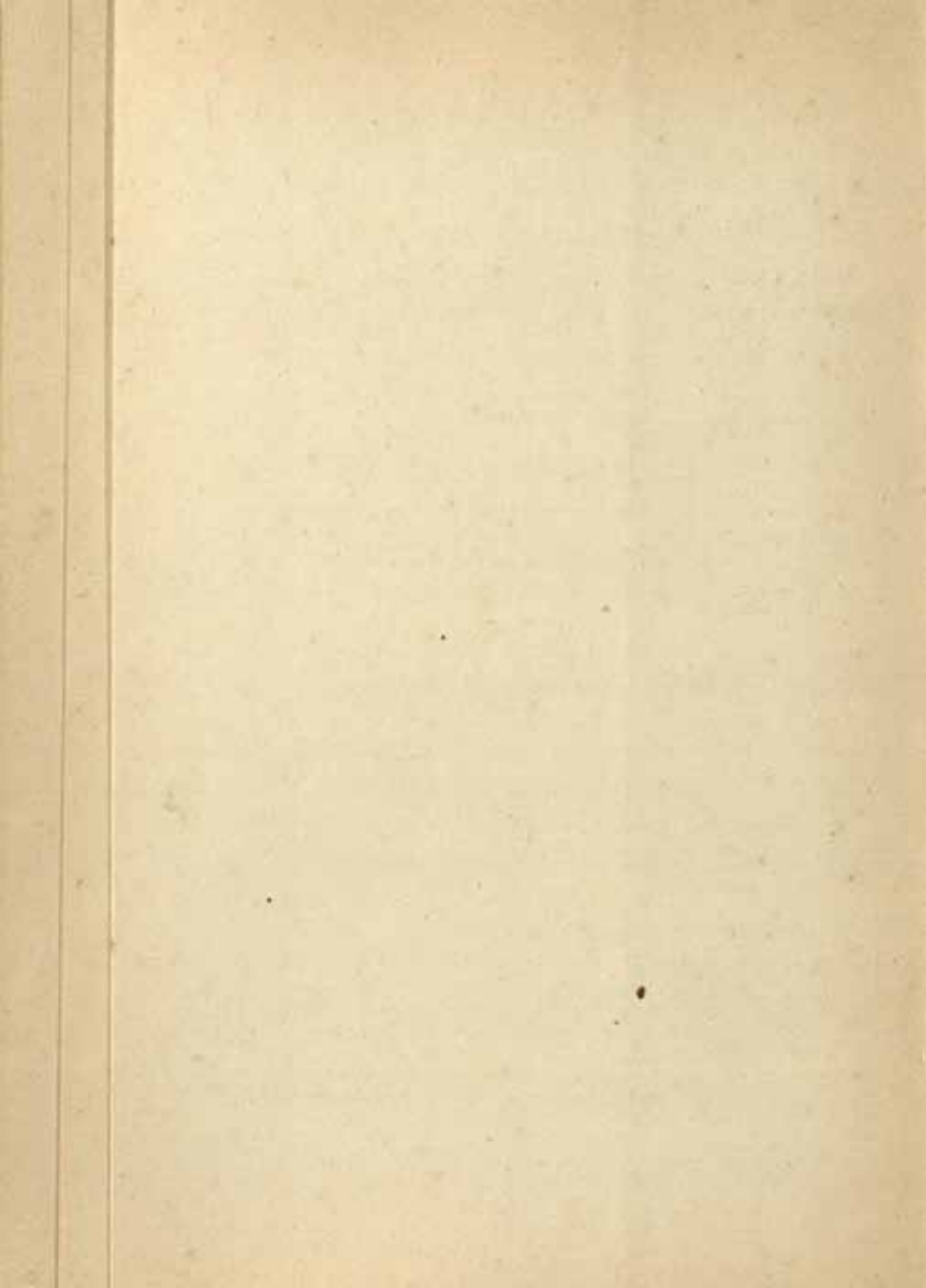
(-MŌṢIL, ETC.)

The Banū 'Oḳayl, or 'Oḳaylids, a very large Arab clan, formed one of the five divisions of the Banū Ka'b, of the Modarite tribes of Arabia; and after their adoption of Islām their sub-clans spread over parts of Syria, -'Irāḳ, and even North Africa and Andalusia. In the early days of the 'Abbāsīd Caliphate, -'Irāḳ was full of 'Oḳaylids. The Banū Muntafīḳ, one of their sub-clans, migrated to the marshy country about -Baṣra, called the Baṭīḥa or Baṭā-iḥ ('The Swamps'), under the family of Ma'rūf; the Banū Khafāja for centuries occupied themselves in looting caravans in the deserts of -'Irāḳ, as late as 1327; while the Banū 'Obāda inhabited, with the Banū Muntafīḳ, the country between -Kūfa, Wāsiṭ, and -Baṣra, and eventually furnished the line of 'Oḳaylid princes of -Mōṣil. In the fourth century of the Hijra, the 'Oḳaylids of Syria and -'Irāḳ were tributary to the powerful Arab dynasty of Ḥamdānids, but on the fall of these princes, the 'Oḳaylids attained independent sovereignty. Abū-Dhawwād Moḥammad was granted by the last of the Ḥamdānids the cities of Naṣībīn and Balad in 989 (379), to which he added -Mōṣil in 380, but

'OḤAYLIDS



[Muḥyī-al-dīn Abū-l-Ḥaṭīth Muḥārīsh, descended from Shu'ayb b. -Muḥallad, governed 'Ana and Ḥaḍīṭha, and was succeeded, 499, by his son Sulaymān, who died in 528. Muḥammad, descended from Mālik b. -Muḥallad, governed Ḥīt in 496. See H. C. Kay, *Notes on the History of the Banū 'Oḡayl*, J.R.A.S.]



was expelled by the Buwayhids in 381. His brother Muḳallad was more successful; he took -Mōṣil in 996 (386), and was confirmed in the government, together with -Kūfa, -Ḳaṣr, and -Jāmi‘ān, by Bahā-*al*-dawla the Buwayhid, on condition of tribute; to which were presently added -Anbār, -Madā’in, and Daḳūḳā. In the time of Muslim b. Ḳuraysh, the dominions of the ‘Oḳaylid of -Mōṣil extended from the neighbourhood of Baghdād to Aleppo. On his death, the principality speedily decayed in power, and -Mōṣil, its capital, was conquered by a Turkish adventurer, Ḳawām-*al*-dawla Karbuḳā in 1096, (489), and merged in the Seljūḳ empire. Other branches, or individual chiefs, of the ‘Oḳaylids, who governed various small towns in Syria and Mesopotamia, are indicated in the genealogical table. After the destruction of their power in Mesopotamia the ‘Oḳaylids returned to their old camping grounds in -Baḥrayn.

| | | |
|------|---|-------|
| 386 | Ḥunām- <i>al</i> -dawla -Muḳallad | 996 |
| 391 | Mu‘tamid- <i>al</i> -dawla Ḳirwāsh | 1000 |
| 442 | Za‘im- <i>al</i> -dawla Abū-Ḳāmil Baraka | 1050 |
| 443 | ‘Alam- <i>al</i> -dīn Abū-l-Ma‘ālī Ḳuraysh | 1051 |
| 453 | Sharaf- <i>al</i> -dawla Abū-l-Makārīm Muslim | 1061 |
| 478 | Ibrāhīm | 1086 |
| 486 | ‘Alī | 1093 |
| —489 | [Seljūḳs] | —1096 |

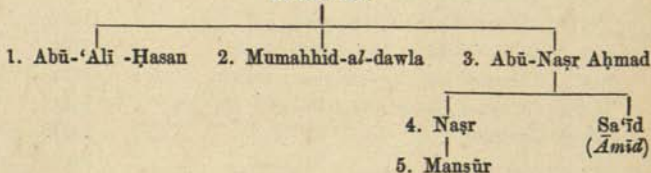
| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|---------------|----------|
| 380—489 | 47. MARWĀNIDS | 990—1096 |

(DIYĀR-BAKR)

On the death of Bād, governor of Ḥiṣn Kayfā, in 990 (380) his sister's son, Abū-'Alī b. Marwān, a Kurd by race, succeeded to his dominions, which included the chief towns of Diyār-Bakr, such as Āmid, Arzan, Mayyā-fāriḳīn, and Kayfā. His successor paid homage to the Fāṭimid Caliph of Egypt, and was rewarded with the government of Aleppo, as the Caliph's officer, for a time, in succession to the expelled Ḥamdānids. The Marwānids also acknowledged the suzerainty of the Buwayhids; but vanished upon the invasion of the Seljūks.

| | | |
|------|--|-------|
| 380 | Abū-'Alī -Ḥasan | 990 |
| 387 | Mumahhid-a/-dawla Abū-Manṣūr | 997 |
| 402 | Naṣr-a/-dawla Abū-Naṣr Aḥmad | 1011 |
| 453 | Nizām-a/-dawla Naṣr | 1061 |
| 472 | Manṣūr | 1079 |
| —489 | | —1096 |

MARWĀN



[Seljūks]

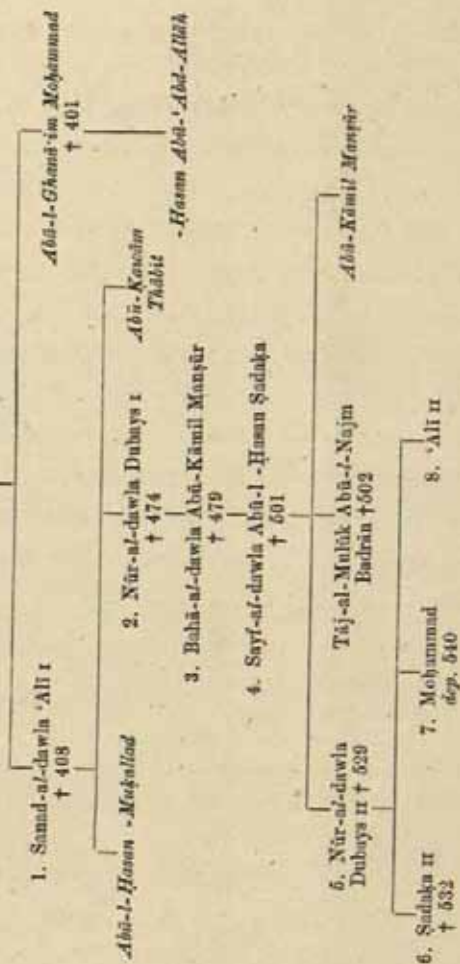
A.H.
403—54548. MAZYADIDS
(-HILLA)A.D.
1012—1150

The Banū Mazyad, a tribe of the Banū Asad, after leaving Arabia, spread over the deserts to -Kādisīya on the left bank of the Tigris. The fourth of the dynasty, Ṣadaqa, built his new capital of -Hilla on the site of the town of -Jāmi'ān in 1101 (495), and the beauty of its buildings and extent of its trade were long celebrated. Ṣadaqa is one of the great heroes of Arab history, extolled by poets and chroniclers. The dynasty declined after his death, and in 1162 (558) the Caliph -Mustanjid attacked the tribes of the Banū Asad in -'Irāk, and killed 4000 of their fighting men, so that they disappeared from the Euphrates country. The Banū Muntafik of the Batiha succeeded to part of their territory; the Zangids replaced them in power.

| | | |
|------|--|-------|
| 403 | Sanad-al-dawla 'Alī I | 1012 |
| 408 | Nūr-al-dawla Dubays I | 1017 |
| 474 | Bahā-al-dawla Abū-Kāmil Manṣūr | 1081 |
| 479 | Sayf-al-dawla Ṣadaqa I | 1086 |
| 501 | Nūr-al-dawla Dubays II | 1107 |
| 529 | Ṣadaqa II | 1134 |
| 532 | Moḥammad | 1137 |
| 540 | 'Alī II | 1145 |
| —545 | | —1150 |

[Zangids]

MAZYAD -ASADĪ



VII. PERSIA AND TRANSOXIANA

(PERSIAN PERIOD)

SÆC. IX—XI

49. DULAFIDS (KURDISTĀN)
50. SĀJIDS (ADHARBĪJĀN)
51. 'ALIDS (TABARISTĀN)
52. TĀHIRIDS (KHURĀSĀN)
53. ŠAFFĀRIDS (PERSIA)
54. ŠĀMĀNIDS (TRANSOXIANA AND PERSIA)
55. ĪLAK KHĀNS (TURKISTĀN)
56. ZIYĀRIDS (JURJĀN)
57. ḤASANWAYHIDS (KURDISTĀN)
58. BUWAYHIDS (SOUTHERN PERSIA AND -'IRĀQ)
59. KĀKWAYHIDS (KURDISTĀN)

VII. PERSIA AND TRANSOXIANA

(PERSIAN PERIOD)

SÆC. IX—XI

The following group of dynasties ruling in Persia and the province of *Mā-warā-l-nahr* ('Beyond the River' Oxus), or Transoxiana, up to the inroad of the Seljūks, belongs to the period of Persian revival. The Caliph -Ma'mūn, whose mother was a Persian slave, attained to the Caliphate, and dethroned his brother -Amīn, by the aid of Persian troops raised in Khurāsān; his power was maintained by his Persian adherents; and his policy was unlimited conciliation of Persian national aspirations. The result was a revival of Persian influences at the expense of the old Arab polity, and the consequent weakening of the State. The great officers, governors, and generals, in the provinces began to acquire a dangerous degree of power, which -Ma'mūn and his successors in the Caliphate were unable to curb, and various Persian dynasties, professing a merely nominal

dependence upon the Caliphs, sprang up, just as the Arab tribes of Mesopotamia further west asserted their authority against the decrepit Caliphate. Some dynasties, such as the Buwayhids, were not even orthodox, but professed the Shi'ite tenets, which have always been popular in Persia, as they are at this day. Although the period is characteristically Persian, it is not to be assumed that all the dynasts were Persians by race. Abū-Dulaf, for example, was an Arab, Hasanwayh a Kurd, whilst the Īlak Khāns were Turks. The chief dynasties, however, were of Persian origin.

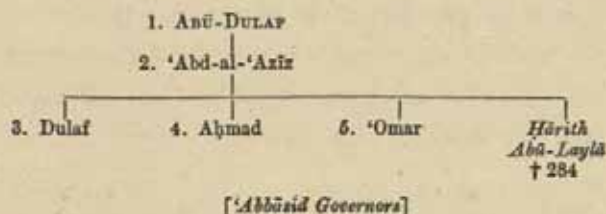
A.H.
c. 210—c. 285

49. DULAFIDS
(KURDISTÂN)

A.D.
c. 825—c. 898

Abū-Dulaf -'Ijlī was an officer of the Caliph -Amīn, and received the government of Hamadhān, in which he was succeeded by his son 'Abd-al-'Azīz and his grandsons. 'Omar b. 'Abd-al-'Azīz increased his dominions by the acquisition of Iṣpahān and Nahāwand in 281. They were succeeded by other governors of the Caliphs.

| | | |
|---------|--|---------|
| c. 210 | Abū-Dulaf -Kāsim b. Idrīs -'Ijlī . . . | c. 825 |
| 228 | 'Abd-al-'Azīz | 842 |
| 260 | Dulaf | 873 |
| 265 | Aḥmad | 878 |
| 280 | 'Omar | 893 |
| —c. 285 | | —c. 898 |



| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------------|------------|------------|
| 266—c. 318 | 50. SĀJIDS | 879—c. 930 |

(ADHARBĪJĀN)

Abū-l-Saj Dīvdād was governor of -Kūfa and -Ahwāz at the time of his death, 879 (266). At that date his son Moḥammad was governor of the Hijāz; but was transferred to -Anbār in 869; and then to Adharbījān in 276, to which was added Armenia in 898 (285). On his death his brother Yūsuf, who had been Wālī of Mecca in 884 (271), succeeded to the government of Armenia and Adharbījān, setting aside Moḥammad's son Dīvdād. Yūsuf invaded -Rayy in 918 (306) and was imprisoned by the Caliph in the following year, but was restored to his appointments in 922 (310). He annexed -Rayy in 311, and waged war upon the Carmathians. In 931 (319) the government of Adharbījān was vested in Muḥṣib, a freedman of Yūsuf's.

| | | |
|---------|---------------------------------|---------|
| 266 | Abū-l-Saj Dīvdād <i>died</i> | 879 |
| 276 | Moḥammad -Aṭash b. Dīvdād | 889 |
| 288 | Yūsuf b. Dīvdād | 900 |
| 315 | Abū-l-Muṣāfir -Fatḥ b. Moḥammad | 927 |
| —c. 318 | | —c. 930 |

[*Abbāsid Governors*]

A.H.
250—316

51. 'ALIDS

A.D.
864—928

(TABARISTĀN)

The branch of 'Alid, or Zaydite, Imāms who ruled at Sa'da in the Yaman has already been noticed (p. 102). Other members of the same family, descendants of either -Ḥasan or -Ḥosayn, the grandsons of the prophet Moḥammad, long maintained their rights to the Imāmate or Caliphate in the provinces bordering the southern shore of the Caspian, Daylam, Ṭabaristān, and Gilān. A list of merely spiritual pontiffs, or sporadic rebels, is beyond the present purpose, but in 864 (250) the 'Alids gained possession of Ṭabaristān, became a power, struck coins, and held the province for sixty-four years, until expelled by the *Sāmānids*. After this event, several rival houses of 'Alids continued to maintain themselves in Gilān and Daylam, and at least one of them, Abū-l-Faḍl Ja'far -Thā'ir fi-llāh, exercised the royal privilege of coinage.

| | | |
|------|--|------|
| 250 | -Ḥasan b. Zayd | 864 |
| 270 | Moḥammad b. Zayd | 883 |
| 287 | <i>Sāmānid government</i> | 900 |
| 301 | -Nāṣir Ḥasan b. 'Alī -Utrūsh | 913 |
| 304 | -Ḥasan b. -Kāsim | 916 |
| —316 | | —928 |

[*Sāmānids; Zayārids.*]

A.H.
205—259

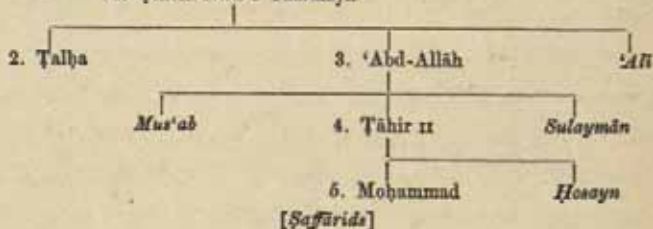
52. TĀHIRIDS
(KHURĀSĀN)

A.D.
820—872

Tāhir Dhū-l-Yamīnayn ('Ambidexter'), the celebrated general of -Ma'mūn, descended from a Persian slave, was appointed by that Caliph to the government of Khurāsān in 820 (205), where he and his dynasty became practically independent, though holding their authority by patent of the Caliphs and with express acknowledgment of vassalage. They did not attempt to extend their power much beyond the borders of their province, and after half a century collapsed tamely before the attack of Ya'qūb b. Layth the *Ṣaffārid*.

| | | |
|------|----------------------|------|
| 205 | Tāhir Dhū-l-Yamīnayn | 820 |
| 207 | Tālḥa | 822 |
| 213 | 'Abd-Allāh | 828 |
| 230 | Tāhir II | 844 |
| 248 | Moḥammad | 862 |
| —259 | | —872 |

1. TĀHIR DHŪ-L-YAMĪNAYN



A.H.
254—290

53. ŠAFFĀRIDS

A.D.
867—903

(PERSIA)

Ya'qūb, the son of -Layth the Šaffār ('Coppersmith'), was by a freak of fortune promoted from the leadership of a band of outlaws to a post of trust at the Court of the Caliph's governor of the province of Sijistān (Sīstān, or Nīmrūz), whom he eventually succeeded, sometime before 868 (255). By that year he had annexed Herāt and occupied Fārs, including the capital Shīrāz, to which he soon added Balkh and Tukhāristān, and in 872 (259) took Khurāsān from the Ṭāhirids. After an expedition in Ṭabaristān, where he defeated Ḥasan b. Zayd the 'Alid, he openly revolted against the Caliph -Mu'tamid, and advanced through Shīrāz and -Ahwāz upon Baghdād; but was routed by the Caliph's brother -Muwaffaq, and died in 878 (265). His brother and successor 'Amr was confirmed in the governments of Khurāsān, Fārs, Kurdistān, and Sijistān. The Caliph, however, distrusting 'Amr's increasing power, induced Ismā'il the Sāmānīd to attack him in 900 (287), when the

Šaffārid was defeated and made prisoner. His grandson Ṭāhir succeeded him in Sijistān, but, endeavouring to re-establish the power of his house in Fārs, was imprisoned 903 (290). Two other members of the family vainly sought to recover its lost territory. In 296 Sijistān was granted to the Sāmānids, but the Šaffārids continued for nearly a century to aim at the possession of this province, and several of them succeeded in holding it for a time.*

| | | |
|------|-------------------------------------|------|
| 254 | Ya'kūb b. -Layth | 868 |
| 265 | 'Amr b. -Layth | 878 |
| 287 | Ṭāhir b. Moḥammad b. 'Amr | 900 |
| -296 | | -903 |

[Sāmānids]

* See H. Sauvage, *Sur un fers Šaffāride inédit de la Collection de M. Ch. de l'École* (*Numismatique Chronique*, 1881) for an account of the later Šaffārids of Sijistān.

A.H.
261—389

54. SĀMĀNIDS

A.D.
874—999

(TRANSOXIANA AND PERSIA)

Sāmān, a Persian noble of Balkh, being aided by Asad b. 'Abd-Allāh, the governor of Khurāsān, renounced Zoroastrianism, embraced Islām, and named his son Asad after his protector. Asad's four sons all distinguished themselves in the service of the Caliph -Ma'mūn, and were rewarded about 819 (204) with provincial governments: Nūḥ had Samarḳand; Aḥmad, Farghāna; Yahyā, -Shāsh; and Ilyās, Herāt. Aḥmad took the lead among his brothers, and not only succeeded Nūḥ at Samarḳand, but incorporated Kāshghar in his dominions. His second son Ismā'il took Khurāsān from the Ṣaffārids in 903 (290), defeated Moḥammad b. Zayd the 'Alid of Ṭabaristān, and brought under his sway the whole territory from the Great Desert to the Persian Gulf, and from the borders of India to near Baghdād. His power was most firmly established in Transoxiana, where Bukhārā and Samarḳand became the centre of civilisation, learning, art, and scholarship for a large part of the Moḥammadan world. His successors were weakened by rebellions in Khurāsān and Sijistān and by the growing power of

the *Bucayhids*. In half a century they were restricted to little more than Transoxiana and Khurāsān, whilst the real power fell more and more into the hands of the Turkish slaves with whom they filled their Court. One of these, Alptigin, founded the dynasty of the *Ghaznawids*, which in 994 (384) succeeded to the Sāmānid territory south of the Oxus. North of the river their power was curtailed by the *Īlak Khāns* of Turkistān, who had acquired the leadership of the Turkish tribes from Farghāna to the borders of China, and after invading Transoxiana and taking Bukhārā in 990 (380), finally put an end to the Sāmānid dynasty in 999 (389); though Ibrāhīm -Muntaṣir continued to fight for the throne till 1104 (395).

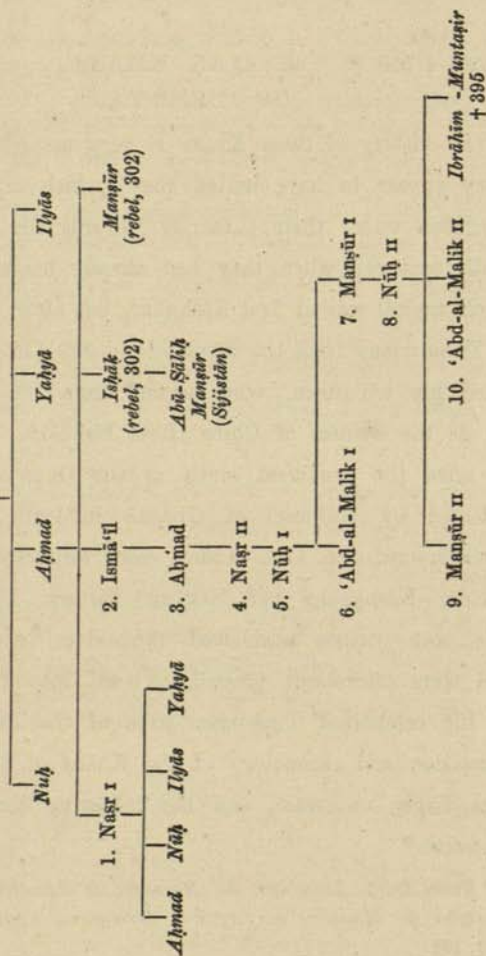
| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|--------------------------------------|------|
| 261 | Naṣr 1 b. Aḥmad | 874 |
| 279 | Ismā'īl b. Aḥmad | 892 |
| 295 | Aḥmad b. Ismā'īl | 907 |
| 301 | Naṣr 11 b. Aḥmad | 913 |
| 331 | Nūḥ 1 b. Naṣr | 942 |
| 343 | 'Abd-al-Malik 1 b. Nūḥ | 954 |
| 350 | Manṣūr 1 b. Nūḥ | 961 |
| 366 | Nūḥ 11 b. Manṣūr | 976 |
| 387 | Manṣūr 11 b. Nūḥ 11 | 997 |
| 389 | 'Abd-al-Malik 11 b. Nūḥ 11 | 999 |

[*Khāns of Turkistān; Ghaznawids*]

SĀMĀNIDS

SĀMĀN

Asad



A.H.

c. 320—c. 560

A.D.

c. 932—c. 1165

55. ĪLAK KHĀNS

OF TURKISTĀN

The history of these Khāns is very meagrely recorded. They appear to have united the Turkish tribes east of Farghāna under their authority towards the end of the tenth century, when they had already become Muslims. Their capital was at first Kāshghar, but after the conquest of Transoxiana from the Sāmānids in 999 (389) Īlak Naṣr ruled his tribesmen, who roamed from the Caspian as far as the borders of China, from Bukhārā. An attempt to seize the provinces south of the Oxus was signally defeated by Maḥmūd of Ghazna in 1007 (398), and henceforward the Īlak Khāns were restricted to Transoxiana, Kāshghar, and Eastern Tartary. Under their rule, many tribes established themselves in Transoxiana and were afterwards pressed forward into Persia: such as the celebrated Turkomān tribe of the *Seljuks*. The succession and chronology of the Khāns of Turkistān are exceedingly uncertain, and the following list is merely tentative.*

* From Dorn, *Inventaire des Monnaies de l'Institut des langues orientales du Ministère des Affaires Étrangères*, Appendice (Petersburg, 1881).

'Abd-al-Ḳarīm Satuk

Mūsā b. Satuk

- † 383—4 Shihāb-al-dawla Hārūn Bughrā Khān b. Sulaymān
 c. 389—400 Abū-l-Ḥosayn Naṣr 1 b. 'Alī
 c. 401—407 Ḳuṭb-al-dawla Abū-Naṣr Aḥmad 1 b. 'Alī
 c. 403—408 Sharaf-al-dīn Tughān Khān b. 'Alī
 Abū-l-Muḥaffar Arelān Khān 1 b. 'Alī
 † 423 Yūsuf Ḳadr Khān 1
 c. 421—425 Sharaf-al-dawla Abū-Shujā' Arelān Khān 11
 c. 425—435 Maḥmūd 1 Bughrā Khān

In the West

Chaghrtigin

- c. 440—460 Abū-l-Muḥaffar 'Imād-al-dawla Ibrāhīm Tufghāj
 or Taṣḳāj Khān b. Naṣr
 † 472 Shams-al-Mulk Naṣr 11 b. Taṣḳāj
 Khiḍr Khān b. Taṣḳāj
 † 488 Aḥmad Khān 11 b. Khiḍr
 † 490-5 Maḥmūd Khān 11
 † 495 Ḳadr Khān 11 b. 'Omar b. Aḥmad
 Maḥmūd Arelān Khān 111 b. Sulaymān
 Abū-l-Ma'ālī Ḥasan Tigīn b. 'Alī
 Bukn-al-dīn Maḥmūd Khān 111 b. Arelān
 c. 558 Ḳilij Taṣghāj Khān b. Moḥammad
 Jalāl-al-dīn 'Alī Gürkān b. Ḥasan Tigīn

In the East.

- 439—55 Tughril Khān b. Yūsuf Ḳadr Khān
 455 Tighril Tigīn b. Tughril
 455?—496 Hārūn Bughrā Khān b. Yūsuf Ḳadr Khān
 Nūr-al-dawla Aḥmad b. Arelān Khān

A.H.

316—434

A.D.

56. ZIYĀRIDS

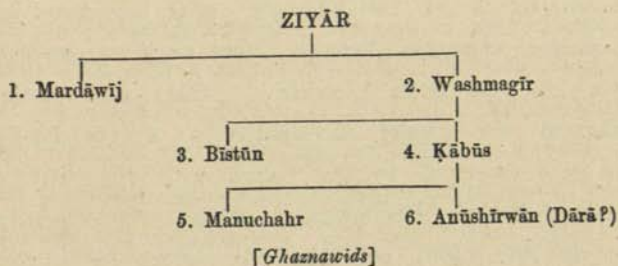
928—1042

(JURJĀN)

The southern shore of the Caspian had never been well affected to the Caliphate, and the followers of 'Alī had repeatedly established their heterodox power in these regions (see p. 127); nor were the Sāmānids more successful than the Caliphs in maintaining their authority there. Taking advantage of this, Mardāwīj b. Ziyār, descended from a long line of princes, made himself independent in Ṭabaristān and Jurjān, and even occupied Iṣpahān and Hamadhān, and pushed his forces as far as Ḥulwān, on the Mesopotamian frontier, between the years 928—931 (316—319). He was the patron of the Buwayhids, and gave 'Alī b. Buwayh his first appointment as governor of Karaj. Mardāwīj held his dominions as titular vassal of the 'Abbāsīd Caliph: his brother and successor Washmagīr paid nominal homage to the Sāmānids as well. After the rise of the *Bucayhids* in 932 (320), the authority of the Ziyārīds scarcely extended beyond the borders of Jurjān and Ṭabaristān;

and Kābūs was even exiled for 18 years (371—389) by the Buwayhid Mu'ayyid-al-dawla. On his return, however, he recovered Gilān as well as his former provinces, in which his sons succeeded him, until dispossessed by the *Ghaznawids*.

| | | |
|------|---|-------|
| 316 | Mardāwīj b. Ziyār | 928 |
| 323 | Ẓahīr-al-dawla Abū-Manṣūr Washmagīr | 935 |
| 356 | Bistūn | 967 |
| 366 | Shams-al-Ma'ālī Kābūs | 976 |
| 403 | Falak-al-Ma'ālī Manuchahr | 1012 |
| 420 | Anūshīrwān (Dārā?) | 1029 |
| —434 | | —1042 |



A. H.

c. 348—406

A. D.

c. 959—1015

57. ḤASANWAYHIDS

(KURDISTĀN)

Ḥasanwayh b. -Ḥosayn -Barzikānī was the chief of one of the Kurdish tribes which, like the Marwānids, began to make themselves prominent in the tenth century; before the middle of which he had possessed himself of a large part of Kurdistan, including the towns of Dīnawār, Hamadhān, Nahāwand, the fortress of Sarmāj, etc. His power was so considerable that the Buwayhids did not disturb him, and at his death 'Aḡud-al-dawla of that dynasty, after annexing his dominions, appointed Badr b. Ḥasanwayh as governor over his late father's province. Badr still further enhanced the dignity and authority of his family, and was decorated by the Caliph with the title of Nāṣir-al-dawla. His grandson Zāhir, who succeeded him in 1014 (405), only kept his position for a year, after which he was expelled by Shams-al-dawla the Buwayhid, and was shortly afterwards killed.

| | | |
|--------|---|--------|
| c. 348 | Ḥasanwayh b. -Ḥosayn | c. 959 |
| 369 | Nāṣir-al-dīn Abū-l-Najm Badr b. Ḥasanwayh | 979 |
| 405 | Zāhir b. Hilāl († 405) b. Badr | 1014 |
| —406 | | —1015 |

[Buwayhids]

A.H.
320—447

58. BUWAYHIDS

A.D.
932—1055

(SOUTHERN PERSIA AND -IRĀḤ)

Buwayh, reputed to be a descendant of the ancient Kings of Persia, was the chief of a warlike clan of the highlanders of Daylam, and like most of his countrymen had taken part in the frequent wars which disturbed the provinces bordering on the Caspian. Like them, also, he had transferred his services from the Sāmānids to the rising chieftain Mardāwīj the Ziyārid about 930 (318), and his eldest son 'Alī ('Imād-al-dawla) had been granted by Mardāwīj the government of Karaj. 'Alī, with the help of troops from Daylam and Gīlān, soon extended his authority southwards, occupied Iṣpahān for a time, and annexed Arrajān 932 (320) and Nubandijān (321), whilst his brother Ḥasan (Rukn-al-dawla) drove the Arab garrison out of Kāzīrūn. The two brothers then pushed on to the eastward, and joined by the third, Aḥmad (Mu'izz-al-dawla), seized Shīrūz (322). The Caliph was forced to recognize them as his lieutenants, and when Mu'izz-al-dawla, working his way westward from Kirmān,

and reducing the province of -Ahwāz (or Khūzistān), entered Baghdād itself in 945 (334), the Caliph -Mustakfi not only bestowed the honorific titles of 'Imād, Rukn, and Mu'izz al-dawla on the three brethren, but granted Mu'izz the rank and style of *Amīr-al-Umarā*, or Premier Noble, a dignity which was held by many subsequent members of the family. It is a mistake to say that they were ever given the title of *Sulṭān*, for they never styled themselves so on their coinage, but used the titles *Amīr* and *Malik*. Their authority, nevertheless, was as absolute as any *Sulṭān*'s in Baghdād, and the Caliphs were their abject puppets, though treated with outward homage, in spite of the Buwayhids' Shī'ite proclivities. How the brothers and their descendants divided Persia and -'Irāq among themselves is shown in the following tables, as well as the intricate history of the dynasty permits. Division among the princes encouraged aggression, and the wide dominions of the Buwayhids fell peacemeal to the *Ghaznawids*, *Kākwayhids*, and *Seljuks*.

I. OF FĀRS

| | | |
|------|---|-------|
| 320 | 'Imād-al-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī . . . | 932 |
| 338* | 'Aḡḡal-al-dawla Abū-Shujā' Khusrū . . . | 949 |
| 372* | Sharaf-al-dawla Abū-l-Fawāris Shīr Zayd . . . | 982 |
| 379 | Şamşām-al-dawla Abū-Kālinjār - Marzubān . . . | 989 |
| 388* | Bahā-al-dawla (of -'Irāk) . . . | 998 |
| 403* | Sultān-al-dawla Abū-Shujā' . . . | 1012 |
| 415* | 'Imād-al-dīn Abū-Kālinjār - Marzubān . . . | 1024 |
| 440* | Abū-Naṣr Khusrū Firūz - Raḥīm . . . | 1048 |
| —447 | | —1055 |

* Also ruling -'Irāk, etc., see next list.

II. OF -'IRĀK, -AHWĀZ, AND KIRMĀN

| | | |
|-----|--|------|
| 320 | Mu'izz-al-dawla Abū-l-Ḥosayn Aḥmad . . . | 932 |
| 356 | 'Izz-al-dawla Bakhtiyār . . . | 967 |
| 367 | Aḡḡal-al-dawla (of Fārs) . . . | 977 |
| 372 | Sharaf-al-dawla (of Fārs) . . . | 982 |
| 379 | Bahā-al-dawla Abū-Naṣr Firūz . . . | 989 |
| 403 | Sultān-al-dawla (of Fārs) . . . | 1012 |

DIVIDED PROVINCES:

-'IRĀK

| | | |
|------|---------------------------------------|-------|
| 411 | Musharrif-al-dawla . . . | 1020 |
| 416 | Jalāl-al-dawla . . . | 1025 |
| 435 | 'Imad-al-dīn (of Fārs) . . . | 1043 |
| 440 | Abū-Naṣr Khusrū Firūz (of Fārs) . . . | 1048 |
| —447 | | —1055 |

KIRMĀN

| | | |
|------|------------------------------------|-------|
| 403 | Ḳawām-al-dawla Abū-l-Fawāris . . . | 1012 |
| 419 | 'Imād-al-dīn (of Fārs) . . . | 1028 |
| 440 | Abū-Manṣūr Fallād Battūn . . . | 1048 |
| —448 | | —1056 |

III. OF -RAYY, HAMADHÂN, AND IŞPAHÂN

| | | |
|--------|---|---------|
| 320 | Rukn-ul-dawla Abû-'Ali Ḥasan | 932 |
| 366- | Mu'ayyid-ul-dawla Abû-Manṣûr (<i>Ispahân</i> <i>only</i>) | 976 |
| —378 | | —983 |
| 366 | Fakhr-ul-dawla Abû-l-Ḥasan 'Ali (<i>adding</i> <i>Ispahân</i> 373) | 976 |
| 387 | Majd-ul-dawla Abû-Tâlib Rustam (<i>deposed</i> <i>by Maḥmûd of Ghazna</i>) | 997 |
| —420 | | —1029 |
| 387 | Shams-ul-dawla Abû -Ṭâhir (<i>Hamadhân only</i>) | 997 |
| c. 412 | Samâ-ul-dawla Abû-l-Ḥasan (<i>deposed by Ibn-</i> <i>Kākwayh</i>) | c. 1021 |
| —414 | | —1023 |

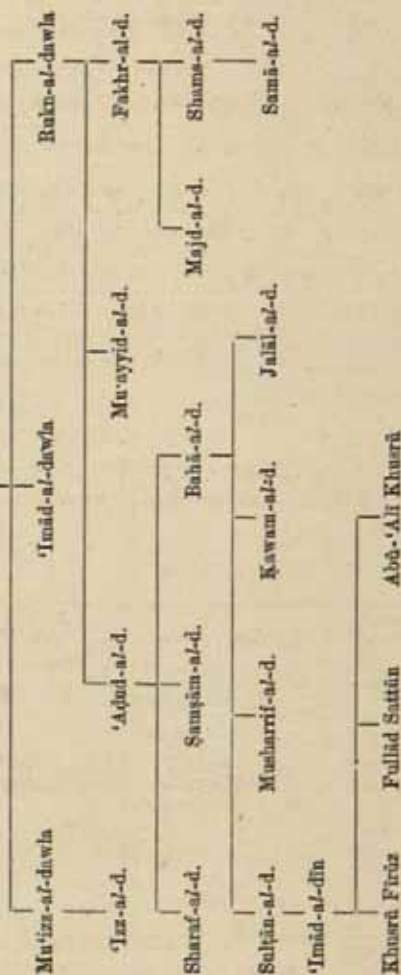
[*Kākwayhids; Ghaznawids; Seljûqs*]

GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION OF THE BUWAYHIDS

| FĀRS | KIRMĀN, 'AHWĀZ, 'IRĀK | 'RĀYY, HAMADHĀN | ĪSPAHĀN |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 320 'Imād-al-dawla | 320. Mu'izz-al-dawla | 320 Rukn-al-dawla | |
| 338 'Aḡud-al-dawla | | | |
| | 355 'Izz-al-dawla | | |
| | 367 ('Aḡud) | 366 Fakhr-al-dawla | 366 Mu'ayyid-al-dawla |
| 372 Sharaf-al-dawla | | 373 | |
| 379 Šamšām-al-dawla | 379 Bahā-al-dawla | | |
| 388 (Bahā) | | 387 Shams-al-dawla | 387 Majd-al-dawla |
| 403 Sulṭān-al-dawla | (KIRMĀN) 403 Ka-wām-al-d. | | 398 (Kāk-wayhids) |
| | 411 Mu-sharraf-al-d. | 412 Samā-al-dawla | |
| 415 'Imād-al-dīn | 416 Jalāl-al-d. | 414 (Kāk-wayhids) | 420 |
| | 419 ('Imād) | | (Ghazna-wide) |
| | 435 | | |
| 440 Khusrū Fīrūz — 447 | (Seljūks) | 440 Fullād — Sattūn 448 | |

BUWAYHIDS

BUWAYH



A.H.
398—443

59. KĀKWAYHIDS
(KURDISTĀN)

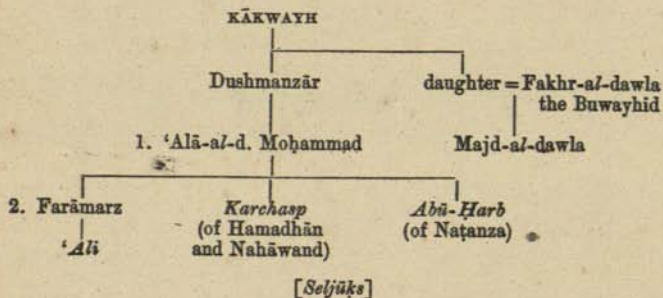
A.D.
1007—1051

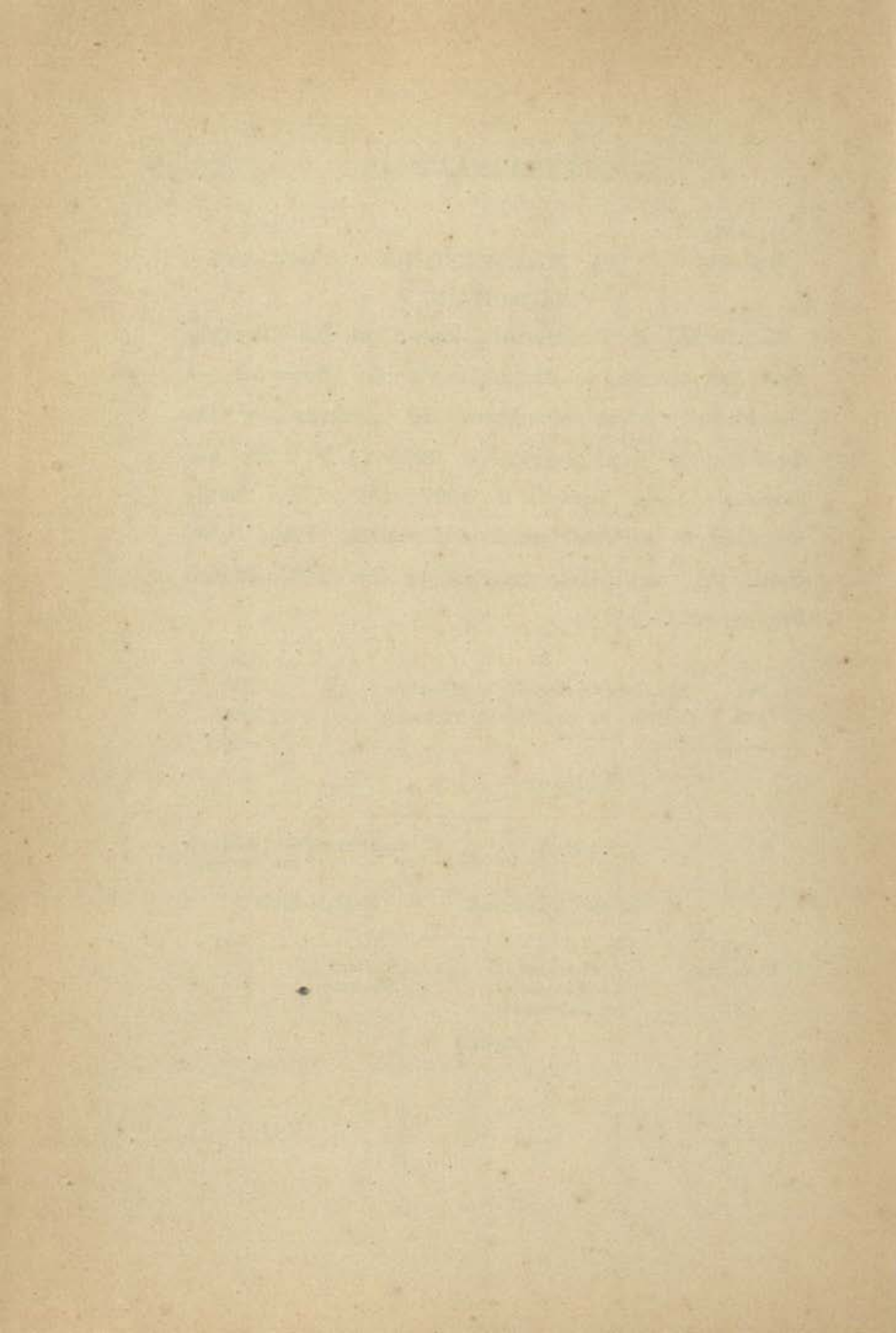
Moḥammad b. Dushmanzār, known as Ibn-Kākwayh, was first cousin to Majd-al-dawla the Buwayhid, of Hamadhān, whose dominions he annexed by the deposition of Samā-al-dawla in 1023 (414). He had previously taken Iṣpahān in 1007 (398). The family continued to rule in Iṣpahān, Hamadhān, Yazd, Nahāwand, etc., until their conquest by the *Seljūks* Ṭughril Beg in 1051 (443).

A.H.
398
433
—443

'Alā-al-dawla Abū-Ja'far Moḥammad . .
Ẓāhir-al-dīn Abū-Manṣūr Farāmarz . .

A.D.
1007
1041
—1051





VIII. THE SELJŪKS

SÆC. XI—XII

60. A GREAT SELJŪKS OF PERSIA

B SELJŪKS OF KIRMĀN

C SELJŪKS OF SYRIA

D SELJŪKS OF -'IRĀK

E SELJŪKS OF -RŪM

60A. DĀNISHMANDIDS (CAPPADOCIA)

A.H.
429—700

60. THE SELJŪKS

A.D.
1037—1300

(WESTERN ASIA)

The advent of the Seljūkian Turks forms a notable epoch in Moḥammadan history. At the time of their appearance the Empire of the Caliphate had vanished. What had once been a realm united under a sole Moḥammadan ruler was now a collection of scattered dynasties, not one of which, save perhaps the Fāṭimids of Egypt (and they were schismatics) was capable of imperial sway. Spain and Africa, including the important province of Egypt, had long been lost to the Caliphs of Baghdād; northern Syria and Mesopotamia were in the hands of turbulent Arab chiefs, some of whom had founded dynasties; Persia was split up into the numerous governments of the Buwayhid princes (whose Shi'ite opinions left little respect for the puppet Caliphs of their time), or was held by sundry insignificant dynasts, each ready to attack the other and thus contribute to the general weakness. The prevalence of

schism increased the disunion of the various provinces of the vanished Empire. A drastic remedy was needed, and it was found in the invasion of the Turks. These rude nomads, unspoilt by town life and civilised indifference to religion, embraced Islām with all the fervour of their uncouth souls. They came to the rescue of a dying State, and revived it. They swarmed over Persia, Mesopotamia, Syria, and Asia Minor, devastating the country, and exterminating every dynasty that existed there; and, as the result, they once more reunited Moḥammadan Asia, from the western frontier of Afghānistān to the Mediterranean, under one sovereign; they put a new life into the expiring zeal of the Muslims, drove back the re-encroaching Byzantines, and bred up a generation of fanatical Moḥammadan warriors, to whom, more than to anything else, the Crusaders owed their repeated failure. This it is that gives the Seljūks so important a place in Moḥammadan history.

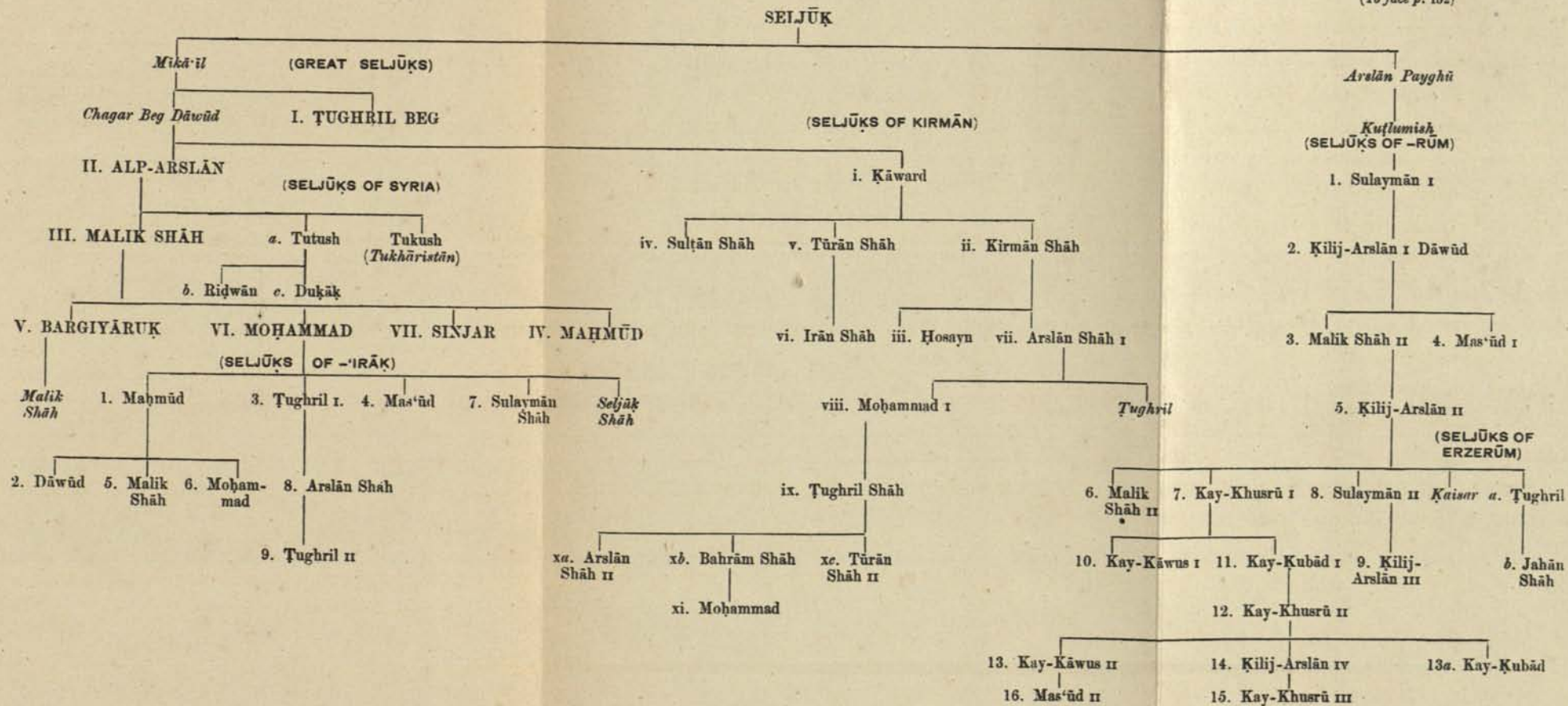
The Seljūks, or Saljūkids, were the descendants of Seljūk b. Yakāk, a Turkomān chieftain in the service of one of the Khāns of Turkistān. Seljūk migrated from the Kirghiz steppes with all his clan to Jand in the province of Bukhārā, where he and his people enthusiastically

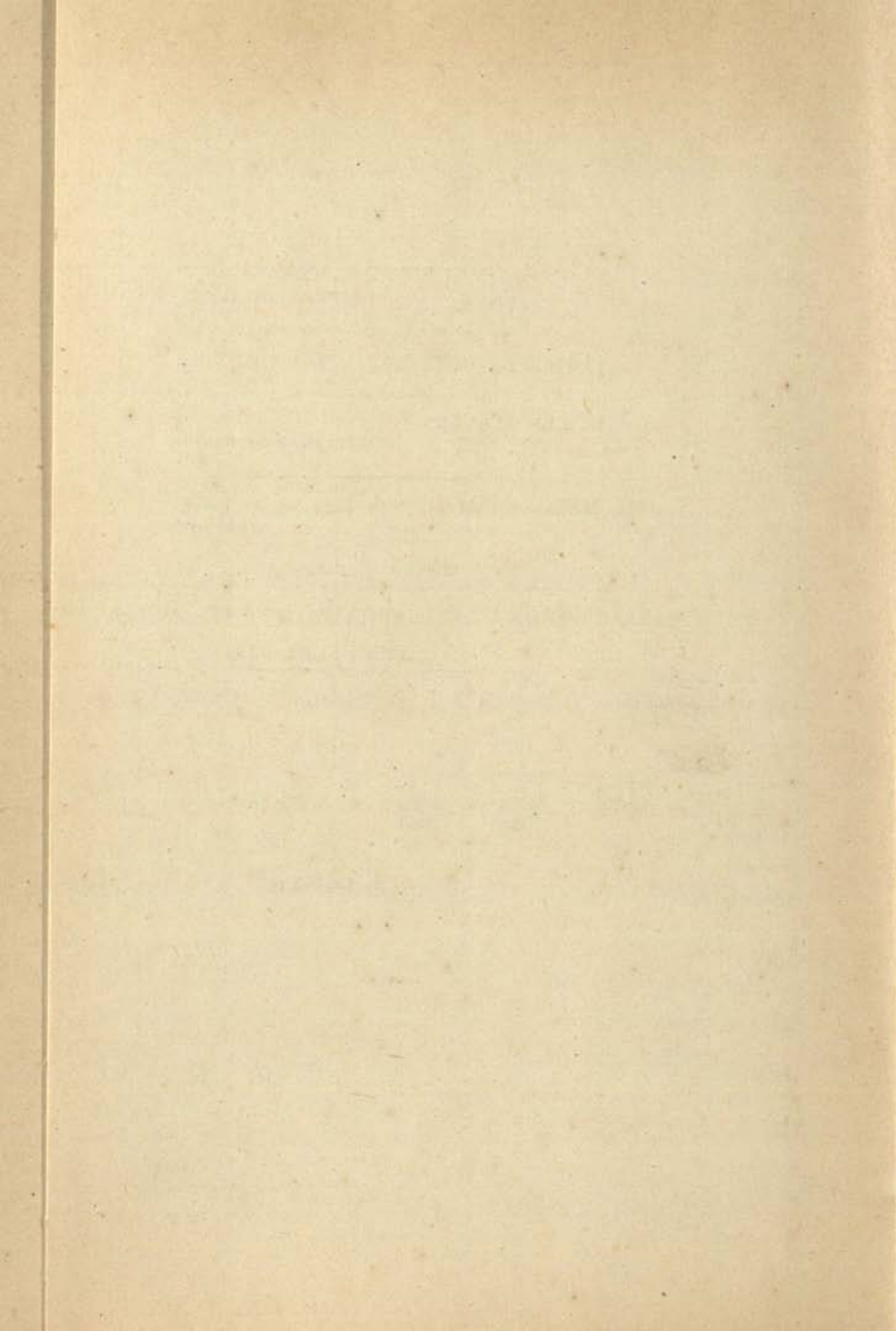
embraced Islām. He and his sons and grandsons took part in the wars between the Sāmānids, the Ilak Khāns, and Maḥmūd of Ghazna, and the brothers Ṭughril Beg and Chagar Beg eventually became strong enough to venture upon the invasion of Khurāsān at the head of their wild Turkomān tribes, and after several victories over the Ghaznawid armies succeeded in taking the chief cities. In 1037 (429) the public prayer was said in the name of Chagar Beg Dāwūd, 'King of Kings,' in the mosques of Merv, while his brother Ṭughril Beg was similarly proclaimed in Nayshāpūr. Balkh, Jurjān, Ṭabari-stān, and Khwārizm were speedily annexed; the Jibāl, Hamadhān, Dīnawār, Ḥulwān, -Rayy, and Iṣpahān followed (433—7), and in 1055 (447) Ṭughril Beg entered Baghdād itself, and had his name proclaimed as Sulṭān in the city of the Caliph.

Other Turkish tribes came to swell their armies, and the whole of western Asia, from the borders of Afghānistān to the frontier of the Greek Empire in Asia Minor and of the Fātimid Caliphate of Egypt, became united under the rule of the Seljūks before 1077 (470).

Ṭughril Beg, Alp-Arslān, and Malik Shāh held supreme sway over the whole of this vast Empire, but after the

death of the last, civil war sprang up between the brothers Bargiyāruḳ and Moḥammad, and separate branches of the Seljūḳ family attained virtual independence in different parts of the widely scattered dominions, although the main line still preserved a nominal suzerainty down to the death of Sinjar, the last 'Great Seljūḳ' (whose rule was almost confined to Khurāsān) in 1157 (552). The Seljūḳs of Kirmān, of -'Irāḳ, of Syria, and of -Rūm or Asia Minor, were the chief sub-divisions of the family, but individual members of it ruled in Adharbījān, Tukhāristān, and other provinces. In the East, the Seljūḳ empire succumbed before the attack of the Khwārizm Shāh; in Adharbījān, Fārs, Mesopotamia, and Diyār-Bakr it was supplanted by dynasties founded by Seljūḳ officers, or Atābegs, but in -Rūm it survived until the beginning of the power of the 'Othmānlī Turks in 1300.





| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|--|-----------|
| 429—552 | A. GREAT SELJŪKS | 1037—1157 |
| 429 | Rukn- <i>al</i> -dīn Abū-Ṭālib Ṭughril Beg . . . | 1037 |
| 455 | ‘Aḡud- <i>al</i> -dīn Abū-Shujā’ Alp-Arslān . . . | 1063 |
| 465 | Jalāl- <i>al</i> -dīn Abū-l-Faṭḥ Malik Shāh . . . | 1072 |
| 485 | Nāṣir- <i>al</i> -dīn Maḥmūd . . . | 1092 |
| 487 | Rukn- <i>al</i> -dīn Abū-l-Muẓaffar Bargiyārūḡ . . . | 1094 |
| 498 | Malik Shāh 11 . . . | 1104 |
| 498* | Ghiyāth- <i>al</i> -dīn Abū-Shujā’ Moḥammad . . . | 1104 |
| 511† | Mu‘izz- <i>al</i> -dīn Abū-l-Ḥārith Sinjar . . . | 1117 |
| —552 | | —1157 |

[*Shāhs of Khwārizm*]

| | | |
|---------|--|-----------|
| 433—583 | B. SELJŪKS OF KIRMĀN | 1041—1187 |
| 433 | ‘Imād- <i>al</i> -dīn Qarā-Arslān Qāward Beg . . . | 1041 |
| 465 | Kirmān Shāh . . . | 1072 |
| 467 | Ḥosayn . . . | 1074 |
| 467 | Rukn- <i>al</i> -dīn Sulṭān Shāh . . . | 1074 |
| 477 | Tūrān Shāh . . . | 1084 |
| 490 | Irān Shāh . . . | 1097 |
| 494 | Arslān Shāh . . . | 1100 |
| 536 | Mughīth- <i>al</i> -dīn Moḥammad 1 . . . | 1141 |
| 551 | Muḥyi- <i>al</i> -dīn Ṭughril Shāh . . . | 1156 |
| 563 | { Bahrām Shāh Arslān 11 Shāh } (rivals) . . . | 1167 |
| 583 | Turkān Shāh . . . | |
| | Moḥammad 11 . . . | 1187 |

[*Ghuzz Turkomāns*]

* Moḥammad had been at open war with Bargiyārūḡ for many years before the latter's death.

† Sinjar had been governor of Khurāsān for twenty years before his accession as Great Seljūḡ.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|---|-----------|
| 487—511 | C. SELJŪKS OF SYRIA | 1094—1117 |
| 487 | Tutush b. Alp-Arslān | 1094 |
| 488 | Riḍwān b. Tutush (<i>at Aleppo</i>) | 1095 |
| | (Duḡāk b. Tutush <i>at Damascus</i> 488—497) | |
| 507 | Alp-Arslān - Akhras b. Riḍwān | 1113 |
| 508 | Sultān Shāh b. Riḍwān | 1114 |
| —511 | | —1117 |

[*Būrids, Ortuḡids*]

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|---|-----------|
| 511—590 | D. SELJŪKS OF -'IRĀK AND KURDISTĀN | 1117—1194 |
| 511 | Mughīth- <i>a</i> l- <i>d</i> īn Maḥmūd | 1117 |
| 525 | Ghiyāth- <i>a</i> l- <i>d</i> īn Dāwūd | 1131 |
| 526 | Ṭughril I | 1132 |
| 527 | Ghiyāth- <i>a</i> l- <i>d</i> īn Mas'ūd | 1133 |
| 547 | Mu'īn- <i>a</i> l- <i>d</i> īn Malik Shāh | 1152 |
| 548 | Moḥammad | 1153 |
| 554 | Sulaymān Shāh | 1159 |
| 556 | Arslān Shāh | 1161 |
| 573 | Ṭughril II | 1177 |
| —590 | | —1194 |

[*Shāhs of Khwārizm*]

| A.H. | E. SELJŪKS OF -RŪM | A.D. |
|---------|---|-----------|
| 470—700 | (ASIA MINOR) | 1077—1300 |
| 470 | Sulaymān I b. Ḳuṭlumish | 1077 |
| 479 | <i>Interregnum</i> | 1086 |
| 485 | Ḳilij-Arslān Dāwūd | 1092 |
| 500 | Malik Shāh I | 1106 |
| 510 | Mas'ūd I | 1116 |
| 551* | 'Izz-al-dīn Ḳilij-Arslān II | 1156 |
| 584 | Ḳuṭb-al-dīn Malik Shāh II | 1188 |
| 588 | Ghiyāth-al-dīn Kay-Khusrū I | 1192 |
| 597 | Rukn-al-dīn Sulaymān II | 1200 |
| 600 | Ḳilij-Arslān III | 1203 |
| 601 | Kay-Khusrū I <i>restored</i> | 1204 |
| 607 | 'Izz-al-dīn Kay-Kāwus I | 1210 |
| 616 | 'Alā-al-dīn Kay-Ḳubād I | 1219 |
| 634 | Ghiyāth-al-dīn Kay-Khusrū II | 1236 |
| 643 | 'Izz-al-dīn Kay-Kāwus II † | 1245 |
| 655 | Rukn-al-dīn Ḳilij-Arslān IV. | 1257 |
| 666 | Ghiyāth-al-dīn Kay-Khusrū III | 1267 |
| 682 | Ghiyāth-al-dīn Mas'ūd II † | 1283 |
| 696 | 'Alā-al-dīn Kay-Ḳubād II | 1296 |
| —700 | | —1300 |

[*Mongols, 'Othmānī Turks, etc.*].

* Ḳilij-Arslān survived till 588, but divided his dominions among his sons some years earlier.

† In conjunction with his brothers Ḳilij-Arslān III and Kay-Ḳubād.

‡ Mas'ūd was allowed by the Mongol Abāgā to govern Siwās, Arzan-jān and Erzerūm, from the death of his father Kay-Kāwus in 677, during the nominal sovereignty of his cousin Kay-Khusrū III, whom he succeeded in 682. Mas'ūd appears to have been restored to his kingdom on the deposition of his nephew Kay-Ḳubād in 700, and to have reigned for four years; but the last four Seljūks were merely governors under the Mongols of Persia.

A.H.

A.D.

c 490—560 60A. DĀNISHMANDIDS c 1097—1165

(SĪWĀS, CAESAREA, MALATĪA)

Whilst the Seljūks were extending their empire in Asia Minor, another Turkish chief, Gumishtigin, son of Dānishmand, established his power in Cappodocia over the cities of Sīwās (Sebaste), Kayşariya (Caesarea), and Malaṭṭiya (Melitene), near which last place he inflicted a sanguinary defeat upon the Franks. His successors played a distinguished part in the wars of the Crusades, but the dynasty was soon absorbed in its greater Seljūk neighbour.

A.H.

A.D.

| | | |
|-----|---|------|
| | Moḥammad I Gumishtigin b. Tilā Dānishmand | |
| 499 | Ghāzī b. Gumishtigin | 1105 |
| 529 | Moḥammad II. b. Ghāzī | 1134 |
| 537 | Dhū-l-Nūn b. Moḥammad II | 1142 |
| | Yaghi (or Ya'kūb) Arslān b. Ghāzī | |
| 560 | Ibrāhīm b. Moḥammad II | 1165 |

[Seljūks of -Rūm]

IX. THE ATĀBEGS

(SELJŪK OFFICERS)

S/EC. XII-XIII

- | | | |
|-------|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| 61. | BŪRIDS | ATĀBEGS OF DAMASCUS |
| 62. A | ZANGIDS | " " -MŌSIL |
| B | " | " " ALEPPO |
| C | " | " " SINJĀR |
| D | " | " " -JAZĪRA |
| 63. | BEGTIGĪNIDS | " " ARBELA |
| 64. A | ORTUKIDS OF KAYFĀ | |
| B | " " MĀRIDĪN | |
| 65. | SHĀHS OF ARMENIA | |
| 66. | ATĀBEGS OF ADHARBĪJĀN | |
| 67. | SALGHARIDS, ATĀBEGS OF FĀRS | |
| 68. | HAZĀRASPIDIS, ATĀBEGS OF LŪRISTĀN | |
| 69. | SHĀHS OF KHWĀRIZM | |
| 70. | KUTLUGH KHĀNS OF KIRMĀN | |

IX. THE ATÁBEGS

(SELJŪK OFFICERS)

SÆC. XII—XIII

The Seljūk Empire was a military power, and the army on which it depended was commanded by Turkish slaves. Free men could not be trusted with the highest commands or the rule of distant provinces; it was necessary to rely on the fidelity of purchased slaves brought up at the court in close relations with the Seljūk princes. Every Seljūk had a following of mamlūks, generally brought from Kipchak, who filled the chief offices of the court and camp, and eventually won their manumission by hard service. The inevitable result of this system was the supplanting of the senile master by the virile slave. As the Seljūks grew weak and their empire broke up into sub-divisions, their mamlūks, who had fought their battles for them, became the guardians or regents (Atābegs) of their youthful heirs,

and speedily exchanged the delegated function for the privileges of sovereignty. In this way Tughtigīn, a mamlūk of the Seljūk Tutush, was appointed Atābeg over his youthful heir Duḡāk, and on his death assumed full sovereign powers at Damascus. 'Imād-al-dīn Zangī, founder of the Atābegs of -Mōḡil and Aleppo, etc., was the son of a slave of the third Seljūk Sultān Malik Shāh; the Adharbijān Atābegs sprang from a Kipchak mamlūk of Mas'ūd the Seljūk Sultān of -'Irāk; Anushtigīn, ancestor of the Khwārizm Shāhs, was cupbearer tō Sultān Malik Shāh; Ortuḡ and Salghar, founders of dynasties in Diyār-Bakr and Fārs, were Seljūk officers; and the Begtiginids, Hasāraspids, and Ḳutlugh Khāns were officers of the slaves of the Seljūks. In the twelfth century the whole Seljūk empire, save Anatolia, was in the hands of these captains of their hosts, who form a distinct group of dynasties.

A.H.
497—549

61. BŪRIDS

A.D.
1103—1154

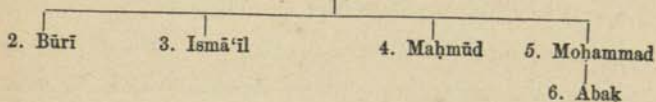
(ATĀBEGS OF DAMASCUS)

Ṭughtigīn—one of the numerous officers who held command in the Seljūk armies, became Atābegs or regents of the younger Seljūk princes, and eventually usurped their power—was an enfranchised mamlūk of Sulṭān Tutush, and afterwards, 1095 (488), was appointed Atābeg of his son Duḳāk, the Seljūk prince of Damascus, whom he succeeded.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|--|-------|
| 497 | Sayf-al-Islām Ṣaḥīr-al-dīn Ṭughtigīn . . . | 1103 |
| 522 | Ṭāj-al-Mulūk Būrī | 1128 |
| 526 | Shams-al-Mulūk Ismā'īl | 1132 |
| 529 | Shihāb-al-dīn Maḥmūd | 1134 |
| 533 | Jamāl-al-dīn Moḥammad | 1138 |
| 534 | Mujīr-al-dīn Abaḳ (or Anaz, † 564) . . . | 1139 |
| —549 | | —1154 |

[Zangids]

1. Ṭughtigīn



A.H.

521—648

62. ZANGIDS

A.D.

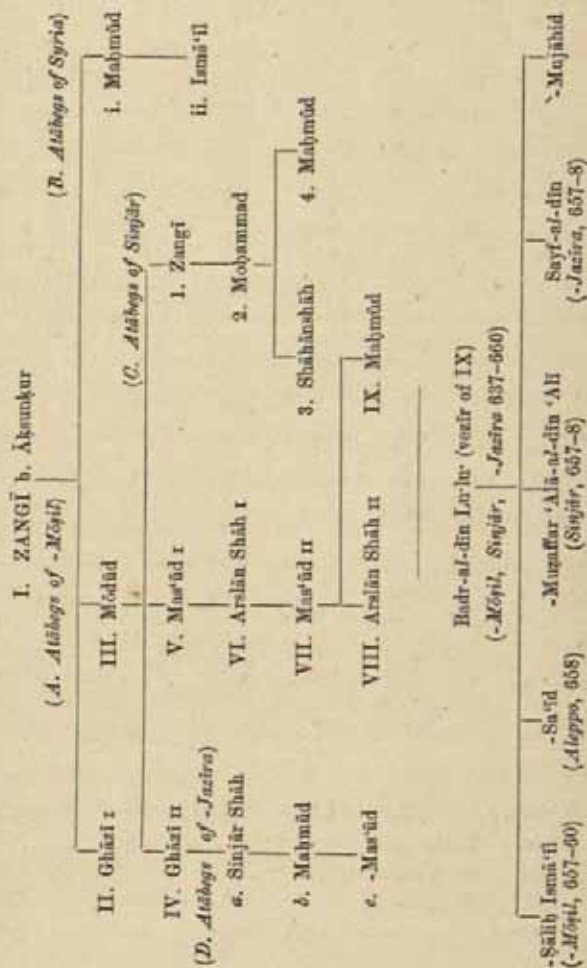
1127—1250

(ATĀBEGS OF MESOPOTAMIA AND SYRIA)

The Atābeg 'Imād-al-dīn Zangī was the son of Āksunḡur the Hājib (chamberlain), a Turkish slave of Malik Shāh, and from 1085 to 1094 (478-487) lieutenant of Tutush at Aleppo, against whom he rebelled, and was slain. Zangī was appointed governor of -'Irāḡ, including Baghdād, in 1127 (521), and in the same year annexed -Mōṣil, Sinjār, -Jazīra and Harrān, and then Aleppo (522) and other Syrian cities. He especially distinguished himself as the champion of the Muslims against the Crusaders, and was the true forerunner of Saladin. On his death his dominions were divided between his sons Nūr-al-dīn Maḥmūd, another famous anti-crusader, who held Syria, and Sayf-al-dīn Ghāzī, who ruled in -Mōṣil and Mesopotamia. In the next generation the Syrian branch died out; but a new offshoot had been established at Sinjār; whilst a fourth sub-dynasty sprang up somewhat later at -Jazīra. The Sinjār line gave place to the Ayyūbids in 1221 (618); the others came under the rule of Lu'lu', the slave and vezīr of the last of the -Mōṣil Zangids, until all were absorbed in the empire of the *Mongols*.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|--|-----------|
| 521—631 | A. ATĀBEGS OF -MŌṢIL | 1127—1234 |
| 521 | ‘Imād-al-dīn Zangī (<i>with Aleppo</i>) | 1127 |
| 541 | Sayf-al-dīn Ghāzī I | 1146 |
| 544 | Ḳuṭb-al-dīn Mōdūd | 1149 |
| 565 | Sayf-al-dīn Ghāzī II | 1169 |
| 576 | ‘Izz-al-dīn Mas‘ūd I | 1180 |
| 589 | Nūr-al-dīn Arslān Shāh I | 1193 |
| 607 | ‘Izz-al-dīn Mas‘ūd II | 1210 |
| 615 | Nūr-al-dīn Arslān Shāh II | 1218 |
| 616 | Nāṣir-al-dīn Maḥmūd | 1219 |
| 631 | Badr-al-dīn Lu’lu’ | 1233 |
| 657 | Ismā‘īl b. Lu’lu’ | 1259 |
| —660 | [<i>Mongols</i>] | —1262 |
| 541—577 | B. ATĀBEGS OF SYRIA | 1146—1181 |
| 541 | Nūr-al-dīn Maḥmūd b. Zangī | 1146 |
| 569 | -Ṣāliḥ Ismā‘īl | 1173 |
| —577 | | —1181 |
| | [<i>Atābegs of -Mōṣil and Sinjār, 577; then Ayyūbids, 579</i>] | |
| 566—617 | C. ATĀBEGS OF SINJĀR | 1170—1220 |
| 566 | ‘Imād-al-dīn Zangī b. Mōdūd | 1170 |
| 594 | Ḳuṭb-al-dīn Moḥammad | 1197 |
| 616 | ‘Imād-al-dīn Shāhānshāh | 1219 |
| 616 | Maḥmūd (<i>or</i> ‘Omar) | 1219 |
| —617 | [<i>Ayyūbids</i>] | —1220 |
| 576—648 | D. ATĀBEGS OF -JAZĪRA | 1180—1250 |
| 576 | Mu‘izz-al-dīn Sinjār Shāh | 1180 |
| 605 | Mu‘izz-al-dīn Maḥmūd | 1208 |
| 6xx | -Mas‘ūd | 12xx |
| —648 | [<i>Ayyūbids</i>] | —1250 |

ZANGIDS



| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|---------------------------|-----------|
| 539—630 | 63. BEGTIGĪNIDS | 1144—1232 |
| | (ATĀBEGS OF ARBELA, ETC.) | |

In 1144 (539) 'Imād-al-dīn Zangī appointed one of his Turkish officers, Zayn-al-dīn 'Alī Kūchuk b. Begtigīn, to be his viceroy at -Mōṣil, and in 1149 (544) placed Sinjār and afterwards Harrān, Takrit, Irbil (Arbela), etc., under his authority. On Zayn-al-dīn's death at Irbil in 1167 (563), his elder son Muẓaffar-al-dīn Kūkbūrī fled to Harrān, whilst Irbil passed to the younger son Zayn-al-dīn Yūsuf, under the tutorship of the Amīr Mujāhid-al-dīn Kā'imāz. On Yūsuf's death in 1190 (586), Saladin, who then exercised supreme influence over Syria and Mesopotamia, appointed Muẓaffar-al-dīn Kūkbūrī as his brother's successor at Irbil and Shahrāzūr, but gave his former governments of Harrān, -Rubā (Edessa) and Sumaysāt to his own nephew Taḡī-al-dīn 'Omar. Kūkbūrī died in 1232 (630), and being without sons bequeathed Irbil to the 'Abbāsīd Caliph.

| | | |
|------|--|-------|
| 539 | Zayn-al-dīn 'Alī Kūchuk b. Begtigīn . . . | 1144 |
| 563 | Zayn-al-dīn Yūsuf b. 'Alī (at Irbil) † 586 . . | 1167 |
| 563 | Muẓaffar-al-dīn Kūkbūrī b. 'Alī (at Harrān), | 1167 |
| 586 | " " " " " (at Irbil) | 1190 |
| —630 | | —1232 |

[*'Abbāsīds; then Mongols*]

A.H.
495—712

64. ORTUKIDS

A.D.
1101—1312

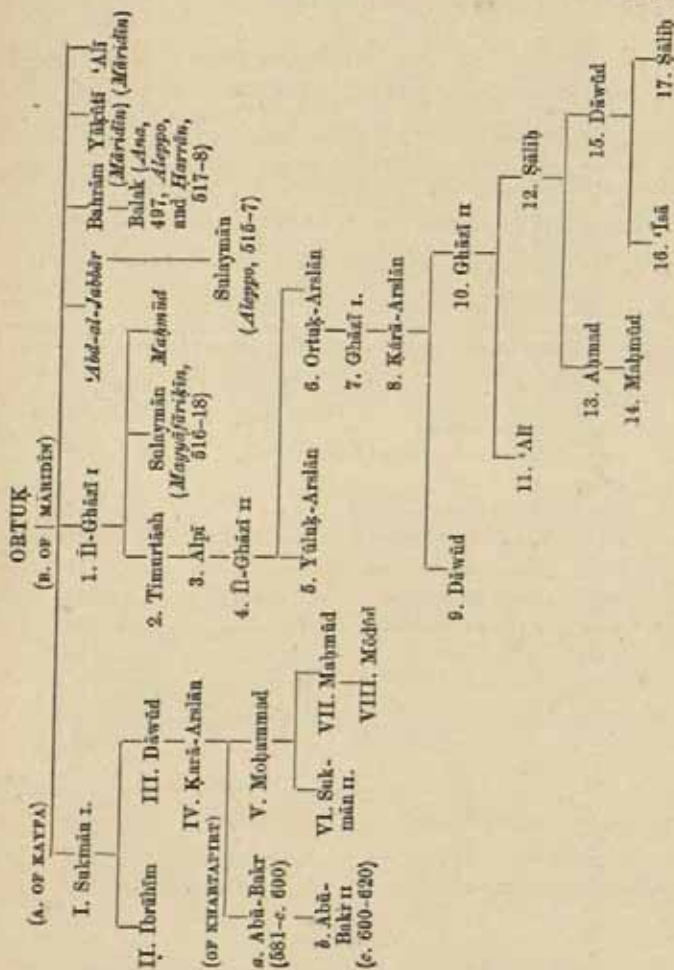
(DIYĀR-BAKR)

Ortuğ b. Aksab, the founder of this dynasty, was a Turkomān officer in the Seljūk armies, and was appointed governor of Jerusalem when the Holy City was conquered by his commander Tutush the Seljūk Sultān of Damascus. Ortuğ's sons Sukmān and Īl-Ghāzī, both famous in the wars with the Latin princes of Palestine succeeded to their father's post in 1091 (484), until the city was annexed by the Fāṭimid Caliph in 1096 (489), when they retired to Edessa (-Ruhā) and -'Irāk respectively. In 1101 (495) Īl-Ghāzī was appointed prefect of Baghdād by the Seljūk Sultān Moḥammad, and in the same year Sukmān was made governor of Ḥiṣn Kayfā in Diyār-Bakr, to which he added Māridīn a year or two later. In 1108 (502), however, Māridīn was transferred to his brother Īl-Ghāzī, and henceforward there were two collateral lines of Ortuğids, at Kayfā and at Māridīn. The Kayfā branch, after the warlike exploits of Sukmān against Baldwin and Jocelin, settled down into tranquil obscurity, hastened to

pay homage to Saladin, when his power became threatening, and were rewarded with the addition of the city of Amid to their territory in 1183 (579), until their line was suppressed by the *Ayyūbid* -Kāmil in 1231 (629). A minor branch of the Kayfā family governed Khartapirt (Quart-Pierre) in Diyār-Bakr from 1127 (521) to 1223 (620). ʿĪl-Ghāzī, the founder of the Māridīn line, and one of the most redoubtable of Muslim warriors against the Crusaders, gained possession of Aleppo in 1117 (511), and in 1121 (515) was also invested with the government of Mayyāfāriqīn (in Diyār-Bakr) by the Seljūq Sulṭān Maḥmūd. Māridīn and Mayyāfāriqīn continued to be held by his descendants, the latter until 1184 (580), the former until their submission to Tīmūr and absorption by the Karā-Ḳuyunlī in 1408 (811); but the Māridīn Amīrs ceased to be of importance after the Ayyūbid supremacy was established in Syria and Mesopotamia. Aleppo fell 1123 (517) to another Ortuqid chief, Balak b. Bahrām, who had also held Āna (497) and Khartapirt (515), and was a prominent leader in the wars with the Crusaders.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|------------------------------------|-----------|
| 495—529 | A. ORTUĞIDS OF KAYFĀ | 1101—1231 |
| 495 | Mu'in-al-dawla Sukmān I | 1101 |
| 498 | Ibrāhīm | 1104 |
| c. 502 | Rukn-al-dawla Dāwūd | 1108 |
| c. 543 | Fakhr-al-dīn Karā-Arelān | 1148 |
| 570 | Nūr-al-dīn Moḥammad | 1174 |
| 581 | Ḳuṭb-al-dīn Sukmān II | 1185 |
| 597 | Nāṣir-al-dīn Maḥmūd | 1200 |
| 619 | Rukn-al-dīn Moḥūd | 1223 |
| —629 | [Ayyūbids] | —1231 |

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|---|-----------|
| 502—811 | B. ORTUĞIDS OF MĀRIDĪN | 1108—1408 |
| 502 | Najm-al-dīn Īl-Ghāzī | 1108 |
| 516 | Ḥusām-al-dīn Timurtāsh | 1122 |
| 547 | Najm-al-dīn Alpī | 1152 |
| 572 | Ḳuṭb-al-dīn Īl-Ghāzī | 1176 |
| 580 | Ḥusām-al-dīn Yülük-Arelān | 1184 |
| c. 597 | Nāṣir-al-dīn Ortuğ-Arelān -Manṣūr | 1200 |
| 637 | Najm-al-dīn Ghāzī I -Sa'īd | 1239 |
| 658 | Karā-Arelān -Muṣaffar | 1260 |
| c. 691 | Shams-al-dīn Dāwūd | 1292 |
| 693 | Najm-al-dīn Ghāzī II -Manṣūr | 1294 |
| 712 | 'Imād-al-dīn 'Alī Alpī -'Ādil | 1312 |
| 712 | Shams-al-dīn Ṣāliḥ | 1312 |
| 765 | Aḥmad -Manṣūr | 1363 |
| 769 | Maḥmūd -Ṣāliḥ | 1367 |
| 769 | Dāwūd -Muṣaffar | 1367 |
| 778 | Majd-al-dīn 'Isā -Zūhir | 1376 |
| 809 | Ṣāliḥ | 1406 |
| —811 | [Ḳara Kuyunlı] | —1408 |



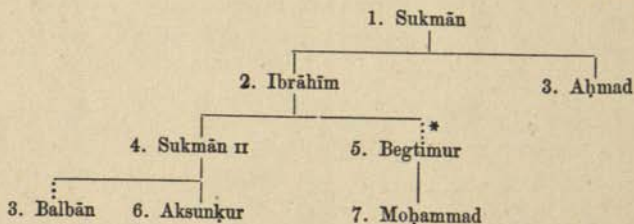
A.H.

A.D.

493—604 65. SHĀHS OF ARMENIA 1100—1207

Sukmān -Ḳuṭbī, so called because he was once the slave of Ḳuṭb-al-dīn Ismā'īl, the Seljūq governor of Marand in Adharbījān, wrested the town of -Khalāṭ in Armenia from the Marwānids in 1100 (493), and his descendants and their mamlūks continued to govern this region for a century until their conquest by the *Ayyūbids* in 1207.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|---|-------|
| 493 | Sukmān -Ḳuṭbī | 1100 |
| 506 | Ẓahīr-al-dīn Ibrāhīm Shāh-Arman | 1112 |
| 521 | Aḥmad | 1127 |
| 522 | Nāṣir-al-dīn Sukmān II | 1128 |
| 579 | Sayf-al-dīn Begtimur | 1183 |
| 589 | Badr-al-dīn Āksunḳur | 1193 |
| 594 | -Manṣūr Moḥammad | 1198 |
| 603 | 'Izz-al-dīn Balbān | 1206 |
| —604 | | —1207 |

[*Ayyūbids*]

* Dotted lines indicate the relationship between master and slave.

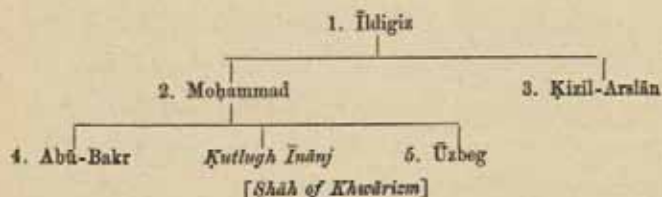
A.H.
531—622

66. ATĀBEGS OF
ADHARBĪJĀN

A.D.
1136—1225

İldigiz, a Turkish slave from Kipchak, rose in favour at the court of Mas'ūd, the Seljūk Sultān of -'Irāk, and was finally granted the government of Adharbījān, together with the Sultan's widowed sister-in-law. His son Moḥammad was the virtual ruler of the Seljūk kingdom of -'Irāk as well as of his own province. Moḥammad's brother Kizil-Arslān, who had acted as his deputy in Adharbījān, succeeded to his authority, and was created *Amir-al-Umarā*; but on his claiming sovereign rights, he was assassinated, and his two nephews, who followed him, moderated their ambition.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|------------------------------------|-------|
| 531 | Shams-al-dīn İldigiz | 1136 |
| 568 | Moḥammad -Pahlawān Jahān | 1172 |
| 581 | Kizil-Arslān 'Othmān | 1185 |
| 587 | Abū-Bakr | 1191 |
| 607 | Muḥaffar-al-dīn Ūzbeg | 1210 |
| —622 | | —1225 |



A.H.

543—686

A.D.

67. SALGHARIDS

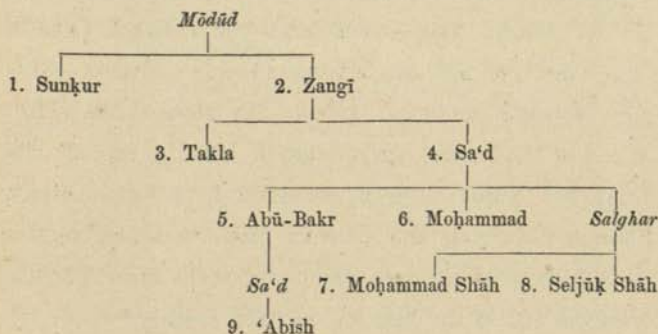
1148—1287

(ATĀBEGS OF FĀRS)

Salghar was the chief of a band of Turkomāns who migrated into Khurāsān, and after a career of rapine attached themselves to the Seljūk Tughril Beg, who appointed Salghar one of his chamberlains. One of his descendants, Sunḡur b. Mōdūd, made himself master of the province of Fārs in 1148 (543), and founded a dynasty which lasted nearly a century and a half. Atābeg Sa'd became tributary to the Shāh of Khwārizm, to whom he surrendered Iṣṭakhr and Ashkūrān; and Atābeg Abū-Bakr, in his turn, paid homage to Ogotai Khān the Mongol, and was rewarded with the title of ẖutlugh Khān. The later Atābegs were merely vassals of the *Mongols of Persia*, and the last of them, the princess 'Abish, was the wife of Mangū-Tīmūr, a son of Hūlāgū. The poet Sa'dī lived at the court of the Atābeg Abū-Bakr.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|-------------------------|-------|
| 543 | Sunḡur* | 1148 |
| 557 | Zangī | 1162 |
| 571 | Takla | 1175 |
| 591 | Sa'd | 1195 |
| 623 | Abū-Bakr | 1226 |
| 658 | Moḡammad | 1260 |
| 660 | Moḡammad Shāh | 1262 |
| 660 | Seljūk Shāh | 1262 |
| 662 | 'Abish | 1263 |
| —686 | | —1287 |

[Mongols]



* Most of the Salgharids used the title Muḡaffar-al-dīn.

| A. H. | | A. D. |
|---------|------------------|-----------|
| 543—740 | 68. HAZĀRASPIDES | 1148—1339 |

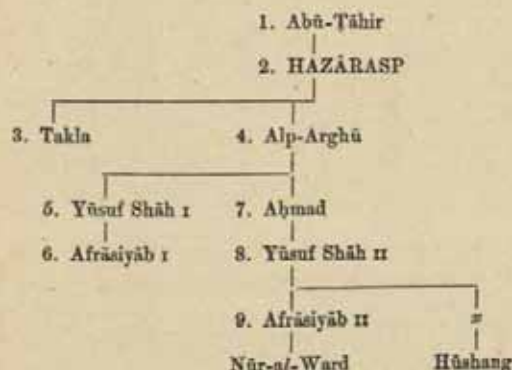
(ATĀBEGS OF LŪRISTĀN)

The founder of this line was Abū-Ṭāhir, a general who was sent by the Salgharid Atābeg to reduce the Greater Lūristān in 1148 (543). This original territory was augmented by a grant of the province of Khūzistān by the Mongol Abūgā. The Atābeg Afrāsiyāb I seized Iṣpahān on the death of Arghūn, but was speedily punished. This petty dynasty continued to rule till about 1339 (740). Many of the dates are uncertain. Their capital was Īdaj; but Yūsuf Shāh II is recorded to have annexed Shūstar, Ḥuwayza, and -Baṣra. There was also another petty dynasty of Atābegs, who governed the *Lesser* Lūristān from the end of the 12th to the 16th century.*

* For both dynasties see Sir Henry Howorth's *History of the Mongols*, Part III. pp. 140, 406, 751-6.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|--------|---|---------|
| 543 | Abū-Tāhir b. Moḥammad | 1148 |
| c. 600 | Naṣrat-al-dīn Hazārasp | c. 1203 |
| c. 650 | Takla | c. 1252 |
| c. 657 | Shams-al-dīn Alp-Arghū | c. 1259 |
| c. 673 | Yūsuf Shāh I | c. 1274 |
| c. 687 | Afrāsiyāb I | 1288 |
| 696 | Naṣrat-al-dīn Aḥmad | 1296 |
| 733 | Rukn-al-dīn Yūsuf Shāh II | 1333 |
| 740 | Muḥaffar-al-dīn Afrāsiyāb II | 1339 |
| 756 | Shams-al-dīn Hūshang (or Nūr-al-Ward) | 1355 |
| c. 780 | Aḥmad | c. 1378 |
| c. 815 | Abū-Sa'īd | 1408 |
| c. 820 | Ḥosayn | c. 1417 |
| 827 | Ghiyāth-al-dīn | 1423 |

Expelled by Ibrāhīm b. Shāh Rukh



[*Timūride*]

A. H.

A. D.

c. 470—628 69. SHĀHS OF KHWĀRIZM 1077—1231

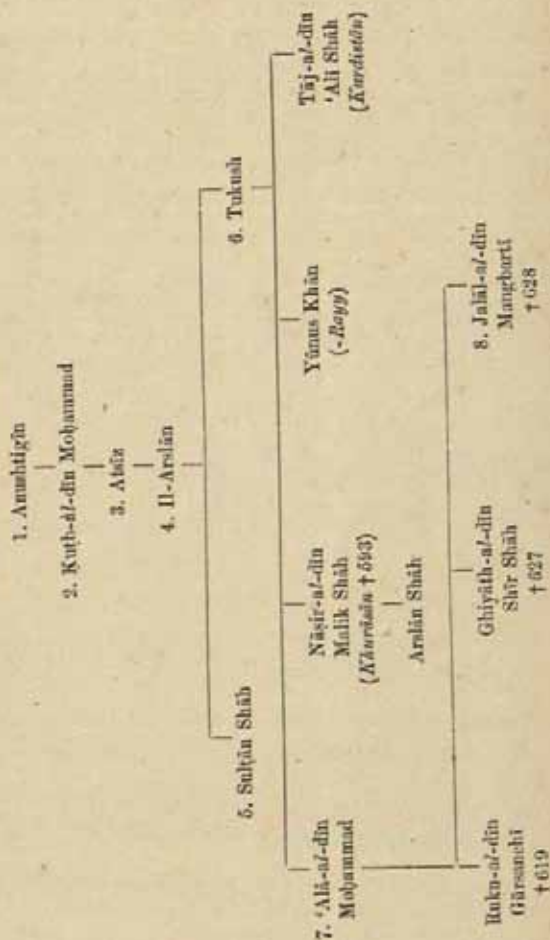
A Turkish slave of Balkātigīn of Ghazna, named Anush-tigīn, rose to be the cup-bearer of the Seljūq Sultān Malik Shāh, who made him governor of Khwārizm (Khiva), a post to which his son succeeded with the title of *Khwārizm Shāh*. Atsız was the first of the line to show any ambition for independence, but his revolt in 1138 (533) was punished by his expulsion from Khwārizm by Sultān Sinjar. Atsız, however, shortly returned, and henceforward the Khwārizm Shāhs enjoyed sovereign power. Atsız extended his authority as far as Jand on the River Sīhūn (Jaxartes). Tukush added Khurāsān, Rayy and Iṣpahān to his dominions 1193-4 (589-590), and his son, the celebrated 'Alā-al-dīn Moḥammad, after a stubborn war with the *Ghūrīds* in Khurāsān, reduced the greater part of Persia by the year 1210 (607), subdued Bukhārā and Samarḳand, and invading the territory of the Gūr-Khān of Ḳarā-Khitay, seized his capital Otrār. In 1214 (611) he entered Afghānistān and took Ghazna, and then, having adopted

the 'Alid heresy (614) prepared to put an end to the 'Abbāsid Caliphate. His career of conquest was suddenly cut short by the appearance of the Mongol hordes of Chingiz Khān on his northern borders. Moḥammad fled incontinently before this appalling swarm, and died in despair on an island of the Caspian Sea, 1220 (617). His three sons wandered for some time through the provinces of Persia, and one of them, Jalāl-al-dīn, even visited India for two years; but after a decade of stirring adventures, during which he contrived to hold Adharbijān from 622-8, he was finally banished by the Mongols in 1231 (628). At one time the rule of the Khwārizm Shāh was almost conterminous with the Seljūq empire, but this period of widest extent scarcely lasted a dozen years.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|--------|--------------------------------------|---------|
| c. 470 | Anushtigīn | c. 1077 |
| 490 | Ḳutb-al-dīn Moḥammad | 1097 |
| 621 | Atsız | 1127 |
| 551 | Īl-Arslān | 1156 |
| 568 | Sultān Shāh Maḥmūd († 589) | 1172 |
| 568 | Tukush | 1172 |
| 596 | 'Alā-al-dīn Moḥammad | 1199 |
| 617 | Jalāl-al-dīn Mangbarti | 1220 |
| —628 | | —1231 |

[Mongols]

SHĀHS OF KHWĀRIZM



| A. H. | | A. H. |
|----------|------------------|-----------|
| 619—703 | 70. ḲUTLUḠ KHĀNS | 1222—1303 |
| (KIRMĀN) | | |

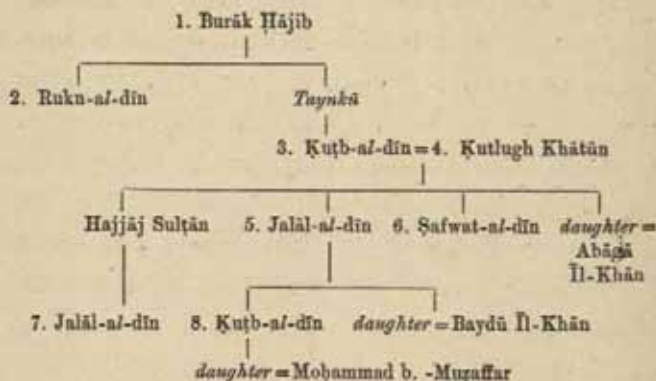
Burāk Hājib, a native of Ḳarā-Khitay, and an officer of 'Alā-al-dīn the Khwārizm Shāh, succeeding in establishing his power in Kirmān in 1222 (619), during the period of anarchy which followed the overthrow of the Khwārizm Shāh by Chingiz Khān; and his authority was confirmed by the Mongol Ogotāy, who conferred upon him the title of *ḲutluḠ Khān*. The dynasty kept within the limits of Kirmān, and were loyal vassals of the *Mongols of Persia*, two of whom married daughters of the family. The daughter of the last of the line married Moḥammad the *Muḏaffarid* of Fārs.

| A. H. | | A. D. |
|-------|--|-------|
| 619 | Burāk Hājib ḲutluḠ Khān. * . . . | 1222 |
| 632 | Rukn-al-dīn Khōjat-al-Ḥaḳḳ | 1234 |
| 650 | Ḳuṭb-al-dīn Moḥammad | 1262 |
| 655 | ḲutluḠ Khātūn (<i>widow of preceding</i>)* . . . | 1267 |
| 681 | Jalāl-al-dīn Suyurghātmiš | 1282 |
| 693 | Ṣafwat-al-dīn Pādishāh Khātūn | 1293 |
| 694 | Jalāl-al-dīn Moḥammad Shāh | 1294 |
| 701 | Ḳuṭb-al-dīn Shāh-Jahān | 1301 |
| —703 | | —1303 |

[*Mongol governors till 741; then Muḏaffarids.*]

* From 555 to 660 her son Hajjāj Sultān was the titular ruler.

ḲUTLUGH KHÂNS



X. THE SUCCESSORS OF THE SELJŪKS IN THE WEST

SÆC. XIV—XIX

AMĪRS OF ASIA MINOR

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------|
| 71. KARĀSĪ | (MYSIA) |
| 72. ḤAMĪD | (PISIDIA) |
| 73. KARMIYĀN | (PHRYGIA) |
| 74. TAKKA | (LYCIA) |
| 75. ŠĀRŪ KHĀN | (LYDIA) |
| 76. AYDĪN | (LYDIA) |
| 77. MANTASHĀ | (CARIA) |
| 78. KIZIL-AḤMADLĪ | (PAPHLAGONIA) |
| 79. KARAMĀN | (LYCAONIA) |

80. 'OTHMĀNLĪ SULTĀNS OF TURKEY

X. THE SUCCESSORS OF THE SELJŪKS IN THE WEST

SÆC. XIV—XIX

We have seen how the Atābegs and other officers of the Seljūks succeeded to the government of the Persian, Mesopotamian, and Syrian provinces of their wide empire, but, failing to found powerful dynasties, were forced to make way for the Mongols in the thirteenth century. There was, however, one part of the Seljūk empire where the Mongols made no lasting impression, and where the Seljūks were followed by a dynasty greater than their own, the splendid line of the '*Othmānlī* or *Ottoman Turks*. Before entering upon the Mongol period of Moḥammadan history, these successors of the Seljūks in the West must be noticed.

In the second half of the thirteenth century the Seljūks of -Rūm, or Hither Asia, became the vassals of the Mongols of Persia, who directed affairs in Anatolia through a governor. But the hold of the Mongols upon this distant province was slight and brief. The

decayed Seljūks might submit, but the young dynasties which sprang up among their ruins paid little heed to the remote despots of Persia, who made few efforts to restrain them. Ten States soon divided the Seljūk kingdom of -Rūm amongst themselves. The *Karāsī* dynasty occupied Mysia; the families of *Şārū Khān* and *Ayḏīn*, Lydia; the *Mantashā* princes, Caria; those of *Takka*, Lycia and Pamphylia; *Hamīd*, Pisidia and Isauria; *Karamān*, Lycaonia; *Karmiyān*, Phrygia; *Kızıl-Aḥmadlı*, Paphlagonia; whilst the house of 'Othmān held Phrygia Epictetus.

All these dynasties were gradually absorbed by the rising power of the 'Othmānlis, once the least among them. *Karāsī* was annexed in 1336 (737); *Hamīd* was purchased as a marriage dower in 1382 (783); and in 1390 (792) *Bāyazīd* (*Bajazet*) 1 annexed *Karmiyān*, *Takka*, *Şārū Khān*, *Ayḏīn*, and *Mantashā*, in a single campaign, and completed his conquest by adding *Karamān* and *Kızıl-Aḥmadlı* in 1392-3 (794-5). Thus at the end of the fourteenth century, not a hundred years after the assumption of independence by 'Othmān 1, the arms of his great-grandson had swept away the nine rival dynasties.

After the battle of Angora in 1402 (804), when Bāyazīd was defeated and made prisoner by Timūr, and the 'Othmānlī power in Asia seemed to be annihilated by the Tatar hordes, seven of these dynasties (but not Karāsī or Ḥamīd) were restored by the conqueror, and enjoyed a renewed vitality for about a quarter of a century. By that time, however, the 'Othmānlīs had recovered from the blow, and in 1426-8 (829-832) five of the restored dynasties were re-absorbed by Murād (Amurath) II; and in 1471 (877), after the second conquest of Karamān, the rule of the Ottoman Turks, in the strong hands of Moḥammad II, was again supreme over all the provinces which once owned the sway of the Ten Amīrs, as it is at this day.

The following table shows the division of the Seljūḳ kingdom of Rūm among the Ten States, and their absorption by the 'Othmānlīs, and gives the names and (so far as known) the dates of their princes.*

* Details may be consulted in my article on the Successors of the Seljūḳs, in *Journal R. As. Soc.*, N.S. xiv. (1882).

A.H.

A.D.

699—1311 80. 'OTHMĀNLĪ OR OTTOMAN 1299—1893

SULTĀNS OF TURKEY

The 'Othmānlī or Ottoman Turks were a small clan of the Oghuz tribe, who were driven westward from Khurāsān by the Mongol migration, and took refuge in Asia Minor early in the thirteenth century. In recognition of their aid in war, the Seljūk Sultān allowed them to pasture their flocks in the province anciently known as Phrygia Epictetus (henceforward called Sultān-öni) on the borders of the Byzantine Bithynia, with the town of Sugut (Thebasion) for their headquarters. Here 'Othmān, the eponymous founder of a dynasty which numbers thirty-five Sultāns in the direct male line, was born in 1258 (656), 'Othmān pushed the Byzantine frontier further back, and his son 'Orkhān took Brūsa and Nicaea, absorbed the neighbouring State of Karāsī, and organized the famous corps of Janizaries (*Yani chari* 'new soldiery'), who for several centuries were the flower of the conquering armies of the 'Othmānlis. In 1358 (759) the Turks crossed the Hellespont, established a

garrison at Gallipoli, and began the conquest of the Byzantine Empire in Europe. Adrianople and Philippopolis fell a few years later, and the victories of the Maritza (1364), Kosovo (1389), and Nicopolis (1394) over the chivalry of all Europe gave the Turks assured possession of the whole Balkan peninsula, except the district surrounding Constantinople. The capital of the Eastern Empire was temporarily saved by the diversion caused by the invasion of Asia Minor by Tīmūr (Tamerlane) and the overwhelming defeat of the Ottoman Sultān Bāyazīd I (commonly called Bajazet, from an ignorant pronunciation of the German spelling) in 1402 (804) on the field of Angora.

For the moment an empire which had stretched from the Danube to the Orontes appeared to be almost annihilated by a single blow. Its recovery, however, under the wise rule of Moḥammad I, ‘The Gentleman,’ was scarcely less remarkable, and, after an interval of peace and consolidation, Murād II was able to defend the empire from the attacks of Hunyady, the ‘White Knight of Wallachia,’ and to avenge a violated treaty by the decisive victory of Varna (1444) over a vast army of Christian crusaders. This signal success secured the

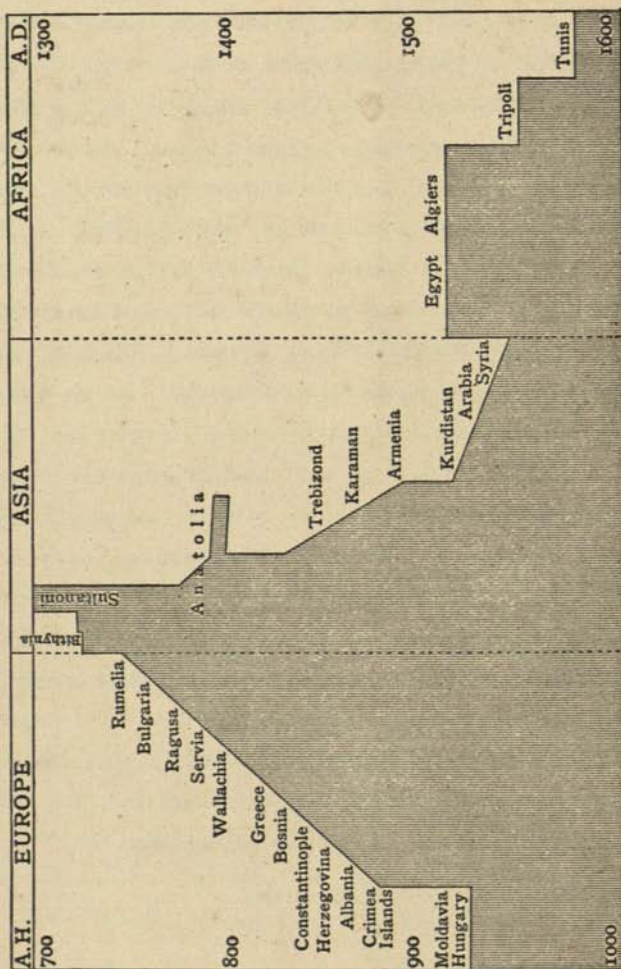
Turks from invasion from the north, and the history of the next two centuries is a long record of triumphs. Constantinople fell to Moḥammad II in 1453, and the last remnant of the Byzantine Empire was thereby destroyed. The Crimea was annexed (1475), the Aegean islands became Ottoman soil, and the Turkish flag waved even in Italy over the castle of Otranto. In his brief reign of eight years, Selīm I, 'the Grim,' defeated the Shāh of Persia, and added Kurdistān and Diyār-Bakr to the Turkish Empire; took Syria, Egypt and Arabia from the Mamlūks (1517); and not only became the master of the Holy Cities of Mecca and -Medīna, but received from the last 'Abbāsīd Caliph of Cairo the relics of the Prophet Moḥammad and the right of succession to the Caliphate, in virtue of which the Ottoman Sultāns have ever since claimed the homage of the faithful.

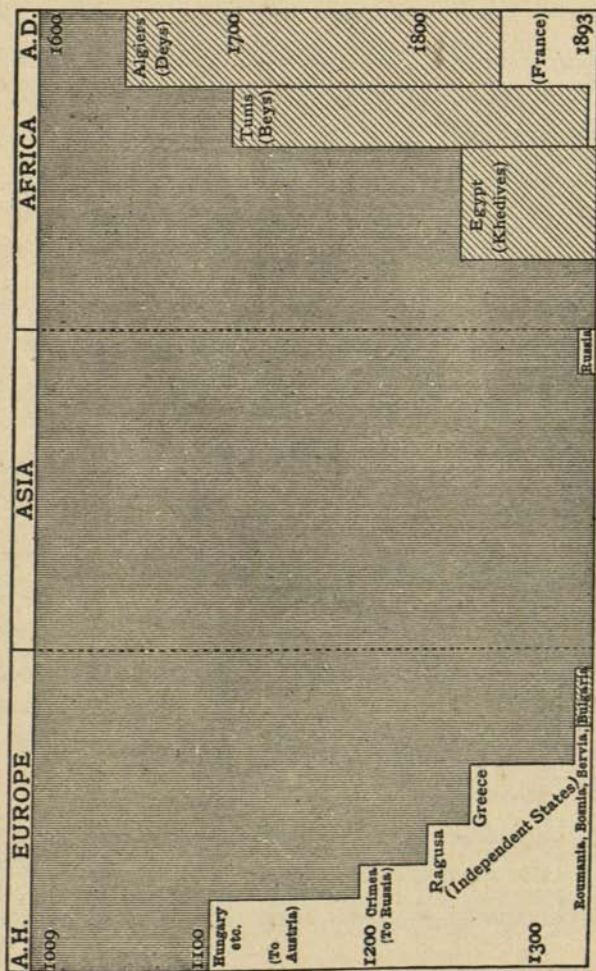
Sulaymān the Great, *patris fortis filius fortior*, overshadowed Selīm's exploits by his own magnificent achievements. In 1522 he expelled the Knights of Rhodes from their corsairs' stronghold. In the north he conquered Belgrade, and in 1526 utterly crushed the Hungarians on the field of Mohács, slaying their king Louis II and 20,000

of his troops. For a century and a half Hungary became a Turkish province. Sulaymān even besieged Vienna (1629), and, though he failed to subdue it, he compelled the Archduke Ferdinand to pay him tribute. ‘The Sultan’s claim to be called The Great rests not merely upon his undoubted wisdom and ability, and the splendid series of his successes, but upon the fact that he maintained and improved his grand position in an age of surpassing greatness—the age of Charles I, Francis I, Elizabeth, and Leo X—of Columbus, Cortes, and Raleigh. In the great days of Charles he dared to annex Hungary and lay siege to Vienna; and in the epoch of great navies and admirals, of Doria and Drake, he swept the seas to the coasts of Spain, and his admirals Barbarossa, Pialó, and Dragut, created panic fear along all the shores of the Mediterranean, drove the Spaniards out of the Barbary States, and defeated pope, emperor, and doge together at the great sea-fight off Prevesa (1538).’* The empire of Sulaymān stretched from Buda-Pesth on the Danube to Aswān on the Cataracts of the Nile, and from the Euphrates almost to the Straits of Gibraltar.

* See my *History of Turkey*, ch. x (1888).

GROWTH OF THE OTTOMAN EMPIRE.





DECLINE OF THE OTTOMAN EMPIRE.

The reign of Sulaymān the Great is the apogee of Ottoman power. The downward course began with the blow inflicted upon the naval prestige of Turkey by Don John of Austria's signal victory off Lepanto (1571). In spite of the conquest of Cyprus (1571) and such successes on land as the defeat of the Austrians on the Keresztes (1596), the Turks were no longer the terror of Europe. Murād iv added Baghdād to their Asiatic dominions in 1638, and Candia and other islands were wrested from the Venetians in 1645; but on the continent of Europe the defeats at St. Gothard (1664), Choczim (1673), and Lemberg (1675) by John Sobieski, culminating in the fatal siege of Vienna (1682) and the rout at Mohács, were followed by the total loss of Hungary (1686), and the invasion of Bosnia and Greece by the Austrians and Venetians. Prince Eugene delivered a final blow at the battle of Zenta (1697), and the treaties of Carlovitz (1699) and Passarovitz (1718) mark the end of Turkish supremacy in Hungary, Podolia, and Transylvania.

The frontiers of the empire remained almost unchanged from this epoch of humiliation up to the recent partition of 1878. Russian aggression began in 1736 with the annexa-

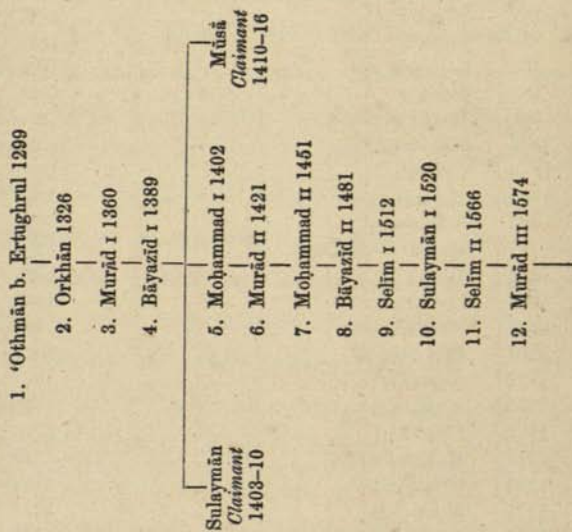
tion of Oczakov and Azov, and continued with the seizure of the Crimea in 1783, besides several invasions of the Danubian Principalities. Turkey itself was a prey to the exactions of a disorderly soldiery, and Maḥmūd II, the greatest of modern Sulṭāns, though he massacred the mutinous Janizaries (1826), could not arrest the process of disintegration which was going on in the Ottoman empire. In Africa, Egypt became practically independent under Moḥammad ‘Alī in the first quarter of this century, and since 1883 has been still further removed from the ‘sphere of Turkish influence’ by the British occupation. Algiers and Tunis became semi-independent under their Deys and Beys in 1659 (1070) and 1705 (1117) respectively, and France has been the possessor of Algiers since 1830, and of Tunis, in all but name, since 1881. The regency of Tripoli is all that now remains of the Turkish empire in Africa. In Asia, however, it has lost little since the day when Murād IV took Baghdād from the Persians; though Kars and Batūm were awarded to Russia in 1878 by the Treaty of Berlin, when the island of Cyprus was hypothecated to Great Britain.

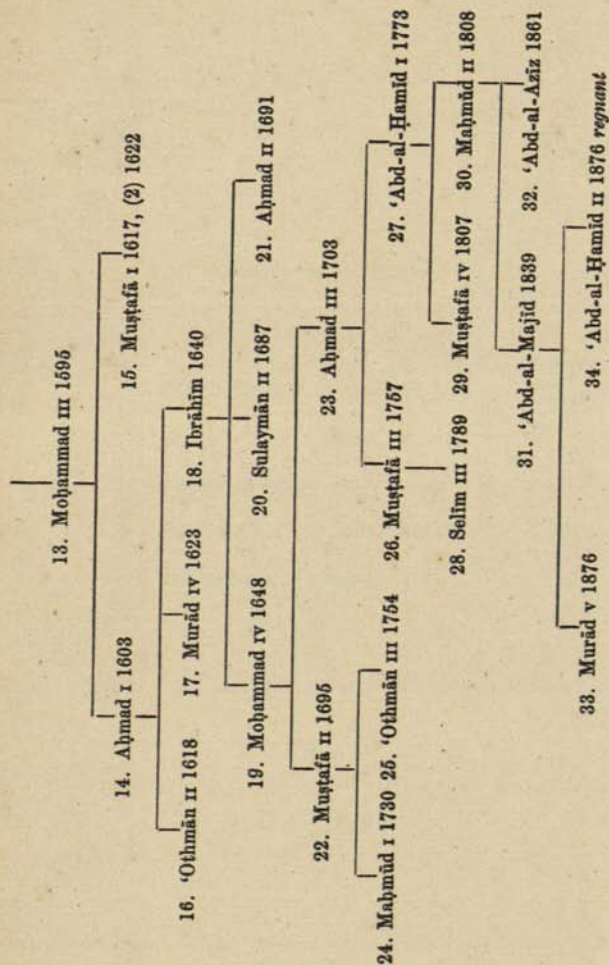
Turkey’s most serious losses have been in Europe.

Greece parted from her in 1828; the Danubian Principalities coalesced into the State of Roumania in 1866; and Servia got rid of her Turkish garrisons in 1867. The designs of Russia, which had been checked by England and France in the Crimean War (1854-5), were again manifested in the invasion of Turkey in 1877-8; but the Great Powers did not sanction the aggrandizing ambition of Russia. The Treaty of Berlin (1878), though it gave little to Russia, carried out the partition of Turkey in Europe which had already begun. Roumania and Servia were created separate kingdoms, the independence of Montenegro was recognized, Greece was given Thessaly, Bosnia and Herzegovina were entrusted to Austria, and a new tributary principality of Bulgaria was established, to which Eastern Roumelia was added in 1885, whereby Turkey was virtually deprived of her last possession north of the Balkans. The Ottoman Empire in Europe is now reduced to a strip of territory south of the Balkans, corresponding to ancient Thrace, Macedon, Epirus, and Illyria, instead of stretching almost to the gates of Vienna as it did in the great days of Sulaymān.

| A. H. | | A. D. |
|-------|---|-------|
| 699 | ‘Othmān I | 1299 |
| 726 | Orkhān | 1326 |
| 761 | Murād (Amurath) I | 1360 |
| 792 | Bāyazīd (Bajazet) I | 1389 |
| 805 | Moḥammad I | 1402 |
| 824 | Murād II | 1421 |
| 855 | Moḥammad II | 1451 |
| 886 | Bāyazīd II | 1481 |
| 918 | Selīm I | 1512 |
| 926 | Sulaymān I | 1520 |
| 974 | Selīm II | 1566 |
| 982 | Murād III | 1574 |
| 1003 | Moḥammad III | 1595 |
| 1012 | Aḥmad I | 1603 |
| 1026 | Muṣṭafā I | 1617 |
| 1027 | ‘Othmān II | 1618 |
| 1031 | Muṣṭafā I (<i>restored</i>) | 1622 |
| 1032 | Murād IV | 1623 |
| 1049 | Ibrāhīm I | 1640 |
| 1058 | Moḥammad IV | 1648 |
| 1099 | Sulaymān II | 1687 |
| 1102 | Aḥmad II | 1691 |
| 1106 | Muṣṭafā II | 1695 |
| 1115 | Aḥmad III | 1703 |
| 1143 | Maḥmūd I | 1730 |
| 1168 | ‘Othmān III | 1754 |
| 1171 | Muṣṭafā III | 1757 |
| 1187 | ‘Abd-al-Ḥamīd I | 1773 |
| 1203 | Selīm III | 1789 |
| 1222 | Muṣṭafā IV | 1807 |
| 1223 | Maḥmūd II | 1808 |
| 1255 | ‘Abd-al-Majīd | 1839 |
| 1277 | ‘Abd-al-‘Azīz | 1861 |
| 1293 | Murād V | 1876 |
| 1293 | ‘Abd-al-Ḥamīd II <i>regnant</i> | 1876 |

‘OTHMÁNĪ OR OTTOMAN TURKS

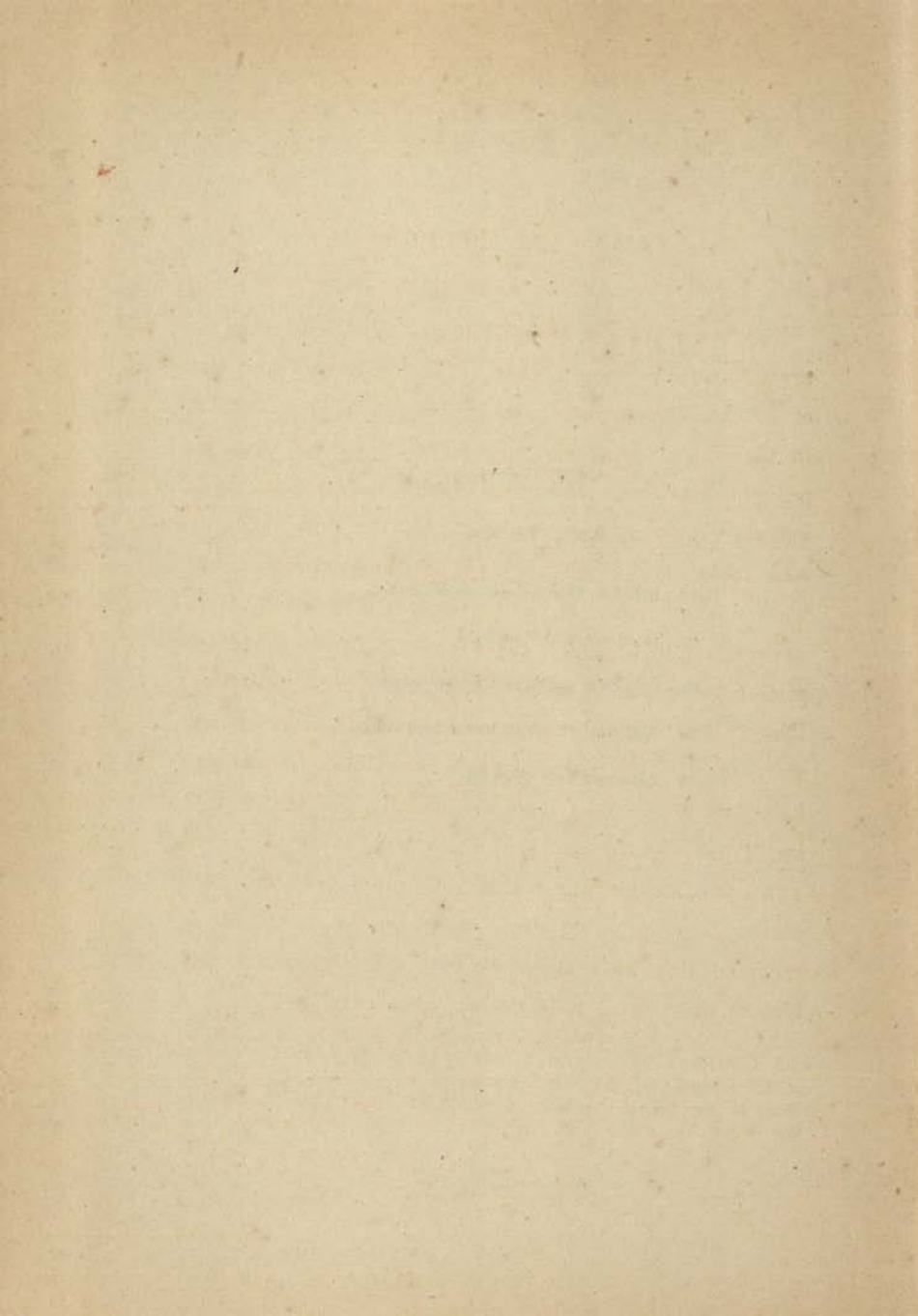




XI. THE MONGOLS

SÆC. XIII—XVIII

- 81. GREAT KHĀNS OF MONGOLIA
- 82. MONGOLS OF PERSIA
- 83. GOLDEN HORDE OF KIPCHAK
- 84. KHĀNS OF THE ẖRIM (CRIMEA)
- 85. CHAGHATĀY KHĀNS



XI. THE MONGOLS*

SÆC. XIII—XVIII

The history of the Mongols begins practically with the great conqueror Chingiz Khān. There are many traditions of his ancestors current among his biographers, but, as in the case of many another man of unexpected fame, his pedigree has been elaborated rather on the ground of natural propriety than of fact. All that can safely be said about the early history of the Mongols is that they were a clan among clans, a member of a great nomad confederacy that ranged the country north of the desert of Gobi in search of water and pasture; who spent their lives in hunting and the breeding of cattle, lived on flesh and sour milk (kumis), and made their profit by bartering hides and beasts with their kinsmen the Khitans, or with the Turks and Chinese, to whom they owed allegiance. The name Mongol was not known abroad until the tenth century, and probably came to be applied to the whole group of clans only when the chief of a particular clan bearing that name acquired an ascendancy over the rest

* The following introduction, and those to the succeeding sections of the Mongol dynasties, are reprinted from my *Catalogue of Oriental Coins in the British Museum*, vol vi. They are of course based upon Sir Henry Howorth's great History.

of the confederacy, and gave to the greater the name of the less. If not the founder of the supremacy of his clan, Yissugāy was a notable maintainer of it, and it was probably he who first asserted the independence of the Mongols from Chinese rule. In spite, however, of conquest and annexation, the people who owned the sovereignty of Yissugāy numbered only forty thousand tents. Yet it was upon this foundation that Yissugāy's son, Chingiz Khān, built up in twenty years the widest empire the world has ever seen. The father died in 1175 A.D., and Temujin his son, a child of thirteen years, and not yet called by the high title of Chingiz Khān, ruled in his stead over the tribes that wandered by the banks of the Onon.

A detailed chronicle of the career of conquest inaugurated by this Asiatic Alexander is no part of the present purpose.* It is sufficient to say that after thirty years of struggle against home-foes, in which he succeeded in firmly establishing his authority over his own and the neighbouring clans, in face of powerful and treacherous conspiracies, Temujin found himself free to devote the twenty years that remained of his life to wider and more ambitious designs. Having reduced all the tribes north of the desert

* See Sir H. H. Howorth's *History of the Mongols*, i. 49—115.

of Gobi, from the Irtysh to the Khinggan Mountains, and having incorporated among his subjects the Karaits, who had forfeited their independence by the treachery of their king, Wang Khân (the Prester John of European fable, and an old but perfidious ally of Yissugāy and his son), Temujin summoned, in 1206, a Kuriltāy or Diet of the chiefs of all the tribes; and a *shaman*, or priest, announced to the assembled nobles that a higher title than belonged to others had been decreed by Heaven to Temujin, and henceforward his name should be Chingiz Khān, 'the Very Mighty King.' Thus at the age of forty-four did Chingiz begin his undisputed reign. Three years later, after receiving the submission of the Uighurs, he began his invasion of China, and though it was reserved for his grandson to complete the subjugation of the Celestial Empire, a great part of the northern provinces, the ancient kingdom of Liau-tung, and the Tangut Kingdom of Hia, were added, as subject provinces or feudatory states, to the Mongol dominions during the great Khān's own lifetime. The next obstacle in the path to universal sovereignty was the old Turkish kingdom of Khārā-Khitay, which corresponded nearly to the modern limits of Eastern Turkistān, and was ruled by a line of kings called Gūr-

Khāns, who exacted homage from the border states of Persia and Transoxiana. Chingiz and his horsemen, however, instead of paying homage, speedily rode down all resistance, and soon found themselves masters of Kāshghar, Khoten, and Yārkhand, with the rest of the territory of Gūr-Khāns. The Mongol dominions now marched with the wide kingdom which had recently been conquered by the Khwārizm Shāh; and this, therefore, became the next object of attack and the next example of the futility of resistance. The Mongol armies, divided into several immense brigades, swept over Khwārizm, Khurāsān, and Afghānistān, on the one hand, and on the other over Adharbijān, Georgia, and southern Russia, whilst a third division continued the reduction of China. In the midst of these diverging streams of conquest, Chingiz Khān died, in 1227 (624), at the age of sixty-four. The territory he and his sons had conquered stretched from the Yellow Sea to the Euxine, and included lands or tribes wrung from the rule of Chinese, Tanguts, Afghāns, Persians, and Turks.

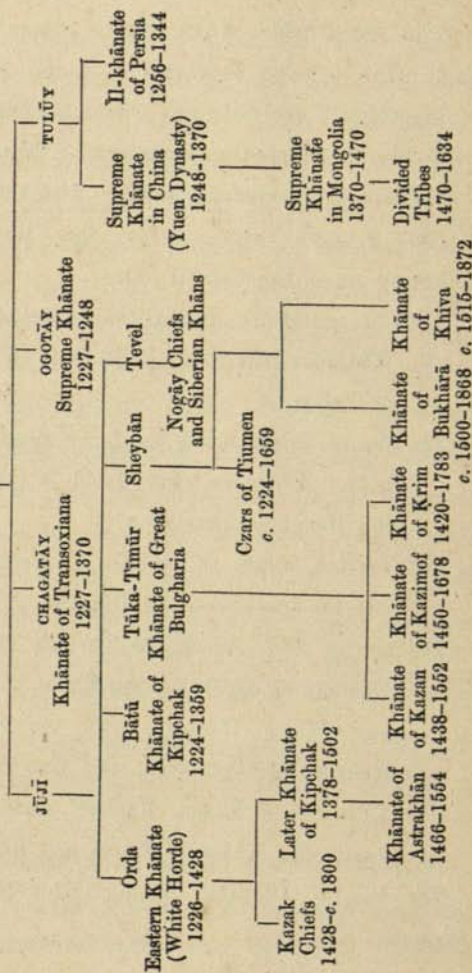
It was the habit of a Mongol chief to distribute the clans over which he had ruled as appanages among his sons; and this tribal rather than territorial distribution

obtained in the division of the empire among the sons of Chingiz. The founder appointed a special appanage of tribes in certain loosely defined camping-grounds to each son, and also nominated a successor to himself in the supreme Khānate. Beginning therefore with the *Khākaāns*, or supreme suzerains over all the other Mongol chiefs, the following seems the natural order:

1. *The line of Ogotāy*, ruling the tribes of Zungaria; *Khākaāns*, till their extinction by the family of Tulūy.
2. *The line of Tulūy*, ruling the home clans of Mongol-istān; *Khākaāns* after Ogotāy's line, down to the Manchu supremacy.
3. *The Persian branch of the line of Tulūy*; Hūlāgū and his successors, the Īl-khāns of Persia.
4. *The line of Jūjī*, ruling the Turkish Tribes of the Khānate of Kipchak; the Khāns of the Golden and White Hordes, with the sequel, the Khānate of Astrakhān, and the offshoots, the Khānates of Kazan, Kazimof, and Krim; and finally the Khāns of Khiva and Bukhārā.
5. *The line of Chagatāy*, ruling Mā-warā-l-nahr, or Transoxiana.

SKETCH-TREE OF THE DYNASTIES SPRUNG FROM CHINGIZ KHÂN

CHINGIZ



A. H.

A. D.

603—1043

81. GREAT KHĀNS

1026—1634

1. *Line of Ogotāy*:—Appanage, Zungaria*; Supreme Khākaāns (1227—1248).

By the will of Chingiz, Ogotāy besides receiving his appanage in Zungaria was appointed to succeed to the supreme authority; and it is a singular testimony to the reverence in which the intentions of the great founder of Mongol power were held that Ogotāy, although neither the eldest nor the most capable of the sons of Chingiz, was suffered quietly to assume the sovereignty over all the chiefs of the family and tributaries, and received their loyal homage at the general Diet held in 1229. His reign was marked by a considerable extension of the Mongol dominions. The Kin empire, or northern half of China, which had only been partially reduced in the lifetime of Chingiz, was now (1234) entirely subdued; (the southern

* It will be simpler thus to indicate roughly the position of the camping-grounds of Ogotāy's subjects, than to say "the clans camping in or about Zungaria," etc. In this instance the tribes in question were the Naymans and the ancestors of the modern Kalmuks.

half, or Sung empire, resisted the invaders till the time of Khubilāy.) Korea was annexed (1241). The gallant and unfortunate Jalāl-al-dīn, son of the late Khwārizm Shāh Moḥammad, was hunted through the wide territory which had once owned his father's rule. A great expedition into Europe was conducted by Bātū, son of Jūji; the Mongols entered Moscow and Novgorod, penetrated to Hungary, burned Cracow, and laid siege to Pesth. The opportune death of Ogotāy called for a general assembly of the family, and a reverse sustained at Liegnitz, at the hand of the Grand Duke of Austria, saved Europe. Meanwhile the internal affairs of the empire had been organized and ably administered under the wise and just rule of the prime minister Yeliu Chutsāy, a Khitan, who did much to restore order and security to the provinces, in spite of the incapacity of his imperial master, who was given over to the prevailing Mongol vice of habitual drunkenness.

Ogotāy's death in A.D. 1241 (637) was followed by an interregnum of several years, during which his widow Turakina governed the empire as regent for her eldest son Kuyuk, until he should return from Europe, where he had been distinguishing himself in the invasion of

Hungary under his cousin Bātū. He received the summons in Hungary, and on his return to Karakorum in 1246, was elected Khākaān by a general Kuriltāy attended by most of the chiefs of the family, except the sons of Jūjī, who were dissatisfied with the succession and excused themselves. Kuyuk restored the tranquility which had been disturbed during the rule of his mother, and armies were now despatched to continue the work of extension in China and Persia.

Kuyuk was the only member of the family of Ogotāy who succeeded to the supreme throne, and on his death in 1248 the empire passed to the line of Tulūy, and neither Kuyuk's sons nor any of his brothers succeeded him. Under the first Khākaān of the new line, the family of Ogotāy offered no opposition to their dethronement; but when Mangū died and Khubilāy was elected to the sovereignty by an informal Diet held in China, the discontent of Ogotāy's descendants manifested itself in immediate and general revolt, and a series of disastrous campaigns ensued.* Kaydū, the grandson of Ogotāy, fought no less than forty-one battles with the supporters of Tulūy on the east, and fifteen with their Kipchak allies on

* See Howorth, i. 173—186.

the west: but the struggle was unequal, and soon after Kaydū's death (about 1301, 701) the family of Ogotāy did homage to the line of Tulūy; their clans were dispersed among the tribes of Transoxiana and Kipchak, and their chiefs lived in obscurity under the rule of the Chagatāy Khāns. Once and again, in a period of confusion, some representative of Ogotāy's house was raised to the throne of Transoxiana; and it was the fancy of the great Tīmūr to bring again to light the heirs of the heir of Chingiz by setting up Suyurghātmish and his son Maḥmūd in the stead of the deposed house of Chagatāy; but this was only a fictitious revival, and these two *rois fainéants* cannot be said to represent the original Khaḡaāns.

2. *Line of Tulūy*:—Appanage, Mongolistān; Khāḡaāns (1248–1634) in three stages, (1) Yuen dynasty in China (1248–1370), (2) Diminished empire at Karakorum (1370–1543), (3) Divided tribes and gradual submission to Manchus (1543–1634).

Mangū, the son of Tulūy, owed his accession partly to his personal reputation as a warrior and general, and partly to the adherence of the numerous tribes of Mongolia proper, the nucleus of the Mongol armies under Chingiz, which formed the appanage of Tulūy. In 1251 his inauguration took place, and in 1257 he died. Yet in this short reign there was room for the beginning of two important changes. Mangū kept his court at the usual capital Karakorum, north of the desert of Gobi, and appointed his brother Khubilāy governor of the southern provinces: this was the beginning of the transfer of the seat of government from Karakorum to Peking. The other change was the despatch of another brother, Hūlāgū, to Persia, where in place of the shifting rule of provincial governors he established his own dynasty, and thus Persia now possessed a line of kings of the royal house of Chingiz, like the other great divisions of the Mongol empire.

The death of Mangū in 1257 was the signal for a general struggle. The house of Ogotāy laid claim to the supreme sovereignty, as has been said; and Arikbuka, a brother of Mangū and Khubilāy, was the candidate in the Mongol homeland. Khubilāy was saluted Khākaān by the chiefs of the army in China; Arikbuka was elected by another Diet at Karakorum; and Kaydū received the like title and homage from the tribes of Ogotāy and Chagatāy further west. Jūji's line in Kipchak did not attempt to gain the Khākaānship, but supported the house of Tulūy. The fine generalship, large resources, and wide personal popularity of Khubilāy—Marco Polo's Great Khān and Coleridge's Kubla Khan—carried him safely through these early complications. Arikbuka was speedily routed, and Kaydu was kept at a distance, though he did not cease from troubling till after Khubilāy's death.

The Khākaāns of the blood of Chingiz now became a Chinese dynasty. By 1280 Khubilāy had conquered the southern or Sung empire of China, and, having thus united the whole country under his sole rule, fixed his court at Khān Baligh (Cambaluk) or the 'City of the Khān,' now called Peking; whilst the old capital Karakorum became a provincial centre during the first of the three

periods into which the history of his descendants may be divided. This *first period* includes the century which elapsed between his founding of the Mongol empire in China and the expulsion of the invaders under his tenth successor, Tughān-Timūr (1370).* The Mongol Khāḡaāns of this period are known in Chinese annals as the *Yuen Dynasty*. With what sumptuous glory this dynasty began we know from Marco Polo: the causes of its decay—the extravagance of the court, the favouritism of the Lamas, the poverty and sickness of the people, the plagues and famines, earthquakes and other ‘signs’—may be read in Sir Henry Howorth’s History. The attempts of various pretenders were crowned by the successful attack of Chu Yuen Chang, prince of U, the founder of the Ming Dynasty, who assumed the royal title and seized Peking in 1368. In two years China was rid of the Mongols; and the most prosperous period of the history of the Khāḡaāns was over.

The *second period* extends from the expulsion from China to the temporary revival under Dayan Khān (1370–1543). This is the time of the *Diminished Empire*, when the Mongols were confined to the steppes from which they

* Howorth, i. 284–340

first went forth to conquer, the camping-grounds by the rivers Kerulon and Onon, north of the desert of Gobi. Even here they were not absolutely independent. The Ming armies surprised the Mongols by Lake Buyur and totally routed them, capturing 80,000 prisoners, lifting 150,000 head of cattle, and carrying off an immense booty. This defeat effectually tamed the spirit of the Khākaāns, supreme now in name alone; and they became actual vassals of the Ming emperors, who appointed the rulers of the tribes by patents drawn up in Peking. In the 15th century a worse thing happened to them; many of the clans became for a while subject to the Uirats. But at the end of the same century Dayan Khān, the fourteenth Khākaān in succession from Tughān-Tīmūr, effected a temporary union among the scattered tribes, and organized them in certain groups.

The *third period* is the history of the disastrous results of Dayan's decentralizing policy—civil war among the *Divided Tribes*, and the consequent absorption of them one by one by the Manchu power which had newly risen on the ruins of the Ming in China. Internal wars, separate dynasties, and universal disunion, soon brought even the nominal sovereignty of the Khākaāns to an end; and after 1634 the descendants of Khubilāy were mere vassals of China.

GREAT KHĀNS

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|---|------|
| 603 | Chingiz Khān | 1206 |
| 624 | Ogotāy | 1227 |
| 639 | <i>Interregnum</i> : Turakina | 1241 |
| 644 | Kuyuk | 1246 |
| 646 | Mangū | 1248 |

YUEN DYNASTY

| | | |
|-----|------------------------|------|
| 655 | Khubilāy | 1257 |
| 693 | Üljā-itū | 1294 |
| 706 | Kuluk | 1307 |
| 711 | Buyantu | 1311 |
| 720 | Gegen | 1320 |
| 723 | Yisun-Timūr | 1323 |
| 728 | Rajipeka | 1328 |
| 729 | Kushala | 1329 |
| 729 | Jiyaghatu | 1329 |
| 732 | Rintshenpal | 1332 |
| 732 | Tughān-Timūr | 1332 |

DIMINISHED EMPIRE

| | | |
|-----|-------------------------|------|
| 771 | Biliktu | 1370 |
| 780 | Ussukhal | 1378 |
| 790 | Engke Soriktu | 1388 |
| 794 | Elbek | 1392 |
| 802 | Gun-Timūr | 1400 |
| 805 | Uljai-Timūr | 1403 |
| 814 | Delbek | 1411 |
| 837 | Adsai | 1434 |
| 843 | Taisong | 1439 |
| 856 | Akbarji | 1452 |

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|------|
| 857 | Ukektu | . | . | . | . | . | . | 1453 |
| 857 | Molon | . | . | . | . | . | . | 1453 |
| 867 | Mandaghol | . | . | . | . | . | . | 1463 |
| 875 | Dayan | . | . | . | . | . | . | 1470 |

DIVIDED TRIBES

| | | | | | | | | |
|-------|---------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| 951 | Bodi | . | . | . | . | . | . | 1544 |
| 955 | Kudang | . | . | . | . | . | . | 1548 |
| 964 | Sasaktu | . | . | . | . | . | . | 1557 |
| 1001 | Setzen | . | . | . | . | . | . | 1593 |
| 1013 | Lingdan | . | . | . | . | . | . | 1604 |
| —1043 | | | | | | | | —1634 |

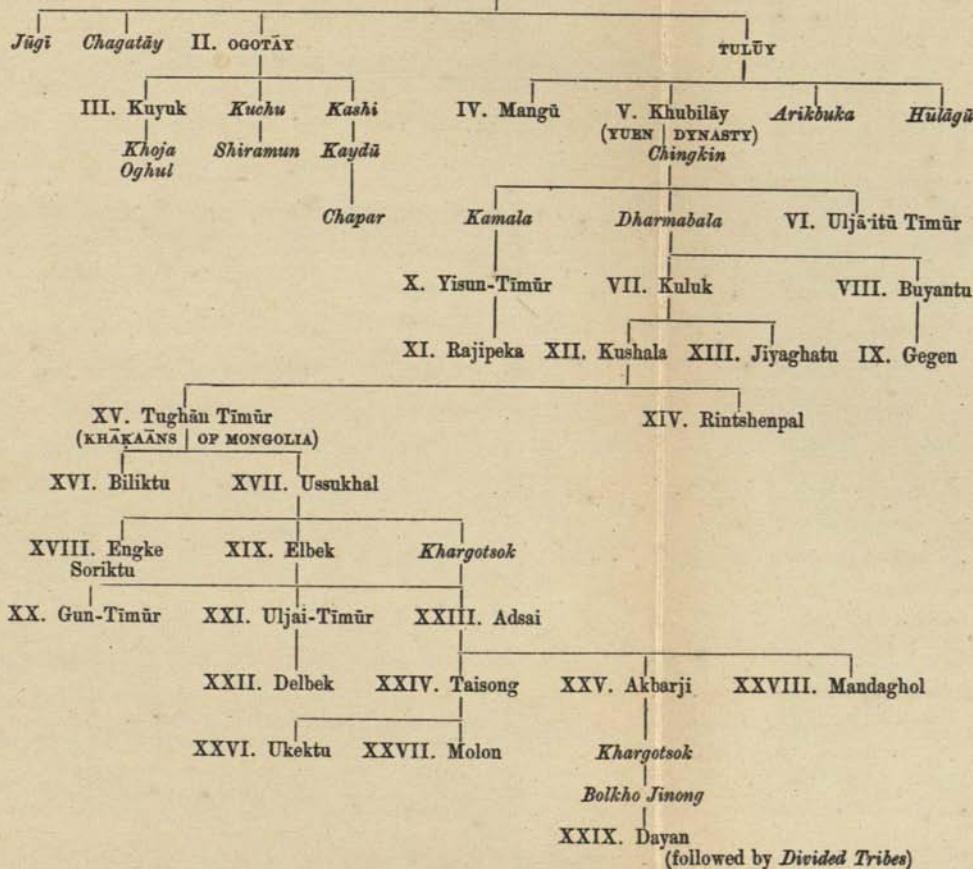
[Manchu Tatars]

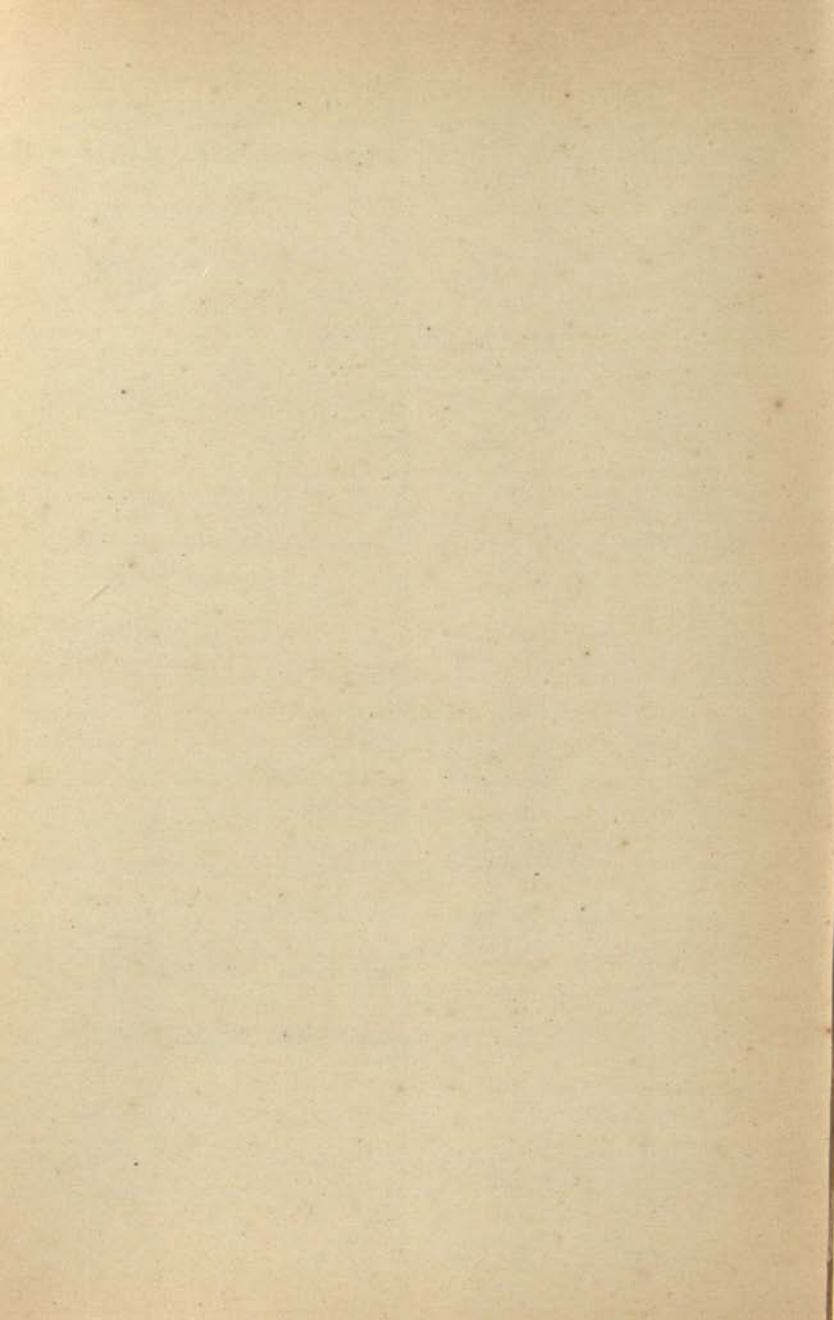
THE HOUSES OF OGOTĀY AND TULŪY

(To face p. 216.)

SUPREME KHĀNS

I. CHINGIZ





| | | |
|---------|-------------------------|-----------|
| A.H. | | A.D. |
| 654—750 | 82. MONGOLS OF PERSIA * | 1256—1349 |

It was in the reign of Mangū that Persia was given a royal dynasty in the House of Hūlāgū (of the line of Tulūy), called Īl-khāns, or provincial Khāns, to indicate the homage they owed and invariably acknowledged (very cheaply) to the supreme Khākaāns. Hūlāgū had little difficulty in establishing his authority over the country allotted to him. The ambitious Shāh of Khwārizm whom Chingiz had routed had already cleared the way by conquering the better part of Persia, and there were no formidable opponents to meet. Hūlāgū speedily drove before him the small princes who were trying to build their little dynasties on the ruins of the great empire of Khwārizm; came to Baghdād and cruelly murdered -Mustaʿsim, the feeble representative of the 'Abbāsīd Caliphs; and discovered no serious obstacle in his path till he was checked in Syria by the valiant Mamlūks of Egypt, who kept him successfully at arm's length. Hūlāgū was now master of

* Howorth, iii.

all the provinces of Persia and Asia Minor from India to the Mediterranean. His dominions marched with those of Chagatāy and Jūji on the north, and with the territory of the Egyptian Sultāns on the south; and within these limits for nearly a century his dynasty reigned in practical independence, whilst rendering a certain feudal homage to the remote Khāḡaān in China. Save for an occasional contest over the succession, the country was quietly and peaceably governed, and the Il-khāns showed a praiseworthy desire to emulate the examples of earlier rulers of Persia in the encouragement of science and letters.

In the reign of Abū-Sa'īd, however, the dynasty was undermined by the same causes which had previously destroyed the power of the Caliphs and the Seljūks, and were destined at last to bring about the downfall of the Mamlūks in Egypt: rival amīrs, generals, ministers, fanatics, began to take a large share in the government of the country, and in their jealousies and animosities lay the prime danger of the Il-khāns. After Abū-Sa'īd's death the throne of Persia became the toadstool on which the puppet sovereigns set up by rival amīrs seated themselves, only to find it crumbling beneath them. Two great houses tore Persia in sunder: that of Amīr Chūpān, a favourite

general of Ghāzān and of his successors; and that of Amīr Ḥosayn the Jalayr, also called the Ilkānian. Each of these had a son named Ḥasan, distinguished by the epithets Great and Little; the son of Chūpān was Amīr Ḥasan Kāchuk or the Little; and the son of the Jalayr was Amīr Shaykh Ḥasan Buzurg or the Great. Their power was immediately felt. Arpā Khān, a descendant not of Hūlāgū but of Arikbuka his brother, was placed on the throne after Abū-Sa'id's death, but was deposed the same year (1336) by Mūsā, who drew his pedigree from Baydū the sixth Il-khān. Mūsā was quickly displaced by the nominees of the Greater Ḥasan, whose rival of the line of Chūpān presently set up an opposition in the sovereignty in the person of Sātt-Beg, a sister of Abū-Sa'id, who had been the wife of Chūpān, then of Arpā, and was finally married to Sulaymān, who nominally supplanted her in the supremacy. After the troubled reign of Nūshīrwān, the Jalayrs were the chief power in Persia, and the dynasty of Hūlāgū became extinct. The Jalayrs, Muẓaffarids, Sarbadārīds etc., made havoc of the country till the great Tīmūr came and swept them away.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|-------------------------|------|
| 654 | Hülägü | 1266 |
| 663 | Abāgā | 1265 |
| 680 | Aḥmad | 1281 |
| 683 | Arghūn | 1284 |
| 690 | Gaykhātū | 1291 |
| 694 | Baydū | 1295 |
| 694 | Ghāzān Maḥmūd | 1295 |
| 703 | Uljai-tū | 1304 |
| 716 | Abū-Sa'id | 1316 |
| 736 | Arpā | 1335 |
| 736 | Mūsā | 1336 |

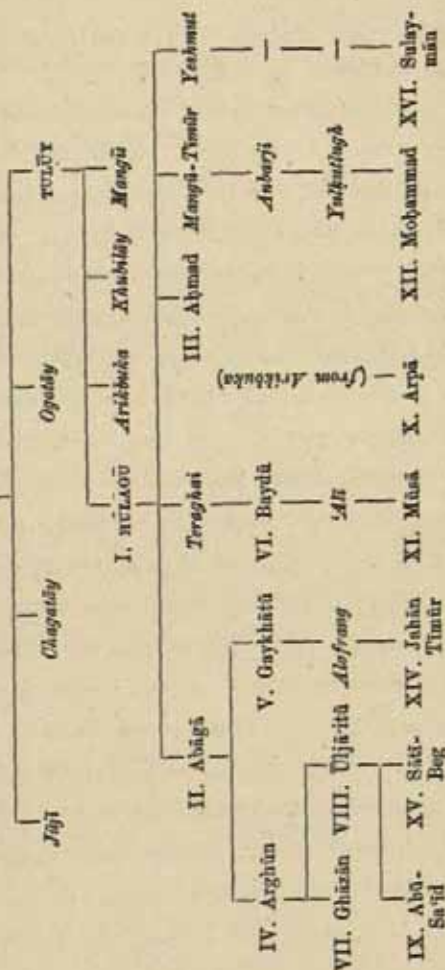
RIVAL KHĀNS*

| | | |
|--------|----------------------------------|---------|
| 736-8 | Moḥammad | 1336-8 |
| 739-52 | Tughā-Tīmūr | 1338-51 |
| 739-41 | Jahān-Tīmūr | 1339-40 |
| 739-40 | Sāti-Beg (princess) | 1339 |
| 740-4 | Sulaymān (m. Sāti Beg) | 1339-43 |
| 745 | Nūshīrwān | 1344 |

* Moḥammad, Tughā-Tīmūr, and Jahān-Tīmūr were set up as puppet-khāns by the Jalayr Amīr, Shaykh Ḥasan Buzurg; Sāti-Beg and her husband Sulaymān were nominees of the rival Amīr Ḥasan Kūchuk Chūpānī; and Nūshīrwān of Ashraf Chūpānī. All were of the posterity of Hülägü, except Tughā-Tīmūr who was descended from a brother of Chingiz Khān, and Nūshīrwān whose pedigree is doubtful.

İL-KHĀNS OF PERSIA

CHINGIZ



A.H.

A.D.

621—907

83. KHĀNS OF THE GOLDEN

1224—1502

HORDE

To Jūji, the eldest son of Chingiz, were assigned the tribes of the old empire of Kārū-Khitay, north of the Sihūn or Jaxartes, and here he, dying before his father, was succeeded by his eldest son Orda. A younger son of Jūji, Bātū, by his famous invasion of Europe, extended the appanage of his family much further to the west, and secured for himself the sovereignty of the Turkish Khānate of Kipchak. North of Bātū's territory, another brother, Tūka-Tīmūr, appears to have been allotted the district of Great Bulgaria, on the Upper Volga; a fourth son of Jūji, Shaybān, ruled the steppes now known as those of the Kirghiz Kazaks, north of Orda's appanage, and a fifth, Teval, led the Pechenegs, afterwards known as Nogāys, between the Ural and Yemba. All these tribes and their chiefs were more or less subject to the family of Bātū, which, although a younger branch, had acquired the greatest power and had made their capital Sarāy on the Volga the metropolis of the Jūjid empire; and all these tribes are included in the general name *Golden Horde*, so-called from the Khān's royal camp, *Sir Orda* or Golden Camp. It must be added that only the ruling family

and the cream of the army were of Mongol race: the vast majority of the tribes allotted to the sons of Jūji were conquered Turks or Turkomans.

The family of Jūji has, therefore, to be considered in the following distinct lines:—

- A. *The line of Bātū*, chief Khāns of the Golden Horde, ruling the Blue Horde in Western Kipchak (1224-1359).
- B. *The line of Orda*, titular heads of the family, ruling the White Horde in Eastern Kipchak (1226-1428), Khāns of the Golden Horde in Western Kipchak after Bātū's line (1378-1502); and finally decaying as Khāns of Astrakhān (1466-1554).
- C. *The line of Tūka-Tīmūr*, Khāns of Great Bulgaria, north of Kipchak; occasional Khāns of the Golden Horde in Western Kipchak; finally Khāns of Kazan (1438-1552), Kazimof (1450-1678), and Krim (1420-1783).
- D. *The line of Shaybān*, in the Uzbek or Kirghiz Kazak steppes (1224-1659); afterwards migrating and becoming Khāns of Khiva and Bukhārā (1500-1872).

A. *The line of Bata*:—Chief Khāns of the Golden Horde; appanage, the Blue Horde in Western Kipchak* (1224-1359).

Bātū's line had the privilege of ruling what was emphatically the Great Khānate of the West. Its history is important in its relations with the growth of Russia. At first the liege-lords of the Russian princes, receivers of their tribute, and owners of their daughters, it was the fate of the Great Khāns of Kipchak eventually to become the vassals of those whom they had once held in bondage. But before this stage in the decay of the Golden Horde, Bātū's line had become extinct, and the Khāns had been supplied from his brothers' families. So long as the descendants of Bātū held the reins of government, the great domain of the Khānate of Kipchak was maintained in all its power. The history of this line, through ten Khāns, to Jānī-Beg, the last great ruler of this branch of Jūji's family, is comparatively plain. But on his death in 1357 anarchy ensued. His son Birdī-Beg reigned for

* The country watered by the Don and the Volga, extending east and west from the Ural or Yaik to the Dnieper, and north and south from the Black Sea and Caspian to Ukek. Howarth, ii. 36-194.

two years; two Khāns asserting themselves to be sons of Jānī-Beg succeeded in a single year; and then follows an intricate period of twenty years of rival candidates.

There were five branches of Jūji's house from which claimants for the Golden Khānate might spring, on the extinction of Bātū's line. North and south, in Great Bulgaria and the Krim, ruled the numerous progeny of Tūka-Tīmūr. South also, by the Caucasus, camping along the Terek and Kuma, were the descendants of Baraka, the younger brother and second successor to Bātū, to whom the Golden Horde owed much of its terrible prestige. East of the Great Khānate was the White Horde with its chiefs of the family of Orda; and also east, but further north, were the Uzbek tribes of Shaybān's leading; whilst along the northern shore of the Caspian the clans of Nogāy pastured their herds. The attribution of the fifteen khāns of this period of rival families to their several ancestors in the table on page 230 is partly conjectural, but their dates are established by coins. In 1378, the sovereignty of the Golden Horde passed into the family of Orda in the person of Tōktāmish.

B. *The line of Orda*:—Appanage, the White Horde in Eastern Kipchak,* 1226-1428; Khāns of the Golden Horde in Western Kipchak, 1378-1502; Khāns of Astrakhān, 1466-1554.

Although Bātū was the most powerful of the sons of Jāji, Orda the eldest inherited his father's appanage by the Jaxartes, and received a special homage as hereditary head of the family. He ruled the left division of the Golden Horde, known as the White Horde (Āk Orda), (a colour which ranked higher than the Blue), in distinction from the right wing, or Bātū's tribes, which were designated the Blue Horde (Kök Orda) in token of imaginary dependence. Living in the far-away steppes beyond the Caspian, the White Horde soon yielded the palm to its Blue brethren on the Don and Volga; but in its rough wintry life it retained a vigour and hardihood which eventually placed its rulers on the throne of the more civilized and decayed descendants of Bātū.

Of the earlier rulers of the White Horde little is

* The country of the Lower Jaxartes and the Ulugh and Kūchuk Tāg Mountains: bounded on the west by Bātū's Blue Horde, on the north by Shaybān's Uzbeks, on the east by Chagatāy's Khānate, on the south by the desert of Kizil Kum and the Alexandrovski range. Howorth, ii. 216-362.

known; the Khānate passed regularly from father to son; and the only noticeable fact is the possession by Kūchi of a territory at Ghazna and Bāmiyān under the suzerainty of either the Chagatāy Khāns or the Il-khāns of Persia. Ūrūs Khān is the first chief of Orda's line who possesses any individuality in the history of the White Horde. He had the distinction of defeating the troops of Tīmūr more than once. Tīmūr in his overbearing fashion had appointed to the sovereignty of the tribes of Jūji's appanage a member of Orda's family, Töktāmish, whose father had been killed and he himself exiled by Ūrūs Khān. Assisted by the troops supplied by Tīmūr to carry his nomination into effect, Töktāmish sustained several repulses at the hands of Ūrūs, and it was not till after the death of this Khān and the short reign of Töktakya his son that Töktāmish was able to wrest the command of the White Horde from another son of Ūrūs, Tīmūr Malik.

Töktāmish is 'the last really great figure in the history of the Golden Horde.' After seizing the throne of the White Horde he marched upon Western Kipchak, defeated Mamāy, the king-maker of Sarāy, and by this victory in 1378 (780) put an end to the division between the White and the Blue Hordes, and united Eastern and Western

Kipchak under his sole rule. Henceforward Orda's family ruled the Blue Horde, bringing no doubt the cream of the White Horde with them; and their original camping-grounds gradually passed into the hands of the descendants of Shaybān. Under Töktāmish the Golden Horde recovered much of its prestige. A great campaign was carried into Russia, Moscow was sacked and burnt (1382), and the Grand Principality was ravaged with the ancient fury of the Mongols. This revival of the glory of Kipchak, however, was only the flicker of a dying torch. Töktāmish had the misfortune or the ingratitude to quarrel with the prince who had helped him to his success; and no one offended Tīmūr with impunity. The great conqueror in two campaigns, one marked by the battle of Urtupa on the 18th June, 1391, and the second by a crushing defeat near the Terek in 1395, when Töktāmish had returned from exile, destroyed for ever the power of the Khāns of Kipchak. Töktāmish indeed re-entered Sarāy in 1398, after Tīmūr's departure, but he was speedily driven out again by Tīmūr Kutlugh, son of his old enemy, Ūrūs, and forced to take refuge with the Lithuanian prince Vitut, whom he involved in war with the Tatars; he died in 1406.

The period succeeding the overthrow of Töqtämish is one of the most obscure in the labyrinth of dark passages which the history of the Golden Horde affords. It is filled with the incessant struggles of *Rival Families* for the throne. There were at least three distinct sets of candidates for the decayed Khānship: the family of Ūrūs Khān, supported by the Nogāy chief Idiku, the second king-maker of Kipchak; the sons of Töqtāmish; and some younger members of the family of Shaybān. The table on page 232 will give an idea of this confused period. The rival Khāns not only ruled simultaneously in Kipchak, but held the same cities in the same years; and the history of Sarāy and other large towns must have been the record of continual sieges and recaptures.

This is the end of the Golden Horde. It was absorbed by Russia in 1502 (907), and its history degenerates into the petty annals of its scattered fragments. Of these one alone belonged to the family of Orda—the insignificant Khānate of Astrakhān,* founded by Kāsim, a grandson of Kūchuk Moḥammad, about 1466, and held by his descendants until its abolition in 1554 by the Grand Prince of Moscow.

* Howorth, ii. 349-362.

KHĀNS OF THE GOLDEN HORDE

i. THE BLUE HORDE OF WESTERN KIPCHAK

a. FAMILY OF BĀTŪ

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|------------------------------|------|
| 621 | Bātū | 1224 |
| 654 | Sartak | 1256 |
| 654 | Baraka | 1256 |
| 664 | Mangū-Timūr | 1266 |
| 679 | Tūda-Mangū | 1280 |
| 686 | [Tāla Bughā] | 1287 |
| 689 | Tekṭā | 1290 |
| 712 | Ūzbeg | 1312 |
| 741 | Tini-Beg | 1340 |
| 741 | Jāni-Beg Maḥmūd | 1340 |
| 758 | Birdi-Beg Moḥammad | 1357 |
| 760 | Kūlnā | 1359 |
| 760 | Nūrūz-Beg | 1359 |

b. RIVAL FAMILIES

| A.H. | OF SHAYKHĀN | OF ORDA | OF TŪKA-TĪMŪR |
|-------|-------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 760 | Khiḍr | | |
| 762 | Mardūd | 762 Timūr Khōja | 762 Kildī Beg |
| | | 762 Murid Khōja | |
| 764-8 | Palād Khōja | 764 Kutlugh Khōja | 764 'Azīz Shaykh |
| | | 764 'Abd-Allāh | |
| | | | 768 Ḥasan |
| 772 | Talūn-Beg | 771 Moḥammad Bālāk | —772 |
| 775 | Ilbān | —780 | |
| 777 | Khāghān | | |
| 779 | 'Arab Shāh | | |
| —780 | | | |

[780 United to White Horde 1378]

H. THE WHITE HORDE OF EASTERN KIPCHAK
FAMILY OF ORDA

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|--------|---|-------|
| 623 | Orda | 1226 |
| 679 | Küchi | 1280 |
| 701 | Bayān | 1301 |
| 709 | Sāsibūkā | 1309 |
| c. 715 | Ibisan | 1315 |
| 720 | Mubārak Khōja | 1320 |
| 745 | Chimtāy | 1344 |
| 762 | Ūrās | 1361 |
| 777 | Töktakya | 1375 |
| 777 | Timūr Malik | 1375 |
| 778 | Töktämish Ghiyāth-al-din | 1376 |
| —793 | (who unites Blue and White Hordes 1378) | —1391 |

[*Rival Families*]

iii. RIVAL FAMILIES

OF ONIDA

OF SHAYKH

Eastern
Kipchak
Branch
Koiriak

House of
Töktämish

House of
Tóktámish

797 Tīmūr Kutluğ
802 Shādi Beg
{ 810-15 Palān
809-18 Tīmūr

793 Beg Palad

805-22 Darwin

814 Jalāl-aʿ-ḍīn
815 Karīm Birdī
817 Kibak
c. 818 Jabār Birdī

823 Burak
(sized part of
West Kipchak
827-831)

318 Chakra
827 Kūchuk Moḥammad
—c. 864

FAMILY OF
TŪKA-TĪMŪR

830 Dawlat Birdi
(in absence of
Burak)

c. 864 Mahmūd

| | | |
|-----|----------------|--|
| 864 | Abmad | |
| | { Sayyid Ahmad | |
| 886 | { Murtadā | |
| | { Shaykh Ahmad | |

[907 *Final submission to Russia. 1802*]

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|--------------|
| c. 823—1197 | 84. KHĀNS OF THE K̲RIM (CRIMEA) | c. 1420—1783 |

- C. *The Line of Tuka-Tīmūr*:—Appanage, Great Bulgaria, and subsequently K̲rim and Kaffa; occasional Khāns of the Golden Horde; finally, Khāns of Kazan, Kazimof, and Krim.*

Tūka-Tīmūr was the youngest son of Jūjī, and was attached to the left (or Orda's) wing of the Golden Horde, but probably had his own camping-grounds on the Upper Volga, including part at least of Great Bulgaria. Almost nothing is known of this branch in its original seats. Mangū-Tīmūr (of Bātū's line) gave Urang-Tīmūr, son of Tūka-Tīmūr, K̲rim and Kaffa, and the family being thus established north and south of Bātū's Khānate soon began to interfere in its dynastic succession. We have seen how three Khāns of the first period of rival families belonged probably to Tūka-Tīmūr's line, and one of the second period. But the chief importance of this branch is after the downfall of the Golden Khānate which followed upon Tīmūr's invasions.

* Howorth, ii. 198-216, 274, 363-626, 1074-5

One of the line, Ulugh Moḥammad, after attempting to seize the Great Khānate on Burāk's death, betook himself in 1438 to his old possession of Great Bulgaria, and there revived his forefathers' Khānate, under the title of *Khānate of Kazan*, which, no longer overshadowed by the Great Khānate on its south, became an independent thorn in the side of the growing Muscovite giant. With the death, however, of Moḥammad Amīn, in 1519, the Moḥammadan posterity of the founder of Kazan came to an end, and Khāns of the true faith had to be transplanted from the Kazimof, Krim, Astrakhān and other stocks, under the auspices of Russia, who finally suppressed the Khānate and appointed a Russian governor of Kazan in 1552.

When Ulugh Moḥammad was murdered by his son Maḥmūdak, in 1446, two of his other sons fled to Russia, and after some service in the Muscovite army one of these, Kāsim, was granted the town and district of Gorodetz on the Oka, in the division of Riazan. He gave the town his own name, and the line of Khāns ruling here, and known as the *Khāns of Kazimof*, were used by Russia to play off against their more powerful neighbour at Kazan, and were allowed to supply a couple of Khāns to the greater Khānate on the ex-

tinction of Ulugh Moḥammad's direct Muslim line. This Khānate, which never had a really independent existence, was absorbed by Russia in 1678.

The most important of the three Khānates sprung from the house of Tūka-Timūr was that of the Krim. Ulugh Moḥammad had a brother, Tāsh-Timūr, who was once a general under Töktāmish, and was the actual founder of the powerful dynasty of the *Khāns of the Krim* or Crimea, though his son, Hājji Girāy, is generally regarded as the first Khān. The Krim dynasty was always an element in the Eastern Question, and as an outpost of Turkey or an ally of Russia was an object of consideration on both sides. Eventually the inconvenience of these violent neighbours was agreed between Russia and Turkey, and the Khānate of the Krim was extinguished by treaty in 1783. A lineal descendant of these powerful Khāns, one Sultān Krim Girāy Kattī Girāy, settled in Edinburgh and married a Scottish lady.*

* *Athenaeum*, No. 2762

KHĀNS OF THE K̄RIM (CRIMEA)

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|--------|--|---------|
| c. 823 | Hājji Girāy | c. 1420 |
| 871 | Nūr-Dawlat | 1466 |
| 873 | Mangli Girāy I | 1469 |
| 878 | Nūr-Dawlat (<i>restored</i>) | 1474 |
| 882 | Jānī-Beg Girāy I | 1477 |
| 883 | Mangli Girāy (<i>restored</i>) | 1478 |
| 921 | Moḥammad Girāy I | 1515 |
| 929 | Ghāzī Girāy I | 1523 |
| 929 | Sa'adat Girāy I | 1523 |
| 938 | Islām Girāy I | 1532 |
| 938 | Şāhib Girāy I | 1532 |
| 958 | Dawlat Girāy I | 1551 |
| 985 | Moḥammad Girāy II | 1577 |
| 992 | Islām Girāy II | 1584 |
| 996 | Ghāzī Girāy II | 1588 |
| 1002 | Faṭḥ Girāy I | 1594 |
| 1002 | Ghāzī Girāy II (<i>restored</i>) | 1594 |
| 1017 | Salāmat Girāy I | 1608 |
| 1019 | Jānī-Beg Girāy II | 1610 |
| 1031 | Moḥammad Girāy III | 1627 |
| 1036 | Jānī-Beg II (<i>restored</i>) | 1635 |
| 1045 | Ināyat Girāy | 1638 |
| 1048 | Bahādur Girāy | 1642 |
| 1052 | Moḥammad Girāy IV | 1644 |
| 1054 | Islām Girāy III | |
| 1064 | Moḥammad IV (<i>restored</i>) | 1654 |
| 1075 | ʿĀdil Girāy | 1665 |
| 1081 | Selīm Girāy I | 1670 |
| 1088 | Murād Girāy | 1677 |
| 1094 | Hājji Girāy II | 1683 |

| | | |
|-------|------------------------------------|-------|
| 1095 | Selīm I (<i>restored</i>) | 1684 |
| 1102 | Sa'adat Girāy II | 1691 |
| 1102 | Şafā Girāy | 1691 |
| 1103 | Selīm I (<i>again restored</i>) | 1692 |
| 1109 | Dawlat Girāy II | 1698 |
| 1114 | Selīm I (<i>again restored</i>) | 1702 |
| 1117 | Ghāzī Girāy III | 1705 |
| 1119 | Kaplan Girāy I | 1707 |
| 1119 | Dawlat Girāy (<i>restored</i>) | 1707 |
| 1125 | Kaplan I (<i>restored</i>) | 1713 |
| 1127 | Karā Dawlat Girāy | 1715 |
| 1127 | Sa'adat Girāy III | 1715 |
| 1136 | Mangli Girāy II | 1724 |
| 1142 | Kaplan I (<i>again restored</i>) | 1730 |
| 1149 | Fatḥ Girāy II | 1736 |
| 1150 | Mangli II (<i>restored</i>) | 1737 |
| 1152 | Salāmat Girāy II | 1739 |
| 1153 | Selīm Girāy II | 1743 |
| 1161 | Arslān Girāy | 1748 |
| 1168 | Hākim Girāy | 1755 |
| 1171 | Krīm Girāy | 1758 |
| 1177 | Selīm Girāy III | 1764 |
| 1180 | Arslān Girāy (<i>restored</i>) | 1767 |
| 1181 | Makhşūd Girāy I | 1767 |
| 1182 | Krīm Girāy (<i>restored</i>) | 1768 |
| 1184 | Dawlat Girāy III | 1770 |
| 1184 | Kaplan Girāy II | 1771 |
| 1184 | Selīm III (<i>restored</i>) | 1771 |
| 1185 | Makhşūd Girāy II | 1771 |
| 1185 | Şāḥib Girāy II | 1772 |
| 1189 | Dawlat III (<i>restored</i>) | 1775 |
| 1191 | Shāhin Girāy | 1777 |
| —1197 | [Crimea ceded to Russia] | —1783 |

- D. *The Line of Shaybān* :—Appanage, the Uzbek country (between the Ural and Chu rivers); occasional Khāns of the Golden Horde; Khāns or Czars of Tiumen, *circ.* 1226—1659; Khāns of Bukhārā, 1500—1868, and of Khiva, 1515—1872.*

When Bātū invaded Hungary in 1240, his brother Shaybān accompanied him, and acquitted himself so well that Bātū not only made him King of Hungary, a title of a somewhat nominal value, but gave him an appanage of certain tribes north of Orda's Khānate. Shaybān was to camp in summer from the Ural mountains to the rivers Ilek and Irghiz, and in winter about the lands watered by the Sir, Chu, and Sarisu. His descendant in the sixth generation, Mangū-Tīmūr, was a contemporary of the great Khān Uzbek of the Golden Horde, and from him the tribes of Shaybān's appanage took the name of Uzbeks, which has since become famous. On the extinction of Bātū's line, the family of Shaybān supplied several Khāns to the Golden Horde; and in the second period of rival families, after the overthrow of

* Howorth, ii. 686-1010

Töktämish, the house of Shaybān is represented, in all probability, by Darwīsh Khān and Sayyid Aḥmad.

The home-line of Shaybān remained in the original camping-grounds and assumed the title of *Czars of the Tiumen*, under which they were obeyed over a great part of Siberia. They survived till 1659, when their country was occupied by the Kalmuks: but for some time before this their authority had been purely nominal.

Much more important were the branches descended from Pūlād, son of Mangū-Tīmūr, and once ruler of the Golden Horde. Pūlād's two sons, Ibrāhīm and 'Arab-Shāh, were respectively ancestors of the *Khāns of Bukhārā* and *Khwārizm* or *Khiva*. The former Khānate was founded by Moḥammad Shaybānī, grandson of Abū-l-Khayr, who was grandson of Ibrāhīm, in 1500, and survives to the present day, although General Kaufmann made it a Russian dependency in 1868. 'Arab-Shāh, the founder of the Khānate of Khiva, is also known as, if not a Khān of the Golden Horde, at least a striker of coins in Kipchak just before the invasion of Töktāmish. His descendant in the fifth generation, Ilbars Khān, took forcible possession of Transoxiana and adjacent provinces after Shaybānī's death, probably about 1515, and his

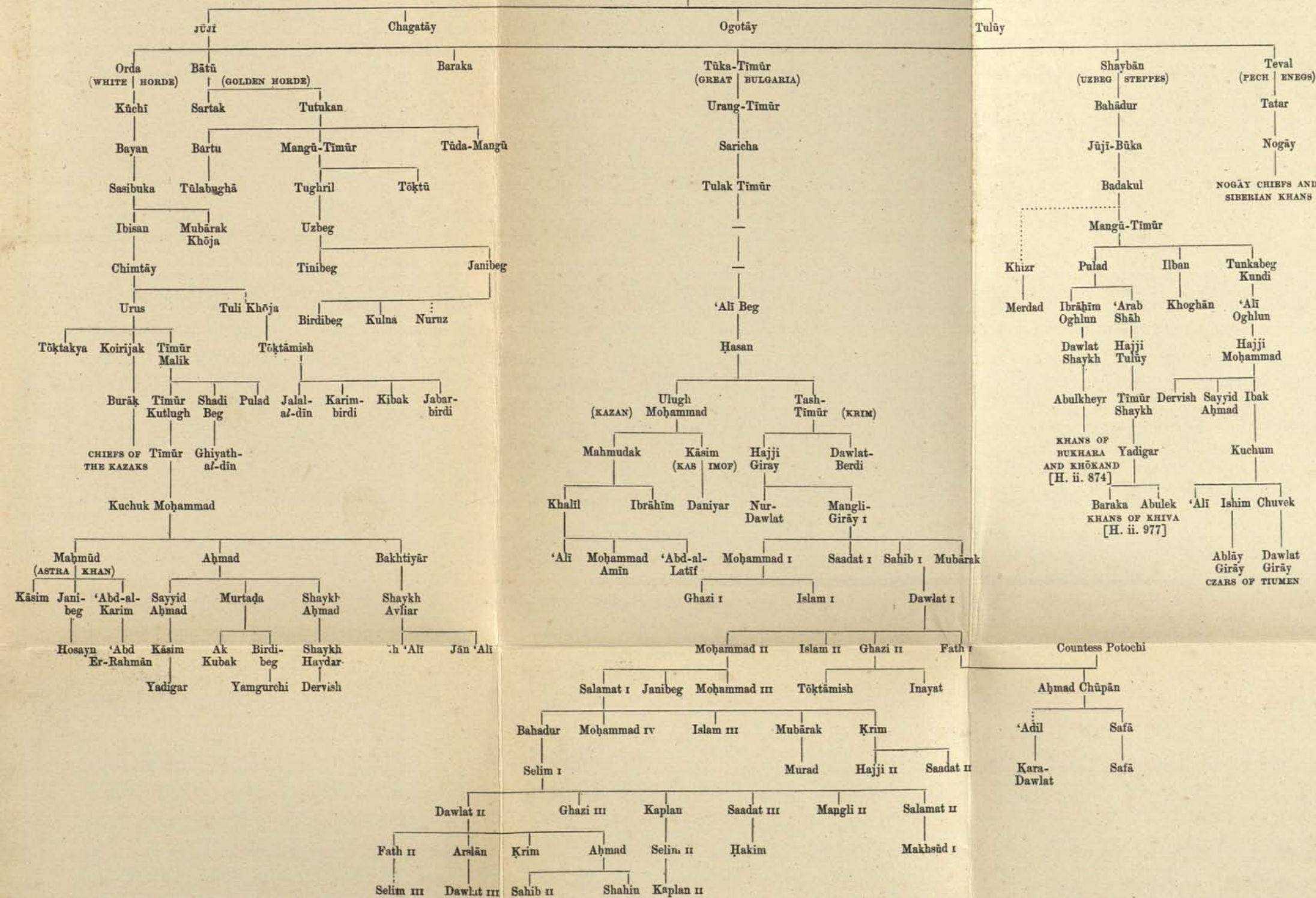
posterity are still called Khāns of Khiva, but they have been tributary to Russia since 1872. The history of these Khānates, which sprang up on the ruins of the empire of Tīmūr, belong to a later section (XIII).

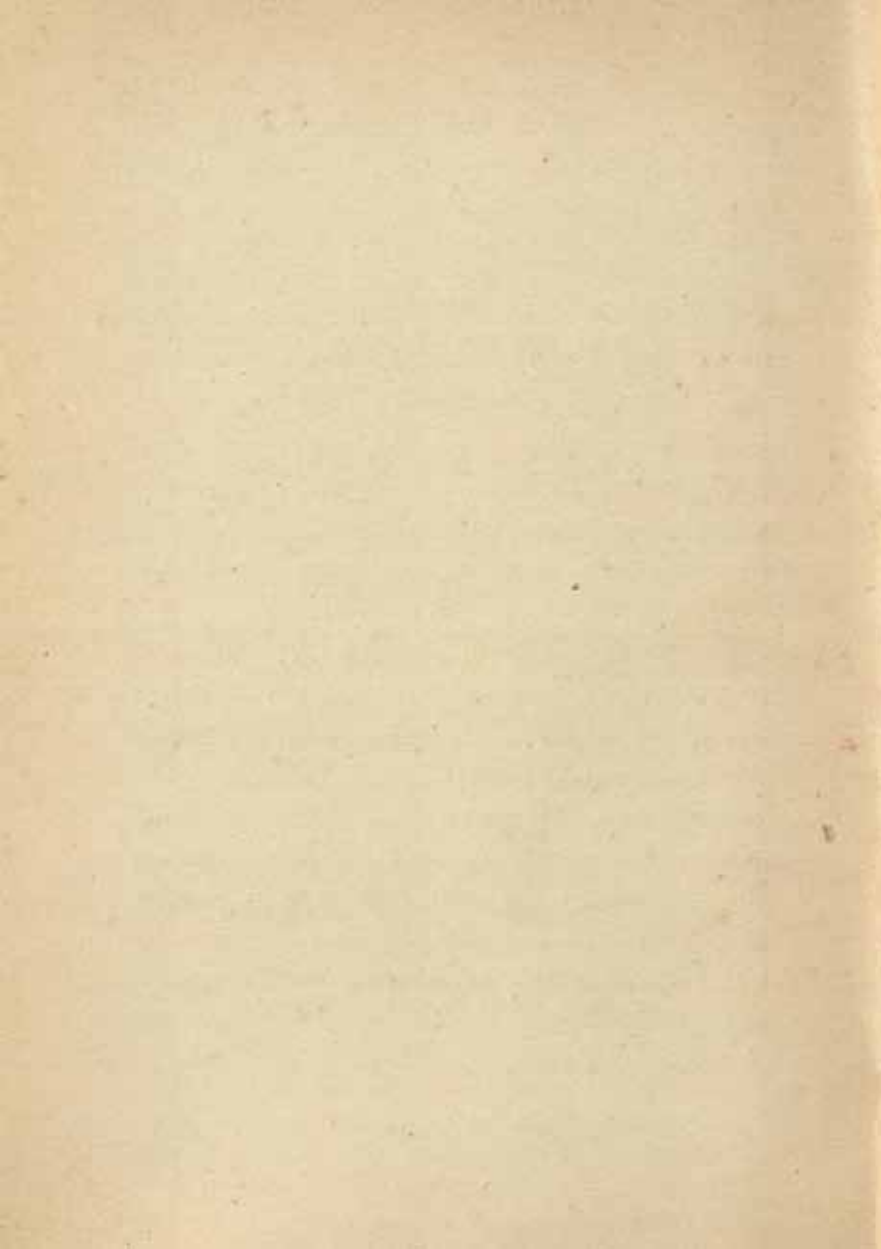
It should be added that another son of Jūjī, Teval, was the chief of the Pechenegs, camping about the river Bug in Southern Russia, and was the grandfather of Nogāy, who took a large part in the affairs of the Golden Horde, but afterwards fell out with Tōktū and was driven, along with his tribes, who adopted the name of Nogāys, beyond the Volga, and found settlements between the Ural and the Yemba. The history of this horde is very fragmentary, and their state was peculiarly migratory.*

* Howorth, ii. 1011-1068

(To face p. 240)

CHINGIZ





| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|--------------------|-----------|
| 624—760 | 85. CHAGATĀY KHĀNS | 1227—1358 |
| | (TRANSOXIANA) | |

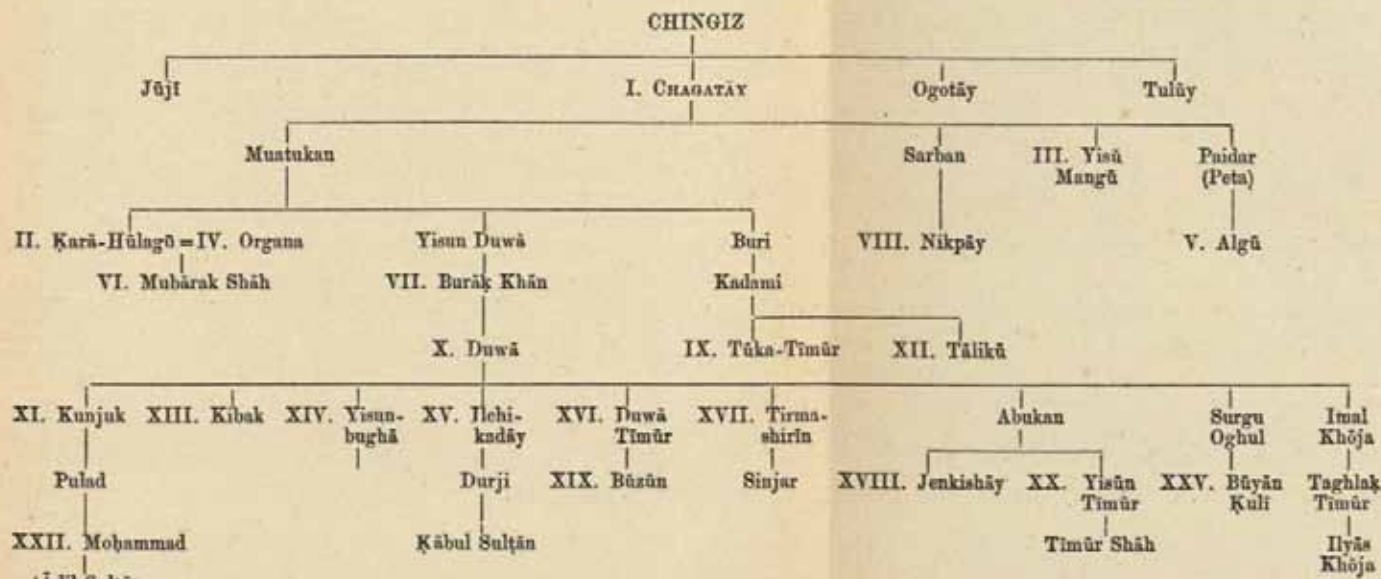
The Khānātes founded by three sons of Chingiz—Ogotāy, Tulūy, and Jūjī—have in turn been noticed. There remains Chagatāy, who was allotted the appanage of Mā-warā-*l*-nahr, or Transoxiana (Bukharia), with part of Kāshghar, Badakhshān, Balkh, and Ghazna, and who founded the Khānate of those regions. The history of his descendants is very scantily recorded, and, beyond occasional raids over the Persian border and internal disputes, nothing of note has been set down. Two members of Ogotāy's family ('Alī and Dānishmandja) intrude themselves into the series, proving the presence of Ogotāy chiefs of rank and importance in the Chagatāy dominions (pp. 210, 265). The genealogy and chronology of this branch are alike doubtful; and the following list is merely tentative.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|--------|---|---------|
| 624 | Chagatây | 1227 |
| 639 | Ḳarā-Hūlāgū | 1242 |
| 645 | Yisū Mangū | 1247 |
| 650 | Ḳarā-Hūlāgū (<i>restored</i>) | 1252 |
| 650 | Organa Khātūn | 1252 |
| 659 | Algū | 1261 |
| 664 | Mubārak Shāh | 1266 |
| 664 | Burūḳ Khān | 1266 |
| 668 | Nikpāy | 1270 |
| 670 | Tāka-Tīmūr | 1272 |
| c. 672 | Duwā Khān | c. 1274 |
| 706 | Kunjuk Khān | 1306 |
| 708 | Tālikū | 1308 |
| 709 | Kibak Khān | 1309 |
| 709 | Yisunbughā | 1309 |
| c. 718 | Kibak Khān (<i>restored</i>) | 1318 |
| 721 | Ilchikadāy | 1321 |
| 721 | Duwā Tīmūr | 1321 |
| 722 | Tirmaahirtū | 1322 |
| 730-4? | Sinjar? | 1330-4? |
| 734 | Jingishay | 1334 |
| c. 735 | Būrūn | c. 1335 |
| c. 739 | Yisun Tīmūr | c. 1339 |
| c. 741 | 'Alī (of Ogotāy stock) | c. 1340 |
| c. 743 | Moḥammad | c. 1342 |
| 744 | Kazan | 1343 |
| 747 | Dānishmandja (of Ogotāy stock) | 1346 |
| 749 | Būyān Kull | 1348 |
| —760 | | —1359 |

[*Anarchy and rival chiefs, until*
771 *Supremacy of Tīmūr 1370.*]

THE HOUSE OF CHAGATĀY*

(To face p. 242.)



* This table has been kindly arranged for me by Sir Henry Howorth

XII. PERSIA

SÆC. XIV—XIX

86. JALAYRS (-'IRĀK)
87. MUẒAFFARIDS (FĀRS)
88. SARBADĀRIDS (KHURĀSĀN)
89. KARTS (HERĀT)
TĪMŪRIDS (*See* XIII)
90. ẖARĀ-ẖUYUNLĪ (ADHARBĪJĀN)
91. Aẖ-ẖUYUNLĪ (ADHARBĪJĀN)
92. ŞAFAVIDS
93. AFGHĀNS
94. AFSHĀRIDS
95. ZANDS
96. ẖĀJĀRS
- SHĀHS
OF
PERSIA

XII. PERSIA

SÆC. XIV—XIX

On the decay of the power of the Persian Mongols a number of prominent chiefs and provincial governors asserted their independence. Of these the Jalayrs were the most powerful, and held the provinces of -'Irāk and Adharbījān, in which they were succeeded by the Turkomāns of the Black and White Sheep. The more eastern provinces were ruled by the Muzaffarids, but not without a severe struggle with Abū-Ishāq and other members of the family of Maḥmūd Shāh Injū, whose seat was Ispahān. In the north-east, Khurāsān was for a time divided between the Sarbadārids and the Kart Maliks of Herāt. Tīmūr swept across Persia in 1384-93, and his descendants held part of the country for a century. At the beginning of the 16th century, however, Shāh Ismā'il the Ṣafavid established his authority over all the provinces governed by the Tīmūrids, Turkomāns, and minor dynasties, and presently added Khurāsān, since which time the modern kingdom of the Shāhs of Persia has remained practically unchanged in its boundaries, save for some losses on the west to Turkey.

A.H.
736—814

86. JALAYRS
(-‘IRĀḲ, ETC.)

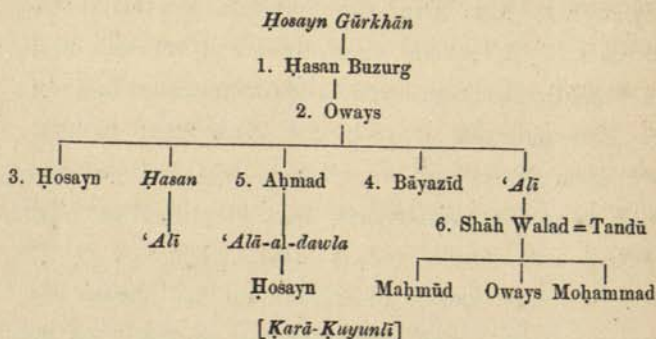
A.D.
1336—1411

The chiefs of the tribe of Jalayrs, also called Ilkānians, became the leading family in Persia after the death of the Mongol Abū-Sa‘īd. Their head, Shaykh Ḥasan Buzurg (‘the Great’), as has been seen (pp. 219, 220), set up three puppets on the Mongol throne; after which he assumed sovereign functions himself, and taking possession of -‘Irāḳ made Baghdād his capital. His son Oways, who succeeded him in 757 (1356), took Adharbījān and Tabrīz from the Golden Horde (759), and added -Mōṣil and Diyār-Bakr to his dominions (766). Ḥusayn, his successor, was engaged in wars with his neighbours the Muzaffarids of eastern Persia, and with the Turkomāns of the Black Sheep, who had made themselves dominant in Armenia and the country south of Lake Van; until the latter agreed to become his allies (779). On his death in 1382 (784), the kingdom was divided between his two sons; Adharbījān and -‘Irāḳ falling to Sulṭān Aḥmad, and part of Kurdistān

(for a year) to Bāyazīd. On the invasion of Timūr, who overran northern Persia and Armenia in 1384-7, and reduced Baghdād, Mesopotamia, Diyār-Bakr, and Vān in 1393 (796), Sultān Aḥmad fled to Egypt, where he took refuge with the Mamlūk Sultān Barqūḳ, who assisted him to recover Baghdād after Timūr's return to Samarḳand. From this time until Timūr's death in 1405 (807) Sultān Aḥmad's life was spent in losing and recapturing his dominions, and when in 808 he was once more actual ruler of Baghdād, his breach with Ḳarā-Yūsuf the Turkomān and his ensuing invasion of Adharbījān ended in his defeat and death, 1410 (813). His nephew Shāh Walad continued to govern Baghdād until the arrival of the Black Sheep in 1411; and Shāh Walad's widow, Tandū (who had previously been married to the Mamlūk Barqūḳ) reigned at Wāsiṭ, -Baṣra, and Shūstar (doing homage, however, to the Timūrid Shāh Rukh) till 819, when her stepson succeeded to the government, and was followed by his brothers Oways (822-829) and Moḥammad, and by their cousin Ḥusayn, who was killed by the Black Sheep Turkomāns.*

* See Sir H. H. Howorth, *History of the Mongols*, iii, 654-679.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|-------|---|-------|
| 736 | Shaykh Hasan Buzurg | 1336 |
| 757 | Shaykh Oways | 1356 |
| 777 | Hosayn | 1374 |
| 784-5 | Bāyazīd (in Kurdistān) | |
| 784 | Sultān Aḥmad | 1382 |
| | <i>(Repeatedly expelled by Timūr 796-807)</i> | |
| 813 | Shāh Walad | 1410 |
| —814 | | —1411 |

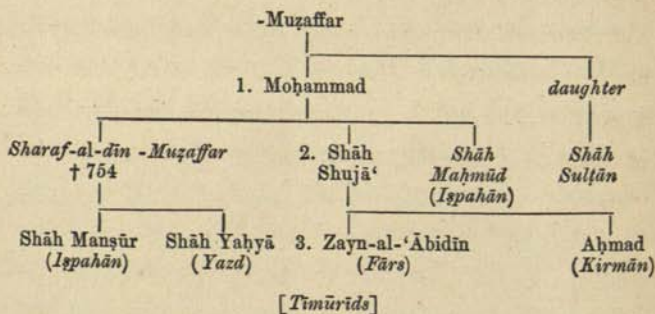


| A.H. | | A.D. |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|-----------|
| 713—795 | 87. MUẒAFFARIDS | 1313—1393 |
| (FĀRS, KIRMĀN, AND KURDISTĀN) | | |

The Amīr -Muẓaffar, founder of this dynasty, a grandson of Ghiyāth-al-dīn Ḥājji of Khurāsān, after holding various posts at the court of the Mongols of Persia, was appointed governor of Maybudh near Ispahān. His son Mubārīz-al-dīn Moḥammad succeeded him in his government in 1313 (713), and received the much more important command of Yazd in Fārs in 1319 (719) from the Mongol Abū-Sa'īd. Kirmān was added in 1340 (741), and after a prolonged struggle with Abū-Ishāk Injū, Moḥammad captured Shīrāz and all Fārs in 1353 (754), and added Ispahān in 1356 (758), when Abū-Ishāk was executed. After carrying his arms successfully as far north as Tabrīz, Moḥammad was deposed and blinded in 1357 (759), and, although restored for a brief space, died in a second exile in 1364 (765). His successors retained the government of Fārs, Kirmān, and Kurdistān until the irruption of Timūr in 1387.* The poet Ḥāfiẓ lived at the court of Shāh Shujā'.

* Howorth, iii, 693-716.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|-------|---|-------|
| 713 | Mubārīz-al-dīn Moḥammad b. -Muẓaffar . | 1313 |
| 759 | Jalāl-al-dīn Shāh Shujā' | 1357 |
| 786-9 | Mujāhid-al-dīn 'Alī Zayn-al-'Abidīn . . . | 1384- |
| | (Expelled by <i>Timūr</i>) | —1387 |
| 789 | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Shāh Yahyā (at <i>Yazd</i>)</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Sultān Aḥmad (at <i>Kirmān</i>)</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Shāh Maṣṣūr (at <i>Ispahān</i>)</div> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; margin: 0 5px;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">contemporary .</div> </div> | 1387 |
| —795 | | —1393 |



A.H.
737—783

88. SARBADĀRIDS

A.D.
1337—1381

(KHURĀSĀN)

'Abd-al-Razzāk, a native of the village of Bashtin in Khurāsān, and at one time in the service of the Ilkhān Abū-Sa'īd, in 1337 (737) headed a rebellion of his countrymen against the oppression of the local governor. The rebels took the name of *Sar-ba-dār* or "Head to the gibbet" in token of the neck-or-nothing-ness of their cause. Nevertheless they obtained possession of Sabzawār and the neighbouring district, and held it for nearly half a century, during which period twelve successive chiefs assumed the command, nine of whom suffered violent deaths.

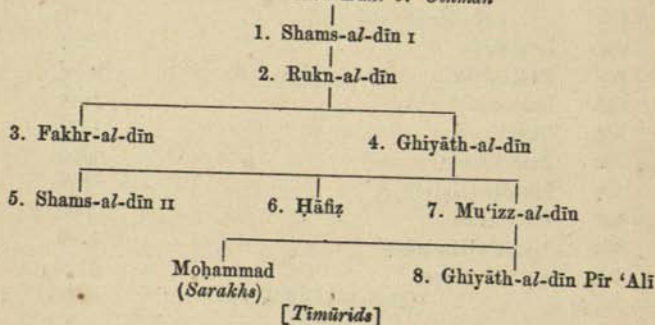
| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|---|-------|
| 737 | 'Abd-al-Razzāk b. Faḍl-Allāh | 1337 |
| 738 | Wajih-al-dīn Mas'ūd b. Faḍl-Allāh | 1338 |
| 744 | Ay-Timūr Moḥammad | 1344 |
| 746 | Iṣfandiyār | 1346 |
| 747 | Faḍl-Allāh | 1346 |
| 748 | Shams-al-dīn 'Alī | 1347 |
| 753 | Yahyā | 1352 |
| 756 | Zahīr-al-dīn | 1355 |
| 760 | Haydar -Kaṣṣāb | 1359 |
| 760 | Luṭf-Allāh | 1359 |
| 761 | -Ḥasan -Dāmighānī | 1360 |
| 766 | 'Alī -Mu'ayyad | 1364 |
| —783 | [Abolished by Timūr] | —1381 |

A.H.
643—79189. KARTS
(HERĀT)A.D.
1245—1389

The Maliks of Herāt of the Kart race of Ghōr had held their government from the early days of the Mongol rule in Persia. As the Mongols grew weak, the Karts became an important power in Khurāsān, until Herāt was conquered by Tīmūr in 1381 (783), and, after a period of vassalage, the dynasty was extinguished in 1389 (791).

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|---|-------|
| 643 | Shams-al-dīn I | 1245 |
| | 677—82 Rukn-al-dīn, <i>contemp.</i> 1278—83 | |
| 684 | Fakhr-al-dīn | 1285 |
| 708 | Ghiyāth-al-dīn | 1308 |
| 729 | Shams-al-dīn II | 1328 |
| 730 | Hāfiz | 1329 |
| 732 | Mu'izz-al-dīn | 1331 |
| 772 | Ghiyāth-al-dīn Pir 'Alī | 1370 |
| —791 | | —1389 |

Rukn-al-dīn Abū-Bakr b. 'Othmān



| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|------------------|-----------|
| 780—874 | 90. ḲARĀ-ḲUYUNLĪ | 1378—1469 |

TURKOMANS OF THE BLACK SHEEP

(ADHARBĪJĀN, ETC.)

In the last quarter of the fourteenth century a clan of Turkomāns, known as the Black Sheep, from the device on their standard, dominated the country south of the lake of Van, and, having allied themselves with the Jalayr Sultān Ḥosayn, established a dynasty in Armenia and Adharbījān. Ḳarā-Yūsuf, the second chief of the line, was several times driven into exile by Tīmūr, but as often returned, and after the conqueror's death in 1405 (807) resumed his former dominions, and in 1411 added those of the Jalayrs. The Black Sheep were superseded in 1469 (874) by Uzun Ḥasan of the rival clan of the White Sheep.

| A.H. | | A.H. |
|--------|--|---------|
| 780 | Ḳarā-Moḥammad | 1378 |
| c. 790 | Ḳarā-Yūsuf | c. 1388 |
| 802 | <i>Invasion of Tīmūr</i> | 1400 |
| 808 | Ḳarā Yūsuf (<i>restored</i>) | 1405 |
| 823 | Iskandar | 1420 |
| 841 | Jahān Shāh | 1437 |
| 872 | Ḥasan 'Alī | 1467 |
| —874 | | —1469 |

[*Āḡ-Ḳuyunlī*]

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|----------------|-----------|
| 780—908 | 91. ĀḲ-ḲUYUNLĪ | 1378—1502 |

TURKOMANS OF THE WHITE SHEEP.

(ADHĀRBĪJĀN, ETC.)

The White Sheep or Aḳ-Ḳuyunlī succeeded their rivals the Black Sheep in Adharbījān and Diyār-Bakr, but after some thirty years of sole authority they were defeated by Shāh Ismāʿīl the Ṣafavid at the great battle of Shurūr in 1502 (907), and the dynasty soon afterwards expired.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|-------------------------------------|-------|
| 780 | Ḳarā-Yūluḳ 'Othmān | 1378 |
| 809 | Ḥamza | 1406 |
| 848 | Jahāngīr | 1444 |
| 871 | Uzun Ḥasan | 1466 |
| 883 | Khalīl | 1478 |
| 884 | Ya'ḳūb | 1479 |
| 896 | Baysunḳur* | 1490 |
| 897 | Rustam | 1491 |
| 902 | Aḥmad | 1496 |
| 903 | Murād | 1497 |
| 905 | Alwand | 1499 |
| 906 | Moḥammad | 1500 |
| 907 | Murād (<i>restored</i>) | 1501 |
| —908 | | —1502 |

[Ṣafavids]

* 'Alī and Masīḥ were rival claimants in 896.

A.H.

907—1311

92—6. SHĀHS OF PERSIA

A.D.

1052—1893

The series of the Shāhs of Persia is composed of five distinct dynasties of different races: the Ṣafavids, Afghāns, Afshārids, Zands, and Kājārs. Of these the first claimed Arab lineage, for the Ṣafavids traced their descent from the seventh Imām Mūsā -Kāzum (†183), of the family of Hosayn the grandson of the prophet Moḥammad (p. 72). Many shaykhs of the family acquired a reputation for sanctity, and among these the most celebrated saint was Shaykh Ṣaḡīr-al-dīn of Ardabīl, from whom his descendants took their name of Ṣafawī or *Ṣafavid*. It was not till four generations after Shaykh Ṣaḡīr that one of his descendants, Haydar, added the rôle of warrior to the profession of saint. He engaged in a contest with Uzun Hasan of the White Sheep Turkomāns, and his third son Ismā'il, preserving a continuity of policy, seized Shīrwān, utterly defeated the Turkomāns at the battle of Saurūr in the spring of 1502 (907), and making Tabriz his capital proceeded to conquer all Persia. The Timūrid governors and other petty dynasts were rapidly subdued, and in a few years Shāh Ismā'il's arms had advanced through Khurāsān as far as Herūt, besides annexing the southern provinces,

till his dominions stretched from the Oxus to the Persian Gulf, from Afghānistān to the Euphrates. His territories now marched with those of the 'Othmānlis, and the religious antagonism between the Shi'ite Ṣafavids and the Sunnite 'Othmānlis, embittered by the wide-spread Shi'ite propaganda in Asia Minor, brought about a war. Selīm the Grim, after massacring or imprisoning 40,000 Shi'ites in his Asiatic dominions, led a campaign against Shāh Ismā'il. At the head of 80,000 horsemen and 40,000 foot, Selīm marched upon Persia and forced the Shāh to give battle at Chāldirān (1514), when the fine generalship of Sinān Pasha and the valour of the Janizaries won the day. Selīm entered Tabriz in triumph, and after annexing Diyār-Bakr and some surrounding districts abandoned the idea of further conquests in the East in favour of an invasion of Egypt. From this time onwards there have been frequent contests over the Turko-Persian frontier, and provinces in Georgia and Armenia have been taken and re-taken, but the general boundary has not greatly varied, except when Murād IV conquered Baghdād and annexed Mesopotamia to the Turkish Empire in 1638. In the like manner the northern frontier was long contested by the Uzbegs; and Afghānistān has been

alternately part of India and part of Persia, until the establishment of an independent dynasty by Aḥmad Durrānī in 1747. Bābar, the founder of the Mogul empire in India, was an ally of Shāh Ismā'il, and his son Humāyūn was aided in his recovery of Hindūstān by Shāh Tahmāsp. The greatest of the Šafavid kings was Shāh 'Abbās (1587-1629), who, seconded by Sir Anthony Shirley, the organizer of the Persian army, recovered several of the western provinces from the 'Othmānlīs, and whose reign was celebrated for the cultivation of the arts and literature, the increase of public works, and the observance of an enlightened foreign policy. He belonged to the great epoch which produced such rulers as Sulaymān the Great, Akbar, and Elizabeth.

The Šafavid dynasty practically ended when the *Afghāns* under Maḥmūd rose in revolt, seized Herāt and Mashhad, defeated Shāh Ḥosayn, and after a seven months' siege took the capital Iṣpahān in 1722 (1135). Members of the Šafavid family, however, still retained a vestige of authority, chiefly in Mazandarān, and after ten years of anarchy, revolts, and Russian and Turkish invasions, Nādir Kuli the *Afshārid* Turk, made use of the pretext of restoring the enfeebled Šafavids, to seize the

supreme power, to which he soon added the avowed as well as the real sovereignty in 1736 (1148). Nādir Shāh not only maintained the Persian kingdom in its fullest extent, but subdued Afghānistān, seized Kābul and Kāndahār (1737), pushed on to Lahore, defeated the Mogul army after an obstinate battle near Karnāl, and sacked Dehlī in March 1738 (1151). Peace was made, and for a time the Persian empire extended from the Indus to the Caucasus.

The Afshārid dynasty, numbering four Shāhs, ended in a period of anarchy, during which the Afghān Āzād held Adharbijān; 'Alī Mardān the Bakhtiyārī, Iṣpahān; Moḥammad Ḥosayn, the chief of the Kājārs, ruled Astarabād; and Karīm Khān the Zand fought with Shāh Rukh the Afshārid for the supreme throne. The Zand eventually got the upper hand, and from 1750 (1163) to 1779 (1193) governed all Persia except Khurāsān, where Shāh Rukh the Afshārid, though old and blind, still maintained some show of authority. On the death of Karīm Khān a contest was waged for a dozen years between his Zand successors and Ākā Moḥammad the Kājār, which ended in the triumph of the latter, whose nephew in the fourth generation now reigns over the relics of a great people from his throne at Tīhrān.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|----------|-------------------------------|-----------|
| 907—1148 | 92. ŞAFAVIDS | 1502—1736 |
| 907 | Ismā'il I | 1502 |
| 930 | Ṭahmāsp I | 1524 |
| 984 | Ismā'il II | 1576 |
| 985 | Moḥammad Khudabanda | 1578 |
| 985 | 'Abbās I | 1587 |
| 1038 | Şafi I | 1629 |
| 1052 | 'Abbās II | 1642 |
| 1077 | Sulaymān I | 1667 |
| 1105 | Ḥosayn I | 1694 |
| 1135 | Ṭahmāsp II | 1722 |
| 1144 | 'Abbās III | 1731 |
| —1148 | | —1736 |

93. AFGHĀNS

| | | |
|-------|------------------|-------|
| 1135 | Maḥmūd | 1722 |
| 1137 | Ashraf | 1725 |
| —1142 | | —1729 |

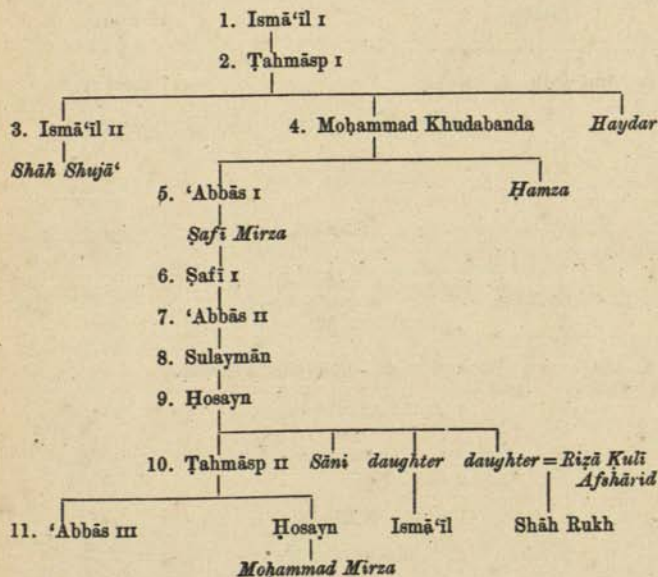
94. AFSHĀRIDS

| | | |
|-------|---------------------|-------|
| 1148 | Nādir | 1736 |
| 1160 | 'Ādil | 1747 |
| 1161 | Shāh Rukh | 1748 |
| —1210 | | —1796 |

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|-----------|------------------------------|-------|
| 95. ZANDS | | |
| 1163 | Ḳarīm Khān | 1750 |
| 1193 | Abū-l-Faṭḥ | 1779 |
| 1193 | ‘Alī Murād | 1779 |
| 1193 | Moḥammad ‘Alī | 1779 |
| 1193 | Şādīḳ | 1779 |
| 1196 | ‘Alī Murād (again) | 1782 |
| 1199 | Ja‘far | 1785 |
| 1203 | Luṭf ‘Alī | 1789 |
| —1209 | | —1794 |

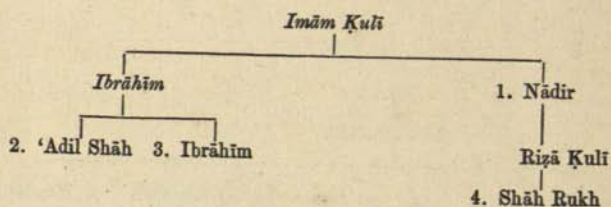
| | | |
|------------|--|------|
| 96. ḲAJARS | | |
| 1193 | Aḳā Moḥammad | 1779 |
| 1211 | Faṭḥ ‘Alī | 1797 |
| 1250 | Moḥammad | 1834 |
| 1264 | Nāṣir-al-dīn, <i>regnant</i> | 1848 |

ŞAFAVIDS*

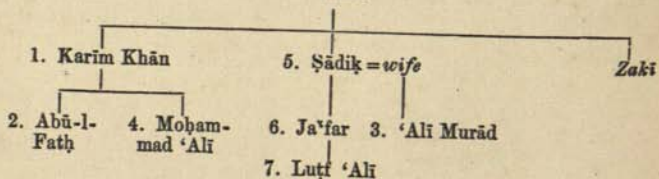


* The pedigrees of the Shāhs of Persia are abridged from the *Catalogue of Persian Coins in the British Museum*, by R. S. Poole, LL.D.

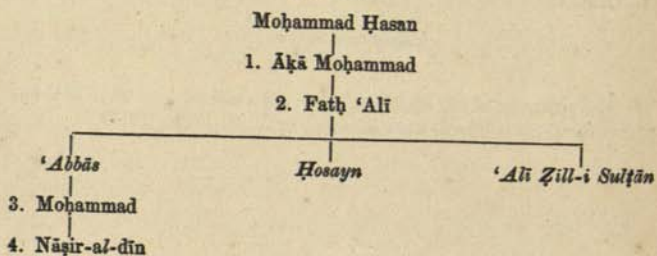
AFSHĀRIDS



ZANDS



KĀJARS



XIII. TRANSOXIANA

S/EC. XIV—XIX

- 97. TĪMŪRIDS
- 98. SHAYBĀNIDS
- 99. JĀNIDS OF ASTRAKHĀN
- 100. MANGITS
- 101. KHĀNS OF KHOḶAND
- 102. KHĀNS OF KHIVA

XIII.—TRANSOXIANA

SÆC. XIV—XIX

A.H.
771—906

97. TĪMŪRIDS

A.D.
1369—1500

Tīmūr, or Tīmūr Lang (Tīmūr the lame), commonly corrupted into Tamerlane, was related to the family of Chingiz Kaān, and one of his ancestors had been Vizīr to Chagatāy the son of Chingiz and ruler of Transoxiana. Tīmūr, who was born in 1335 (736), was appointed to the government of Kash by Tughā-Tīmūr, (p. 220), and became Vizīr to the Chagatāy Khān Suyurghātmish, whose authority he completely usurped before 1369 (771), though he allowed the Khān and his successor Maḥmūd to retain the nominal sovereignty until 1397 (800). In 1380 (782) Tīmūr began a long series of campaigns in Persia; and in seven years overran Khurāsān, Jurjān, Mazandarān, Sijistān, Afghānistān, Fārs, Adharbijān, and Kurdistan. An invasion by Tōktāmish, the Khān of the Golden Horde, called his attention nearer home in 1388, but in 1391 (793) he inflicted a total defeat on the Khān, which, however, had to be repeated in 1395

(797). Meanwhile in 1393 he had taken Baghdād from the Jalayrs, and had reduced Mesopotamia. In 1397 he entered northern India, and in the following year (801) raided Kashmīr and Dehli. His next great movement was to the west. In 1401 he invaded Anatolia, and took Siwās and Malatīa; and in 1402 (804) totally routed the 'Othmānī Turks at Angora and took Sultān Bāyazīd prisoner (p. 185). He reinstated the minor princes of Asia Minor, and, having subdued Syria and taken Aleppo and Damascus (803), he received the homage of their former possessor, the Mamlūk Sultān of Egypt. Whilst on the march for a still more ambitious campaign against China, Tīmūr died at Otrār, 1405 (807), aged 70.

The conquests of Tīmūr raised the kingdom of *Mawarā-l-nahr* ('Beyond the River' Oxus) or Transoxiana to an importance it had never before attained. Samarqand became the capital of an empire which stretched, in name at least, from Dehli to Damascus, and from the Sea of Aral to the Persian Gulf; and although much of Tīmūr's conquest was rather a raid than an annexation, yet Transoxiana remained for some time the centre of a kingdom which embraced most of Persia and Afghānistān besides the provinces beyond the Oxus. But Tīmūr's

empire was too unwieldy to be maintained in all its original vastness. When the petty dynasties of Persia, Karts and Sarbadārīds, Muẓaffarīds and Jalayrs, had been swept away, and the Turks had been driven out of Anatolia, and all Western Asia from the Hindū Kūsh to the Mediterranean trembled before one man, a reign of terror and not an organized empire had been established. As soon as the great conqueror was dead, Ottomans, Jalayrs and Turkomāns began to recover their lost provinces in the west. Although Tīmūr's descendants retained their hold of the north of Persia for a century, they were able to offer but a feeble resistance to the rising power of the Ṣafavīds; and when in the sixteenth century the line of Shaybān (of the house of Chingiz) succeeded to the capital of Tamerlane, the dominions of his descendants had shrunk to the limits which the Khānate of Bukhārā long afterwards preserved. The table (facing p. 268) of Tīmūr's descendants, who struggled with one another for the disjointed fragments of his empire, shows one cause of their weakness; there were too many rivals. Shāh Rukh, indeed, for a while succeeded in subduing the jealousies of his kinsmen and maintaining the power and dignity of the empire; but after his death in 1447 (850) his

dominions were split up into various petty principalities, which made way for the *Ṣafavids* in Persia and the *Shaybānids* in Transoxiana. Yet the line did not become extinct with the loss of Tīmūr's dominions. His descendant Bābar founded a new empire in Hindūstān which, known to us as that of the '*Great Moguls*,' lasted down to the present century (see XIV.).

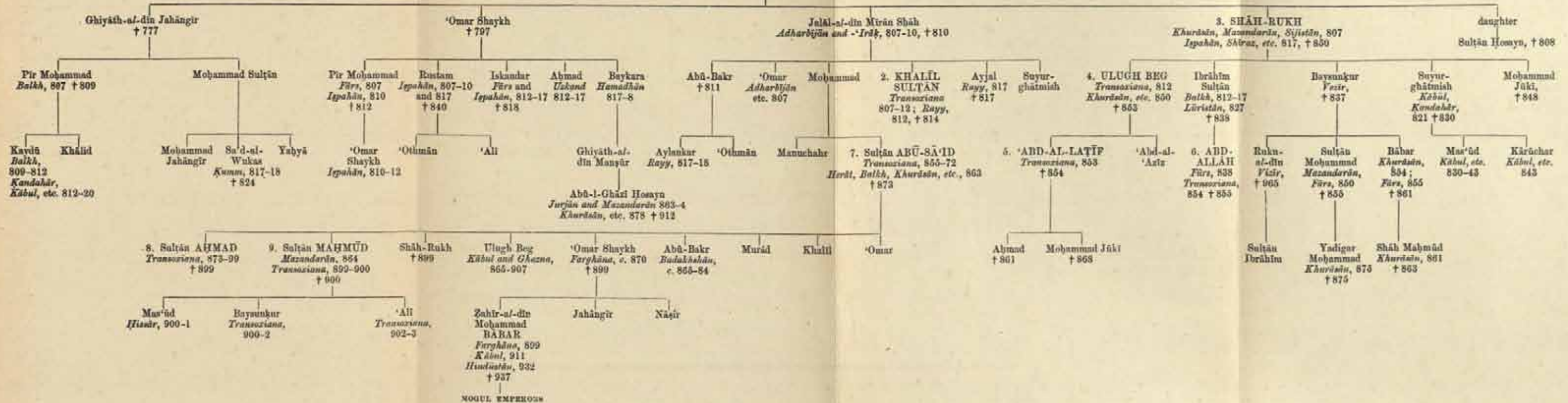
| A.H. | | A.D. |
|--------|----------------------------------|--------|
| 771 | Tīmūr | 1369 |
| | [771 Suyūrghātmish, nominal Khān | |
| | 790-800 Mahmūd " "] | |
| 807-12 | Khalīl | 1404-9 |
| 807 | Shāh Rukh | 1404 |
| 850 | Ulugh Beg | 1447 |
| 853 | 'Abd-al-Laṭīf | 1449 |
| 854 | 'Abd-Allāh | 1450 |
| 855 | Abū-Sa'īd | 1452 |
| 872 | Aḥmad | 1467 |
| 899 | Mahmūd | 1493 |
| 900 | <i>Anarchy</i> | 1494 |
| —906 | | —1500 |

[*Shaybānids*]

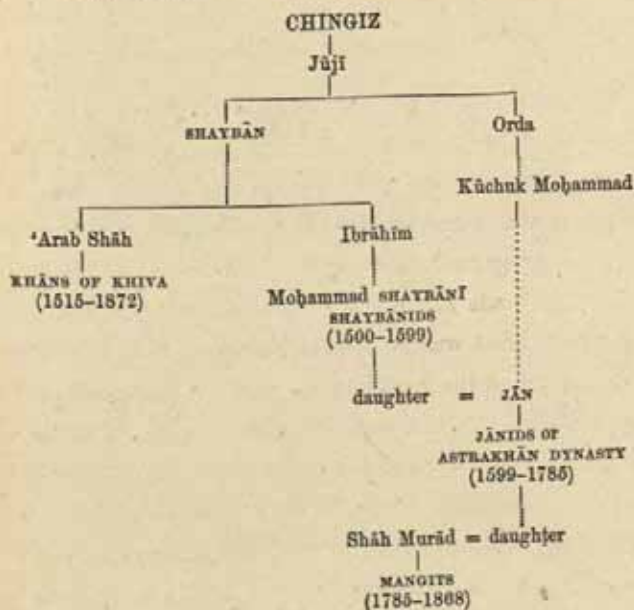
THE DESCENDANTS OF TĪMŪR AND THEIR GOVERNMENTS

(To face p. 268)

1. TĪMŪR † 807



CONNEXION OF THE TRANSOXINE KHĀNATES



| A.H. | | A.D. |
|----------|----------------|-----------|
| 906—1007 | 98. SHAYBĀNIDS | 1500—1599 |

Whilst the three sons of Maḥmūd, the last Tīmūrid Sulṭān of Transoxiana, were fighting over the ruins of an empire, a new power was approaching, which made an end of all the princes of Mā-warā-l-nahr and re-established a strong government in the place of anarchy. This was the Uzbek horde led by Moḥammad Shaybānī, almost the last of the great warriors of the lineage of Chingiz. The early history of the family of Shaybān has been mentioned (pp. 238—40). Their home-line remained in Siberia as Czars of Tiumen; but a large proportion of the clan migrated to Transoxiana under Shaybānī, overthrew the rival princes of Tīmūr's line, and founded the Uzbek kingdom, which survived in the Khānates of Bukhārā and Khiva until their submission to Russia within the last quarter of a century. This Uzbek kingdom was ruled by several successive dynasties. First, the Shaybānids governed Transoxiana for the whole of the sixteenth century, leaving Khwārizm

(Khiva) to be ruled by its own line of Khāns (p. 278), who were also descended from Shaybān, and abandoning Khurāsān to the Šafavids. Next, the Jānids or Astrakhān dynasty, connected in the female line with the Shaybānids, governed the same gradually diminishing territory during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries. Thirdly, their connexions by marriage, the Mangits, usurped the Khānate of Bukhārā, which was now greatly restricted by the growth of the neighbouring Khānate of Khoḡand, by the rise of various independent principalities at Tashkand, Uratippa, and elsewhere, and by the aggrandizement of the Durrānids of Afghānistan. Finally Bukhārā, Khiva, and Khoḡand, all fell before the aggression of Russia in 1868-1872.

| A. H. | | A. D. |
|-------|-----------------------------|-------|
| 906 | Moḥammad Shaybānī | 1500 |
| 916 | Köchkünjī | 1510 |
| 937 | Abū-Sa'īd | 1530 |
| 940 | 'Obayd-Allāh | 1533 |
| 946 | 'Abd-Allāh I | 1539 |
| 947 | 'Abd-al-Laṭīf | 1540 |
| 959 | Nūrūz Aḥmad | 1551 |
| 963 | Pīr Moḥammad I | 1555 |
| 968 | Iskandar | 1560 |
| 991 | 'Abd-Allāh II | 1583 |
| 1006 | 'Abd-al-Mu'min | 1598 |
| 1007 | Pīr Moḥammad II | 1599 |

[*Astrakhān*]

Samarḳand was the capital of the Shaybānids, but there was generally a powerful, and sometimes independent, government at Bukhārā. More than once the governor of Bukhārā was practically the ruler of Transoxiana, and this province became almost as much the Dauphiné of Samarḳand under the Shaybānids as Balkh was under the succeeding dynasty of Astrakhān.

SUB-DYNASTY OF BUKHĀRĀ

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|--|------|
| 947 | 'Abd-al-'Azīz | 1540 |
| 957 | Yār Moḥammad | 1549 |
| 961 | Burḥān Sultān | 1553 |
| 964 | 'Abd-Allāh (<i>who united Sāmārḳand in 986, and became from 991 'Abd-Allāh II of the Chief Khānate, q. v.</i>) | 1556 |

SUB-DYNASTY OF SAMARḲAND

| | | |
|-----|---------------------------------|------|
| 968 | Khusrū Sultān | 1560 |
| 975 | Sultān Sa'id | 1567 |
| 980 | Juvanmard 'Alī | 1572 |
| 986 | 'Abd-Allāh of Bukhārā | 1578 |

SHAYBĀNIDS

CHINGIZ KHĀN

Jūgh

SHAYBĀN

Ibrāhīm

Dawlat

Abū-l-Khayr

SULTĀ Budaqā

Khāyā Mubammad

2. Kochkūnji

Suyunichā

1. MOHAMMAD
SHAYBĀNĪ

Mahmūd

Jānī-Beg

3. Abū-

6. 'Abd-
Sa'id Allah6. 'Abd-al-
Latif

7. Nūrāz

4. 'Obayd-Allah

8. Pīr Mubammad

9. Iskandar

Sulaymān

JĀN = Zahrā Kāshim

ZĀNIDS

10. 'Abd-Allah II

12. Pīr Mubammad II

11. 'Abd-al-Mu'min

A.H.

1007—1200

A.D.

99. JĀNIDS

1599—1785

OR ASTRAKHĀN DYNASTY

When the Russians absorbed the Khānate of Astrakhān or Hājji Tarkhān (p. 229) in the middle of the 16th century, two of the dispossessed chiefs, Yār Moḥammad and his son Jān took refuge at Bukhārā with Iskandar the Shaybānid, who presently gave his daughter in marriage to Jān. The issue of this marriage, Bākī Moḥammad, succeeded (after a year's interval) his maternal uncle 'Abd-Allāh II, and he and his descendants, during most of the 17th century, ruled Samarkand, Bukhārā, Farghāna, Badakhshān, and Balkh, which last province was sometimes independent. Their power gradually decayed; the Durrānids eventually gained possession of all their Cisoxine territories (1752 ff.); a rival Khānate sprang up at Khoḡand (Farghāna) about 1700; and the Jānids were finally ousted in 1785 by the chiefs of the Mangit tribe, who had possessed the real power for some years before the actual dethronement of the last Jānid, Abū-l-Ghāzī.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|-------|--|-------|
| 1007 | Bākī Moḥammad | 1599 |
| 1014 | Vālī Moḥammad* | 1605 |
| 1017 | Imām Kūlī († 1060) | 1608 |
| 1050 | Nāḍir Moḥammad († 1061) | 1640 |
| 1057 | ‘Abd-al-‘Azīz | 1647 |
| 1091 | Subḥān Kūlī † | 1680 |
| 1114 | ‘Obayd-Allāh ‡ | 1702 |
| 1117 | Abū-l-Fayḍ § | 1705 |
| 1160 | ‘Abd-al-Mu‘min | 1747 |
| 1164 | ‘Obayd-Allāh II | 1751 |
| 1167 | <i>Moḥammad Raḥīm (Mangit)</i> | 1753 |
| 1171 | Abū-l-Ghāzī | 1758 |
| —1200 | | —1785 |

[*Mangits*]

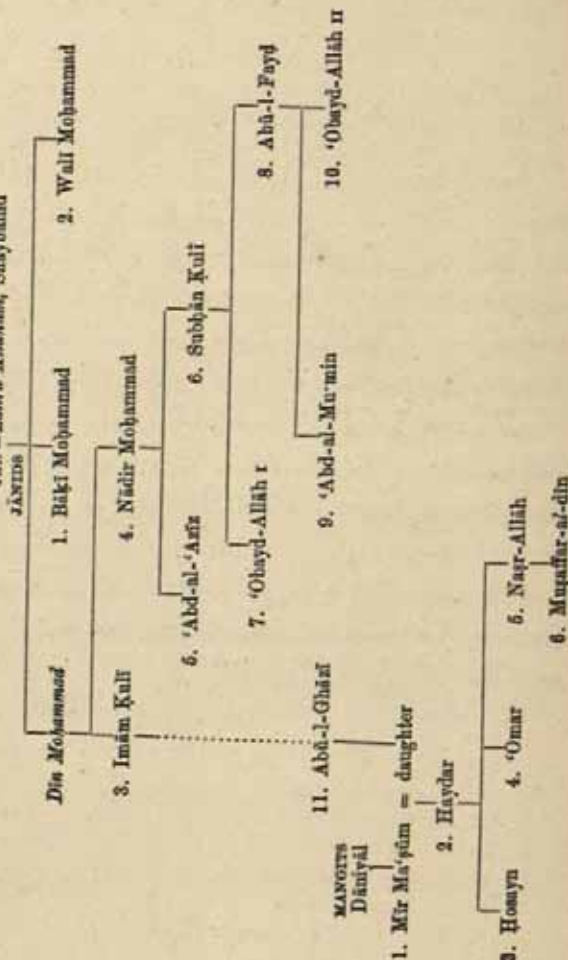
* Governed Balkh from 1007.

† Previously ruled Balkh for 23 years.

‡ Makīm Khān held Balkh 1114-1119.

§ Ruled only beyond the Oxus.

JĀNIDS AND MANGITS

JĀN = *Zahar Khānum*, Shaybānīd

| A. H. | | A. D. |
|-----------|--------------|-----------|
| 1200—1284 | 100. MANGITS | 1785—1868 |

The Mangits, or "Flat-noses," a tribe akin to the Nogāys, left their Kipchak camping-grounds to follow the fortunes of Moḥammad Shaybānī at the beginning of the 16th century. Under the Astrakhān dynasty they gradually increased in influence, and in the second half of the eighteenth century their chiefs became the vizirs of the rulers of Bukhārā and eventually supplanted their masters. Their dominions had shrunk considerably from the wide extent of the Shaybānids' kingdom, and Ma'şūm Shāh's wars with the Durrānids for the recovery of the Cisoxine territory were rewarded with but temporary success. The present Khān has been tributary to Russia since the campaign of 1868.

| A. H. | | A. D. |
|-------|---------------------------------|-------|
| 1200 | Mir Ma'şūm Shāh Murād | 1785 |
| 1215 | Ḥaydar Torn | 1800 |
| 1242 | Ḥosayn | 1826 |
| 1242 | 'Omar | 1826 |
| 1242 | Naşr-Allāh | 1827 |
| 1277 | Muḥaffar-al-dīn | 1860 |
| —1284 | <i>Tributary to Russia</i> | —1868 |

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|-------------|---------------------|--------------|
| c. 921—1289 | 101. KHĀNS OF KHIVA | c. 1515—1872 |

Khawārizm or Khiva, which had once furnished an ambitious line of Shāhs of its own (p. 176), was an appanage of the house of Jūjī, and never properly belonged to the Khānate of Transoxiana; up to the time of Tīmūr it was held by the Golden Horde. After the confusion of the Tīmūrīd period, the Uzbegs of Moḥammad Shaybānī occupied Khiva as well as Transoxiana, and about 1515 an independent Uzbeg Khānate was established there, the early history of which is exceedingly obscure. Wars were constantly waged with Bukhārā with varying success. Nādir Shāh of Persia conquered Khiva in 1740 and a Persian governor ruled there for a year. Finally General Kaufmann annexed it on the part of Russia in 1872.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|--------|------------------------|---------|
| c. 921 | Ilbars I | c. 1515 |
| c. 931 | Sultān Hājji | c. 1525 |
| | Hasan Kuli | |
| | Şufyān | |
| | Bujugha | |
| | Avanak | |
| | Kal | |
| c. 946 | Akatāy | c. 1540 |
| 953 | Dost | 1546 |

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|---|---------|
| 965 | Hājji Moḥammad I | 1558 |
| 1011 | 'Arab Moḥammad I | 1602 |
| 1032 | Isfandiyār | 1623 |
| 1053 | Abū-l-Ghāzī I | 1643 |
| 1074 | Anusha | 1663 |
| c. 1085 | Moḥammad Arank | c. 1674 |
| 1099 | Ishāk Akā Shāh Niyāz | 1687 |
| 1114 | 'Arab Moḥammad II | 1702 |
| | Hājji Moḥammad II | |
| 1126 | Yadighār | 1714 |
| 1126 | Arank | 1714 |
| 1127 | Shīr Ghāzī | 1715 |
| 114x | Ilbars II | 173x |
| 1153 | <i>Annexation by Nādir Shāh</i> | 1740 |
| 1154 | <i>Tagir (for Nādir Shāh)</i> | 1741 |
| 1154 | Abū-Moḥammad | 1741 |
| 115x | Abū-l-Ghāzī II | 174x |
| 1158 | Kaip | 1745 |
| c. 1184 | Abū-l-Ghāzī III | c. 1770 |
| 1219 | Iltazar | 1804 |
| 1221 | Moḥammad Raḥīm | 1806 |
| 1241 | Allāh Kūli | 1825 |
| 1258 | Raḥīm Kūli | 1842 |
| 1261 | Moḥammad Amīn | 1845 |
| 1271 | 'Abd-Allāh | 1855 |
| 1272 | Qutlugh Moḥammad | 1855 |
| 1272? | Sayyid Moḥammad | 1856? |
| 1282 | Sayyid Moḥammad Raḥīm | 1865 |
| —1289 | [<i>Annexation by Russia</i>] | —1872 |

A.H.
c. 1112—1293

102. KHĀNS OF
KHOĀKAND

A.D.
c. 1700—1876

Shāh Rukh, who claimed to be a descendant of Chingiz Khān, made himself independent in Farghāna and founded the Khānate of Khoḳand about 1700. The chronology of the earlier Khāns is uncertain. In 1800 Tāshkand was annexed by Khoḳand. The Khānate passed into the possession of Russia in 1876.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|--------------------------------|---------|
| c. 1112 | Shāh Rukh Beg | c. 1700 |
| | Raḥim | |
| | ‘Abd-al-Ḳarīm | |
| | Erdeni | |
| 1184 | Sulaymān | 1770 |
| 1184 | Shāh Rukh II | 1770 |
| 1184? | Narbuta | 1770? |
| 1216 | ‘Ālim | 1800 |
| 1224 | Moḥammad ‘Omar | 1809 |
| 1237 | Moḥammad ‘Alī | 1822 |
| c. 1256 | Shīr ‘Alī | 1840 |
| 1261 | Murād | 1841 |
| c. 1261 | Khudāyār | 1845 |
| 1273 | Malla | 1857 |
| 1275 | Shāh Murād | 1859 |
| c. 1277 | Khudāyār (2nd reign) | 1861 |
| c. 1280 | Sayyid Sultān | 1864 |
| 1288 | Khudāyār (3rd reign) | 1871 |
| 1292 | Nāṣir-al-dīn | 1875 |
| —1293 | [Annexed by Russia] | —1876 |

XIV. INDIA
AND AFGHĀNISTĀN

SÆC. X—XIX

- 103. GHAZNAWIDS
- 104. GHŌRIDS
- 105. SULTĀNS OF DEHLĪ
- 106. KINGS OF BENGAL
- 107. KINGS OF JAUNPŪR
- 108. KINGS OF MĀLWA
- 109. KINGS OF GUJARĀT
- 110. KINGS OF KHĀNDĒSH
- 111. BAHMANIDS OF THE DECCAN
- 112. 'IMĀD SHĀHS OF BERĀR
- 113. NIẒAM SHĀHS OF AḤMADNAGAR
- 114. BARĪD SHĀHS OF BĪDAR
- 115. 'ĀDIL SHĀHS OF BĪJĀPŪR
- 116. KUTĒB SHĀHS OF GOLKONDA
- 117. MOGUL EMPERORS OF HINDŪSTĀN
- 148. AMĪRS OF AFGHĀNISTĀN

A.H.
c. 1112—1293102. KHĀNS OF
KHOĀKANDA.D.
c. 1700—1876

Shāh Rukh, who claimed to be a descendant of Chingiz Khān, made himself independent in Farghāna and founded the Khānate of Khoḳand about 1700. The chronology of the earlier Khāns is uncertain. In 1800 Tāshkand was annexed by Khoḳand. The Khānate passed into the possession of Russia in 1876.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|--------------------------------|---------|
| c. 1112 | Shāh Rukh Beg | c. 1700 |
| | Rahīm | |
| | 'Abd-al-Ḳarīm | |
| | Erdeni | |
| 1184 | Sulaymān | 1770 |
| 1184 | Shāh Rukh II | 1770 |
| 1184? | Narbuta | 1770? |
| 1215 | 'Ālim | 1800 |
| 1224 | Moḥammad 'Omar | 1809 |
| 1237 | Moḥammad 'Alī | 1822 |
| c. 1256 | Shīr 'Alī | 1840 |
| 1261 | Murād | 1841 |
| c. 1261 | Khudāyār | 1845 |
| 1273 | Malla | 1857 |
| 1275 | Shāh Murād | 1859 |
| c. 1277 | Khudāyār (2nd reign) | 1861 |
| c. 1280 | Sayyid Sultān | 1864 |
| 1288 | Khudāyār (3rd reign) | 1871 |
| 1292 | Nāṣir-al-dīn | 1875 |
| —1293 | [Annexed by Russia] | —1876 |

XIV. INDIA
AND AFGHĀNISTĀN

SÆC. X—XIX

- 103. GHAZNAWIDS
- 104. GHĪRIDS
- 105. SULTĀNS OF DEHLĪ
- 106. KINGS OF BENGAL
- 107. KINGS OF JAUNPŪR
- 108. KINGS OF MĀLWA
- 109. KINGS OF GUJARĀT
- 110. KINGS OF KHĀNDĒSH
- 111. BAHMANIDS OF THE DECCAN
- 112. 'IMĀD SHĀHS OF BERĀR
- 113. NIZĀM SHĀHS OF AHMADNAGAR
- 114. BARĪD SHĀHS OF BĪDAR
- 115. 'ĀDIL SHĀHS OF BĪJĀPŪR
- 116. KUTB SHĀHS OF GOLKONDA
- 117. MOGUL EMPERORS OF HINDŪSTĀN
- 118. AMĪRS OF AFGHĀNISTĀN

XIV. INDIA AND AFGHĀNISTĀN

SÆC. X—XIX

No considerable part of India ever belonged to the Caliphate. Soon after their conquest of Herāt, indeed, the Arabs pushed on to Kābul in 664 (44) and thence descended to Multān; but this reconnaissance did not lead to continuous occupation. An advance from the south produced more permanent results. Piratical expeditions by sea to the mouths of the Indus were frequent in the early days of Islām, and in 711 (92) Moḥammad Kāsim, a nephew of -Ḥajjāj, the celebrated governor of -Baṣra, conquered Sind from the coast as far as Multān, and although no attempt was made to enlarge this dominion, the province continued to be ruled by Arab governors for nearly two centuries.

The conquest of Hindūstān by the Moḥammadans, however, sprang not from Sind but from Afghānistān. The early annexation by the Arabs of the mountainous country

south of the Hindū Kūsh had been nominal and temporary, and Ya'qūb b. Layth the Ṣaffārid of Sijistān (p. 129) was the first to establish a settled Moḥammadan government at Kābul. Here his dynasty was succeeded by governors appointed by the Sāmānids (p. 131), and it was Alptigīn, one of the local governors of the Sāmānids, who laid the foundations at Ghazna of the first independent Moḥammadan dynasty in Afghānistān.

Henceforward for two centuries Ghazna was the capital of a powerful dynasty to which it gave the name of *Ghaznawids*. The incursions of the Ghaznawids into India and their settlement at Lahore formed the true beginning of Muslim rule in Hindūstān. The Ghaznawid kingdom at Lahore prepared the way for Moḥammad b. Sām the Ghōrid and his successors the Sultāns of Dehli, who brought the whole of northern India under Moḥammadan sway. The invasion of the Mongols under Bābar put an end to the divisions which had weakened the Dehli kingdom in its later years, and Bābar's grandson Akbar organized the splendid Empire of the Great Moguls which lasted down to the present century.

A.H.
351—582

103. GHAZNAWIDS

A.D.
962—1186

(AFGHĀNISTĀN AND PANJĀB)

Among the Turkish slaves whom the Sāmānid princes delighted to honour with the chief posts in the government of their dominions, Alptigīn rose by favour of ‘Abd-al-Malik to be commander of the forces in Khurāsān, but, being deprived of this office on the death of his patron, he retired in dudgeon in 962 (351) to the city of Ghazna, in the heart of the Sulaymān mountains, where his father had been governor under the Sāmānids, and where the son had succeeded to his authority. In the mountain fastnesses he could safely defy the ill-will of his masters in the plains; but he died in a year’s time without enlarging the dominion he had assumed; nor did his son Ishāk or his slave Balkātigīn enhance the power of the Ghaznawids. The true founder of the dynasty was Sabaktigīn, another slave of Alptigīn, and the husband of his daughter. Sabaktigīn widened his territories on both sides; in India by the defeat of the Rājputs and the establishment of a government at Peshāwar: in Persia by the acquisition of Khu-

final triumph. On his return from an expedition into the heart of the old Caliphate, in which he took Ispahān from the Buwayhids (p. 142), Maḥmūd died at Ghazna in the spring of 1030 (421). His magnificent encouragement of science, art, and literature, was no less remarkable than his genius as a general and statesman. He founded and endowed a university at Ghazna, and his munificence drew together perhaps the most splendid 'assemblage of literary genius,' including the poet Firdausi, that any Asiatic capital has ever contained.* Ghazna was enriched with palaces and mosques, aqueducts and public works, beyond any city of its age: for Maḥmūd had known how to learn from India, as well as how to plunder it.

The empire which had thus been founded stretched from Lahore to Samarkand and Ispahān; but it was soon lopped of its western limbs. In a few years the Seljūks (p. 151), after defeating Mas'ūd the son of Maḥmūd near Merv, had taken possession of all the Persian and Transoxiane provinces of the Ghaznawids, from Balkh and Khwārizm to Ispahān and Rayy (1037-1045); and the rulers of Ghazna learned to turn their eyes to the east, now that the west was closed to them. Lahore

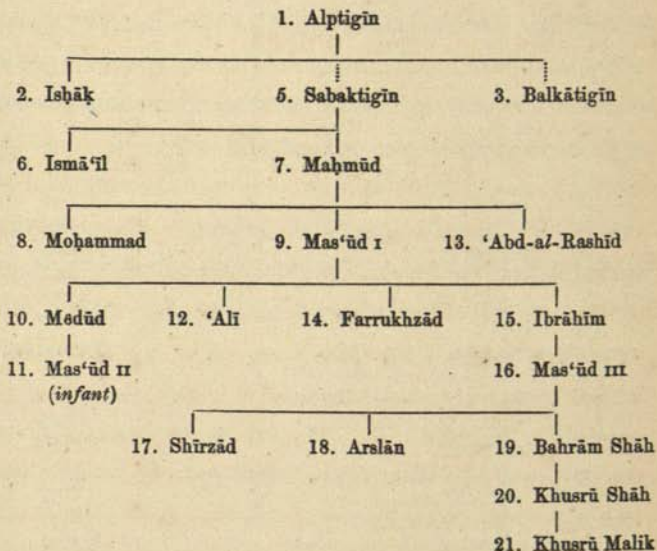
* Elphinstone, *History of India*, 341-5 (5th ed. 1866).

became their capital when Ghazna fell to the Ghōrids in 1161. Thus the losses in the west confirmed the settlement in Hindūstān, and when in 1186 (582) the successors of of Maḥmūd, who had not emulated his ambition, gave place to the hardy Afghāns of Ghōr, the Indian provinces soon separated from the highlands; and thus began the series of independent Moḥammadan dynasties of India.

| A. H. | | A. D. |
|-------|---|-------|
| 351 | Alptigīn | 962 |
| 352 | Isbāk | 963 |
| 355 | Balkātigīn* | 966 |
| 362 | Piri | 972 |
| 366 | Sebaktagīn | 976 |
| 387 | Ismā'il | 997 |
| 388 | Maḥmūd, Yamīn-al-dawla | 998 |
| 421 | Moḥammad, Jalāl-al-dawla | 1030 |
| 421 | Mas'ūd I, Nāṣir-dīn-Allāh | 1030 |
| 432 | Mōdūd, Shihāb-al-dawla | 1040 |
| 440 | Mas'ūd II | 1048 |
| 440 | 'Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan, Bahā-al-dawla | 1048 |
| 440 | 'Abd-al-Rashīd, 'Izz-al-dawla | 1049 |
| 444 | Tughrit (usurper) | 1052 |
| 444 | Farrukhzād, Jamāl-al-dawla | 1052 |
| 451 | Ibrāhīm, Zahir-al-dawla | 1059 |
| 492 | Mas'ūd III, 'Alā-al-dawla | 1099 |
| 508 | Shirzād, Kamāl-al-dawla | 1114 |
| 509 | Arelān, Sultān-al-dawla | 1115 |
| 512 | Bahrām Shāh, Yamīn-al-dawla | 1118 |
| 547 | Khusrū Shāh, Mu'izz-al-dawla | 1152 |
| 555 | Khusrū Malik, Tāj-al-dawla | 1160 |
| —582 | [Ghōrids] | —1186 |

* On the chronology of the early Ghaznavids see E. E. Oliver, *The Decline of the Sāmānīs*, in *Journ. As. Soc. Bengal*, lv. pt. i. 1886.

GHAZNAWIDS



(..... Dotted lines indicate the relation of master to slave.)

A. H.
543—612

104. GHŌRIDS

A. D.
1148—1215

(AFGHĀNISTĀN, HINDŪSTĀN)

From early times the mountainous district of Ghŏr (or Ghūr), between Herāt and Ghazna, had been the seat of a small but practically independent dynasty, who usually made the fortress of Fīrūz-kōh their headquarters. Maḥmūd of Ghazna had reduced this principality in 1010 (401), when the Afghāns of Ghŏr were ruled by Moḥammad b. Sūrī; and the descendants of this chief continued to govern at Fīrūz-kōh and Bāmiyān under the orders of the Ghaznawids, with whom they allied themselves by marriage. The execution of one of the family (Kutb-al-dīn Moḥammad) by his father-in-law Bahrām Shāh the Ghaznawid was avenged by the capture of Ghazna in 1148 (543) by the murdered man's brother, Sayf-al-dīn Sūrī, the ruler of Ghŏr; but in the following year Bahrām Shāh succeeded in re-entering his capital, and tortured the invader to death. This second act of barbarity brought down a signal punishment upon Ghazna

at the hands of a third brother, 'Alā-al-dīn Ḥosayn, surnamed Jahān-sōz, or 'world-incendiary,' from the ferocity with which he gave up the splendid city of Maḥmūd the idol-breaker to fire and sword. Contemptuously leaving the ashes of Ghazna, 'Alā-al-dīn returned to Ghōr; and after a brief captivity in the hands of Sulṭān Sinjar the Seljūk of Khurāsān, he died in 1161 (556) in a time of anarchy, when the Ghuzz Turkomāns swept over Afghānistān and for a while abolished both Ghōrid and Ghaznawid governments.

The Ghuzz soon wended their migratory way into Persia, and on their departure two brothers, nephews of the 'World-Incendiary,' became the leaders of the Ghōrid family. The elder, Ghiyāth-al-dīn b. Sām, had taken Ghazna from the Ghuzz in 1173 (569), and annexed Herāt two years later. He remained titular sovereign of all the wide possessions of his family until his death in 1202 (599). The younger brother, however, Shihāb-al-dīn, afterwards styled Mu'izz-al-dīn, and commonly known as Moḥammad Ghōrī, was the real ruler and extender of the kingdom. He conquered part of Khurāsān from the Seljūks, and then began a series of campaigns in India, in which he reduced Sind and Multan (571),

where Arab governors had made Muslim rule familiar; subdued the Ghaznawids in their last retreat at Lahore in 1186 (582); and then proceeded to attack the leader of the Chohān Rājputs, Prithwī Rāja of Ajmīr. His first onslaught was repulsed with terrible loss (587), but in the following year, 1192, a hard-fought battle on the same field of Thanesar ended in the total defeat of the Rājputs, and the death of Prithwī Rāja and many others of the 150 princes who had assembled for the defence of Hindūstān. The victory meant nothing less than the submission of nearly the whole of northern India; for Kanauj fell in 1194, and Gwālīōr, Bandal-khand, Bihār, and Bengal were successively reduced by the generals of Moḥammad Ghōrī. For the first time the whole of Hindūstān admitted, in a greater or less degree, Moḥammadan sway.

So long as his brother lived, Moḥammad Ghōrī always remained a loyal viceroy, but on Ghiyāth-al-dīn's death in 1202 (599) he succeeded to the supreme authority, when his first duty was to defend his realm against the Khwārizm Shāh, who had overrun Persia and was forcing his way into Afghānistān. In the midst of the confusion of this invasion, Moḥammad Ghōrī was assassinated by a party

of Ghakkars in 1206 (602). His dynasty did not long survive him. His nephew Maḥmūd was indeed proclaimed Sultān throughout the wide dominions conquered by the uncle; but the unity of the kingdom vanished with its founder. The Turkish slaves who had served as generals under Moḥammad Ghōrī assumed independent power. Kuṭb-al-dīn Aybak became the first of the Slave Kings of Dehlī; Nāṣir-al-dīn Kubācha ruled in Sind; and Yildiz governed Ghazna. The titular successor of the great Ghōrid, from his capital of Fīrūz-kōh, reigned over little more than western Afghānistān (Ghōr and Herāt) with part of Khurāsān; and from all these the Ghōrids were expelled by the armies of the *Khwārizm Shāh* in 1215 (612). Long afterwards, however, their descendants recovered some relics of their ancient dominions, and the *Kart* princes of Herāt traced their origin to the family of Moḥammad Ghōrī.

The opposite table shows the relationship and places of government of the chief members of the Ghōrid family.*

* For further details see E. Thomas, *Supplementary Contributions to the Series of the Coins of the Kings of Ghazni* (1859).

1. 'Izz-al-dīn Ḥasan
(*Ghōr*)

| | | | | | | |
|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| <p>Ḳuṭb-al-dīn Moḥammad (<i>Fīrūz-kōh</i>; killed by Bahrām Shāh)</p> | <p>2. Sayf-al-dīn Sūrī (<i>Ghōr</i>; <i>Ghazna</i>, 543-4; killed by Bahrām Shāh, 544)</p> | <p>3. 'Alā-al-dīn Ḥosayn Jahānsōz (<i>Ghōr</i>, 544-556; <i>Ghazna</i>, 550)</p> | <p>Bahā-al-dīn Sām (<i>Fīrūz-kōh</i>, 544)</p> | <p>Shihāb-al-dīn Moḥammad (<i>Mādīn</i>)</p> | <p>Shujā'- al-dīn 'Alī (<i>Kāirmā</i>)</p> | <p>RĀMIYĀN LINE i. Fakhr-al-dīn Mas'ūd (550-?)</p> |
| | <p>9. 'Alā-al-dīn Atsuz (<i>Ghōr</i>, 607-610)</p> | <p>4. Sayf-al-dīn Moḥammad (<i>Ghōr</i>, 556-8)</p> | <p>5. Ghiyāth-al-dīn Moḥammad (<i>Ghōr</i>, 558; <i>Herāt</i>, 571; † 599)</p> | <p>6. Shihāb-al-dīn Mu'izz-al-dīn Moḥammad Ghōrī (<i>Ghazna</i>, 569; <i>Sind</i>, 571; <i>Lahore</i>, 582; <i>Hindūstān</i>, 588 ff.; <i>Ghōr and Ghazna</i>, 599; † 602)</p> | <p>10. 'Alā-al-dīn Moḥammad (<i>Ghōr and</i> <i>Fīrūz-kōh</i>, [under 6]; 599-603; restored 610; surrenders to <i>Khvārizm Shāh</i> 612)</p> | <p>ii. Shams-al-dīn Moḥammad</p> |
| | | | <p>7. Maḥmūd (<i>Bust</i>, 599; <i>Ghōr and Fīrūz-kōh</i>, 603; † 607)</p> | | | <p>iii. Bahā-al-dīn Sām † 602</p> |
| | | | <p>8. Bahā-al-dīn Sām (<i>Ghōr</i>, etc., 607)</p> | | <p>'Alā-al-dīn (<i>Ghazna</i>, 602-3)</p> | <p>iv. Jalāl-al-dīn 602-9 (killed by <i>Khvārizm Shāh</i>)</p> |

A.H.

602—962

105. SULTĀNS OF DEHLĪ

A.H.

1206—1554

(HINDŪSTĀN)

Moḥammad Ghōrī, after conquering northern India to the mouth of the Ganges, either by his own campaigns or by those of his generals, appointed his slave Kuṭb-al-dīn Aybak to act as his viceroy at Dehlī; and on the death of the master in 1206 (602) the slave proclaimed himself sovereign of Hindūstān, and founded the first Moḥammadan dynasty which ruled exclusively in India; for hitherto Moḥammadan India had been but an outlying province of the kingdom of Ghazna. This dynasty, the first of five which preceded the Mogul conquest, is commonly known as the *Slave Kings*. The greatest of the line was Altamish (more correctly Iltutmish), who subdued the governor of Sind, Nāṣir-al-dīn Kubācha; compelled the viceroy of Bengal to acknowledge the supremacy of Dehlī; repelled the attempt of Yildiz to revive in India the kingdom of which the Khwārizm Shāh

had robbed him at Ghazna; and in turn withstood the attempts of Jalāl-*al*-dīn, the son of that Shāh, to set up his rule in Hindūstān—when driven over the Hindū-Kūsh by the Mongols of Chingiz Khān. Fortunately for India these Mongols stopped short at the Indus, though their raids were a frequent source of alarm for many years. Altamish vigorously maintained his authority over the whole country north of the Vindhya mountains; and the Caliph of Baghdād, for the first time recognizing a distinct Moḥammadan kingdom of India, gave its sovereign the sanction of a formal diploma of investiture from the spiritual head of Islām. Ridīya, the daughter of Altamish, was the only woman who ever sat on the throne of Dehlī, until Queen Victoria figuratively took her seat there in 1858. Under the later Slave Kings the Hindūs began to pluck up the courage which had oozed away before the arms of Moḥammad Ghōrī and Altamish; and Balban had to sternly suppress many serious native outbreaks, which were in some degree the fruit of his policy of getting rid of the Slave governors—a policy which led to the subversion of his own dynasty.

The *Khaljī* Turks, the second Muslim dynasty of India, began to extend Moḥammadan rule beyond the Vindhyas

into the Deccan. 'Alā-al-dīn Moḥammad re-conquered Gujarāt, 1297; took Chitōr and temporarily subdued the Rājputs, 1303; and his eunuch general Malik Kāfūr seized Deogīri and Warangal, and founded a Deccan province of the Dehlī kingdom. The extent of the dominion, however, tended towards disruption. After power had again changed hands, and a Turkish slave had established the *Taghlaḳid* dynasty, Moḥammad b. Taghlaḳ, a man of remarkable but bizarre genius, perceived the impossibility of ruling the Deccan from Dehlī, and accordingly sought to transplant by force both court and population from the northern capital to Deogīri, which he re-named Dawlatābād, the 'seat of government.' But he could not check the disintegrating process which had begun; whole provinces revolted, and he was ever on the wing from end to end of his empire to suppress rebellion; and his successors were forced to witness the separation of province after province from the central stock, until the Sultān of Dehlī sometimes commanded but a small district round his capital. The invasion of Timūr, who turned northern India into a shambles in 1398-9, hastened the catastrophe. The *Sayyids* and *Lōdis*, who followed the house of Taghlaḳ, held but one govern-

ment out of the many that now prevailed in Hindūstān. Bengal, Jaunpūr, Mālwa, and Gujarāt were the seats of independent Moḥammadan dynasties, and the Rājputs and the Hindūs of the Deccan had recovered much of their former possessions.

The irruption of the Moguls under Bābar, who established his authority over most of northern India, save Bengal, in 1526-30, was too brief to accomplish the work of re-uniting the scattered fragments of the empire of 'Alā-ud-dīn the Khaljī. After Bābar's death the Moguls were driven out of India by Shīr Shāh and the Afghāns of Bengal 1539-40 (946-7), and the courage and genius of the Afghān conqueror almost availed to restore the waning prestige of the Moḥammadan power. But the provinces refused to obey an Afghān sovereign, and their disunion opened the way for the return of Bābar's son Humāyūn in 1554 (962) and the establishment under Akbar of the famous Mogul Empire, which lasted to the present century.

A. SLAVE KINGS

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|--|------|
| 602 | Aybak, Kuṭb-al-dīn | 1206 |
| 607 | Arām Shāh | 1210 |
| 607 | Altamish (Iltutmish), Shams-al-dīn | 1210 |
| 633 | Firūz Shāh I, Rukn-al-dīn | 1235 |
| 634 | Riḍīya | 1236 |
| 637 | Bahrām Shāh, Mu'izz-al-dīn | 1239 |
| 639 | Mas'ūd Shāh, 'Alā-al-dīn | 1241 |
| 644 | Maḥmūd Shāh I, Nāṣir-al-dīn | 1246 |
| 664 | Balban, Ghiyāth-al-dīn | 1265 |
| 686 | Kay-Kubād, Mu'izz-al-dīn | 1287 |

B. KHALJIS

| | | |
|-----|--|------|
| 689 | Firūz Shāh II, Jalāl-al-dīn | 1290 |
| 696 | Ibrāhīm Shāh I, Rukn-al-dīn | 1295 |
| 696 | Moḥammad Shāh I, 'Alā-al-dīn | 1295 |
| 716 | 'Omar Shāh, Shihāb-al-dīn | 1315 |
| 716 | Mubārak Shāh I, Kuṭb-al-dīn | 1316 |
| 720 | Khusrū Shāh, Nāṣir-al-dīn | 1320 |

C. TAGHLAKIDS

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|--|------|
| 720 | Taghlaḳ Shāh i, Ghiyāth-al-dīn | 1320 |
| 725 | Moḥammad ii b. Taghlaḳ | 1324 |
| 752 | Firūz Shāh iii | 1351 |
| 790 | Taghlaḳ Shāh ii | 1388 |
| 791 | Abū-Bakr Shāh | 1388 |
| 792 | Moḥammad Shāh iii | 1389 |
| 795 | Sikandar Shāh i | 1392 |
| 796 | Maḥmūd Shāh ii | 1392 |
| 797 | Naṣrat Shāh (<i>interregnum</i>) | 1394 |
| 802 | Maḥmūd ii <i>restored</i> | 1399 |
| 815 | Dawlat Khān Lōdī | 1412 |

D. SAYYIDS

| | | |
|-----|--|------|
| 817 | Khiḍr Khān | 1414 |
| 824 | Mubārak Shāh ii, Mu'izz-al-dīn | 1421 |
| 837 | Moḥammad Shāh iv | 1433 |
| 847 | 'Alīm Shāh | 1443 |

E. LŌDĪS

| | | |
|------|------------------------------------|-------|
| 855 | Bahlōl Lōdī | 1451 |
| 894 | Sikandar ii b. Bahlōl | 1488 |
| 923 | Ibrāhīm ii b. Sikandar | 1517 |
| —930 | <i>Invasion of Bābar</i> | —1526 |

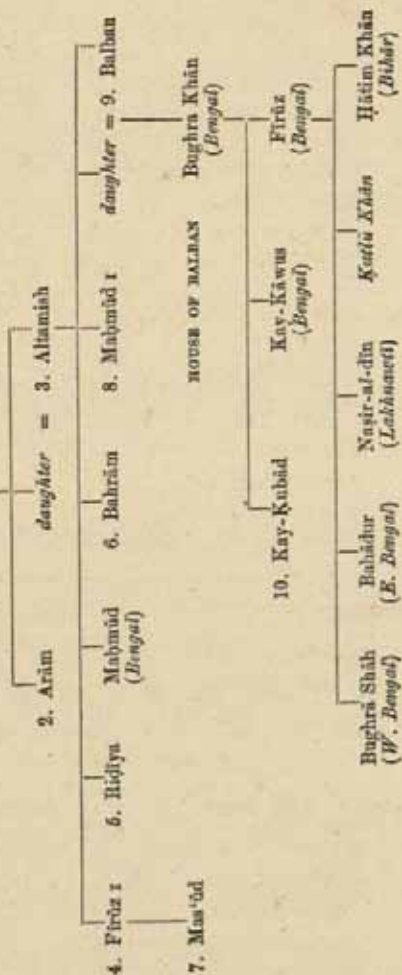
F. AFGHĀNS

| | | |
|-----|----------------------------------|------|
| 946 | Shīr Shāh | 1539 |
| 962 | Islām Shāh | 1545 |
| 960 | Moḥammad v. 'Adil Shāh | 1552 |
| 961 | Ibrāhīm iii Sūr | 1553 |
| 962 | Sikandar Shāh iii | 1554 |

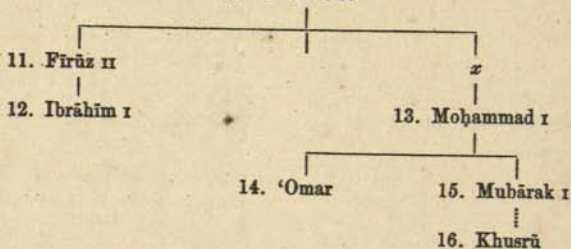
[*Mogul Emperors*]

A. SLAVE KINGS

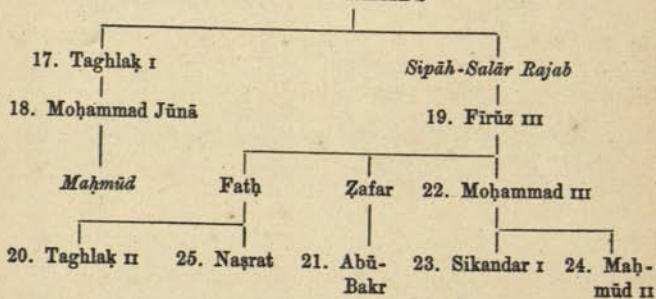
1. Kutb-al-din Aybak
(slave of Moḥammad Gh̃orī)



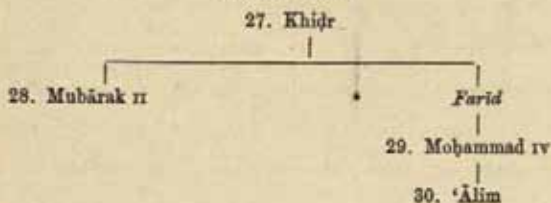
B. KHALJĪS



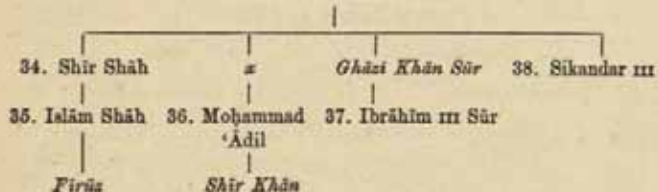
C. TAGHLĀKIDS



D. SAYYIDS



F. AFGHĀNS



PROVINCIAL DYNASTIES OF INDIA

The Empire of Moḥammad b. Taghlaḳ included the whole of Hindūstān, together with Telingana and other districts in the Deccan. Before his death the more distant provinces began to grow into independence, and soon after the beginning of the fifteenth century the greater part of his dominions was in the hands of seven provincial Moḥammadan dynasties, besides the Hindū Rājas.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|----------|------------------------------------|-----------|
| 599—984 | 1. Governors and Kings of Bengal . | 1202—1576 |
| 796—905 | 2. Sharḳī Kings of Jaunpūr . | 1394—1500 |
| 804—937 | 3. Kings of Mālwa . . . | 1401—1530 |
| 799—980 | 4. Kings of Gujarāt . . . | 1396—1572 |
| 735—995 | 5. Kings of Kashmīr . . . | 1334—1587 |
| 801—1008 | 6. Fārūkids, Kings of Khāndēsh . | 1399—1599 |
| 748—933 | 7. Bahmanids, Kings of Kulbarga . | 1347—1526 |

On the decay of the Bahmanids, the following five dynasties divided their dominions between them:—

| | | |
|----------|--------------------------------|-----------|
| 890—980 | 8. 'Imād Shāhs of Berār . . | 1484—1572 |
| 896—1004 | 9. Nizām Shāhs of Aḥmadnagar . | 1490—1595 |
| 897—1018 | 10. Barid Shāhs of Bidar . . | 1492—1609 |
| 895—1097 | 11. 'Adil Shāhs of Bijāpūr . . | 1489—1686 |
| 918—1098 | 12. Ḳuṭb Shāhs of Golkonda . . | 1512—1687 |

The Hindūstān dynasties were absorbed into the Mogul Empire by Akbar, and those of the Deccan succumbed to the attacks of Aurangzīb.

A.H.

599—984

106 GOVERNORS AND

A.D.

1202—1576

KINGS OF BENGAL

Moḥammad Bakhtiyār, the conqueror and first governor of Bengal, subdued but a small part of the present province, chiefly in the neighbourhood of his capital Lakhnawtī. In the early part of the thirteenth century Sonārgāon and Sātḡāon became seats of Moḥammadan governors, and the name Bangāla included these as well as Lakhnawtī. Firūzābād (Pandūah) was the capital of the triple province, until in 1446 (850) the seat of government was again moved to Lakhnawtī, which was now first called Gaur, and remained the capital until 1564 (972), when it was succeeded by Tāndah. The governors of Bengal sometimes also held Bihār, and occasionally Chittagong and Orīsa. When the Dehlī kings grew weak, the Bengal governors waxed independent, and several dynasties assumed kingly powers. Humāyūn occupied Bengal in 944-6, but after the successful defeat of the Moguls by Shīr Shāh in 1539 (946) governors were again appointed, and again (960) founded independent dynasties. In 982, however, Bihār fell before the arms of Akbar, and by 1576 (984) the Mogul was supreme in Bengal.

A. GOVERNORS

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|--------|---|---------|
| 599 | Moḥammad Bakhtiyār Khaljī | 1202 |
| 602 | 'Izz- <i>al</i> -dīn Moḥammad Shirān | 1205 |
| 605 | 'Alā- <i>al</i> -dīn Mardān | 1208 |
| 608 | Ghiyāth- <i>al</i> -dīn 'Iwaz | 1211 |
| 624 | Nāṣir- <i>al</i> -dīn Maḥmūd | 1226 |
| 627 | 'Alā- <i>al</i> -dīn Jānī | 1229 |
| 627 | Sayf- <i>al</i> -dīn Aybak | 1229 |
| 631 | 'Izz- <i>al</i> -dīn Ṭughril Ṭughān Khān . . . | 1233 |
| 642 | Ḳamar- <i>al</i> -dīn Tamar Khān-Ḳirān . . . | 1244 |
| 644 | Ikhtiyār- <i>al</i> -dīn (Mughith- <i>al</i> -dīn) Yūsuf . | 1246 |
| 656 | Jalāl- <i>al</i> -dīn Mas'ūd Malik Jānī | 1258 |
| 657 | 'Izz- <i>al</i> -dīn Balban | 1258 |
| 659? | Moḥammad Arslān Tatar Khān | 1260? |
| | Shir Khān | |
| | Amin Khān | |
| 677 | Mughith- <i>al</i> -dīn Ṭughril | 1278 |
| 681 | *Nāṣir- <i>al</i> -dīn Bughrā Khān | 1282 |
| 691 | Rukn- <i>al</i> -dīn Kay-Kāwus | 1291 |
| 702 | Shams- <i>al</i> -dīn Firūz Shāh | 1302 |
| 718 | Shihāb- <i>al</i> -dīn Bughrā Shāh (West Bengal) | 1318 |
| 710 | Ghiyāth- <i>al</i> -dīn Bahādur Shāh (East Bengal) | 1310 |
| 719 | " " (All Bengal) | 1319 |
| 723-6 | Nāṣir- <i>al</i> -dīn (Lakhnawī) | 1323-5 |
| 725-31 | Bahādur Shāh <i>restored, with</i> Bahram | |
| | (East Bengal) | 1324-30 |
| 731-9 | Bahram Shāh (alone) | 1330-8 |
| 726-40 | Ḳadr Khān (Lakhnawī) | 1325-39 |
| 724-40 | 'Izz- <i>al</i> -dīn A'zam- <i>al</i> -mulk . . . (Satgāon) | 1323-39 |

* The following six governors belonged to the family of Balban, the Sultān of Dehli, see the genealogy p. 301.

B. KINGS

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|---|-----------|
| 739—984 | | 1338—1576 |
| 739-50 | Fakhr- <i>al</i> -dīn Mubārak Shāh (East Bengal) | 1338-49 |
| 750-3 | Ikhtiyār- <i>al</i> -dīn Ghāzī Shāh (East Bengal) | 1349-52 |
| 740-6 | ‘Alā- <i>al</i> -dīn ‘Alī Shāh (West Bengal) | 1339-45 |

HOUSE OF ILYĀS

| | | |
|--------|---|---------|
| 740-6 | Shams- <i>al</i> -dīn Ilyās Shāh (contending in West Bengal) | 1339-45 |
| 746 | „ (West Bengal) | 1345 |
| 753-9 | „ (all Bengal) | 1352-8 |
| 759-92 | Sikandar Shāh 1 b. Ilyās | 1358-89 |
| 792 | Ghiyāth- <i>al</i> -dīn A‘zam Shāh b. Sikandar (<i>rebels</i> 1370) <i>reigns</i> | 1389 |
| 799 | Sayf- <i>al</i> -dīn Ḥamza Shāh b. A‘zam | 1396 |
| 809 | Shams- <i>al</i> -dīn b. Ḥamza | 1406 |

HOUSE OF RĀJA KĀNS

| | | |
|-----|--|------|
| 812 | Shihāb- <i>al</i> -dīn Bāyazīd Shāh (with Rāja Kāns) | 1409 |
| 817 | Jalāl- <i>al</i> -dīn Moḥammad Shāh b. Rāja Kāns . | 1414 |
| 835 | Shāms- <i>al</i> -dīn Aḥmad Shāh b. Moḥammad . | 1431 |

HOUSE OF ILYĀS (*restored*)

| | | |
|-----|--|------|
| 846 | Nāṣir- <i>al</i> -dīn Maḥmūd Shāh 1 | 1442 |
| 864 | Rukn- <i>al</i> -dīn Bārbak Shāh b. Maḥmūd 1 . | 1459 |
| 879 | Shams- <i>al</i> -dīn Yūsuf Shāh b. Bārbak . . . | 1474 |
| 886 | Sikandar Shāh 11 b. Yūsuf | 1481 |
| 886 | Jalāl- <i>al</i> -dīn Faṭḥ Shāh b. Maḥmūd 1 . . | 1481 |

HAFSHI KINGS

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|--|------|
| 892 | Sultān Shāhzāda Bārbak | 1486 |
| 892 | Sayf-al-dīn Firūz Shāh I | 1486 |
| 895 | Nāṣir-al-dīn Maḥmūd Shāh II b. Faṭḥ Shāh (<i>cf. Ilyās stock</i>) | 1489 |
| 896 | Shams-al-dīn Abū-I-Naṣr Muẓaffar Shāh | 1490 |

HOUSE OF ḤOSAYN SHĀH

| | | |
|------|---|-------|
| 899 | 'Alā-al-dīn Ḥosayn Shāh | 1493 |
| 925 | Nāṣir-al-dīn Naṣrat Shāh b. Ḥosayn | 1518 |
| 939 | 'Alā-al-dīn Firūz Shāh III b. Naṣrat | 1532 |
| 939 | Ghiyāth-al-dīn Maḥmūd Shāh III b. Ḥosayn (partial rule 1526) | 1532 |
| —944 | (<i>Conquest by Humāyūn</i>) | —1537 |

HOUSE OF MOHAMMAD SŪR

| | | |
|-----|---|------|
| 960 | Shams-al-dīn Moḥammad Sūr Ghāzī Shāh | 1552 |
| 962 | Bahādur Shāh (Khidr) b. Moḥammad Sūr | 1554 |
| 968 | Ghiyāth-al-dīn Jalāl Shāh b. Moḥammad Sūr | 1560 |
| 971 | (Son of preceding) | 1563 |

HOUSE OF SULAYMĀN KARĀRĀNĪ

| | | |
|------|---|-------|
| 971 | Sulaymān Khān Karārānī (Bihār and Bengal) | 1563 |
| 980 | Bāyazīd Shāh b. Sulaymān | 1572 |
| 980 | Dāwūd Shāh b. Sulaymān | 1572 |
| —984 | [<i>Mogul Emperors</i>] | —1576 |

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|---------------------------------|-----------|
| 796—905 | 107. SHARKĪ KINGS OF JAUNPŪR | 1394—1500 |

(‘KINGS OF THE EAST’)

Khawāja-Jahān, the vezīr of Maḥmūd of the house of Taghlaq, deserted his youthful sovereign and founded an independent government at Jaunpūr, whence he and his successors held sway for a time over Bihār, Oudh, Kanauj, and Barāich, with considerable state, as their noble monuments testify; and made war upon their former masters at Dehlī (which they twice besieged), and their neighbours the kings of Mālwa. In 1476 (881, or according to some historians 879) Jaunpūr was conquered by Sikandar b. Bahlōl and reunited to Dehlī; but the adherents of the banished Ḥosayn Shāh endeavoured for some years to restore the fallen dynasty.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|---|-------|
| 796 | Khawāja-Jahān | 1394 |
| 802 | Mubārak Shāh | 1399 |
| 803 | Shams-al-dīn Ibrāhīm Shāh Sharkī b. Mubārak | 1400 |
| 844 | Maḥmūd Shāh b. Ibrāhīm | 1440 |
| 861 | Moḥammad Shāh (jointly with his father Maḥmūd) | 1456 |
| 863 | Ḥosayn Shāh b. Maḥmūd | 1458 |
| —905 | died to Bengal 881, died 905 | —1500 |

[*Sultāns of Dehlī*]

| A. H. | | A. D. |
|---------|----------------------------|-----------|
| 804—937 | 108. KINGS OF MĀLWA | 1401—1530 |

Mālwa was among the old Rājput kingdoms which longest withstood the Moḥammadan invasion. It had boasted one of the most illustrious of the ancient Hindū dynasties, who made their capital, Ujjayn, a seat of learning and science. Three centuries of contest elapsed before it was subdued, in the time of Sulṭān Balban of Dehlī. Its natural boundaries were the Narbadā on the south, the Chambal on the north, and Gujarāt and Bandal-khand on the west and east. Under the Khaljī kings, however, it included Hūshangābād, Ajmīr, Rantambhor, and Elichpūr, and even Chitōr was sometimes forced to pay tribute. Its Moḥammadan capital, Mandū, founded by Hūshang Ghōrī, stood on a spacious plateau surrounded by precipices, and was famous for its palaces and mosques.

Two successive Moḥammadan dynasties reigned in Mālwa. The first was founded by Dilāwar Khān Ghōrī, a governor of the king of Dehlī, and consisted of himself, his son, and his grandson. The second dynasty was established

by Maḥmūd Khalji, the vezīr of the grandson of Dilāwar, and fell when Mālwa was annexed in 1530 (937) by the neighbouring king of Gujarāt, with whom the rulers of Mālwa had waged perpetual war. The Khaljis were a fighting race, and had carried the arms of Mālwa to the gates of Dehli in the north and Bīdar in the south, whilst with the Rājputs of Chitōr and Chanderī their hostilities were unceasing.*

I. GHŌRĪS

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|---|------|
| 804 | Dilāwar Khān Ghōrī | 1401 |
| 808 | Hūshang (Alp Khān) b. Dilāwar | 1405 |
| 838 | Moḥammad Ghaznī Khān b. Hūshang | 1434 |

II. KHALJĪS

| | | |
|------|----------------------------------|-------|
| 839 | Maḥmūd Shāh I Khalji | 1435 |
| 880 | Ghiyāth Shāh b. Maḥmūd | 1475 |
| 906 | Nāṣir Shāh b. Ghiyāth | 1500 |
| 916 | Maḥmūd II b. Nāṣir | 1510 |
| —937 | [Kings of Gujarāt] | —1530 |

* The list of the Kings of Kashmīr should follow here; but their chronology is so uncertain that an accurate table can hardly be constructed. See my *Catalogue of the Coins of the Muhammadan States of India*, xlvii, 68.

A.H.

A.D.

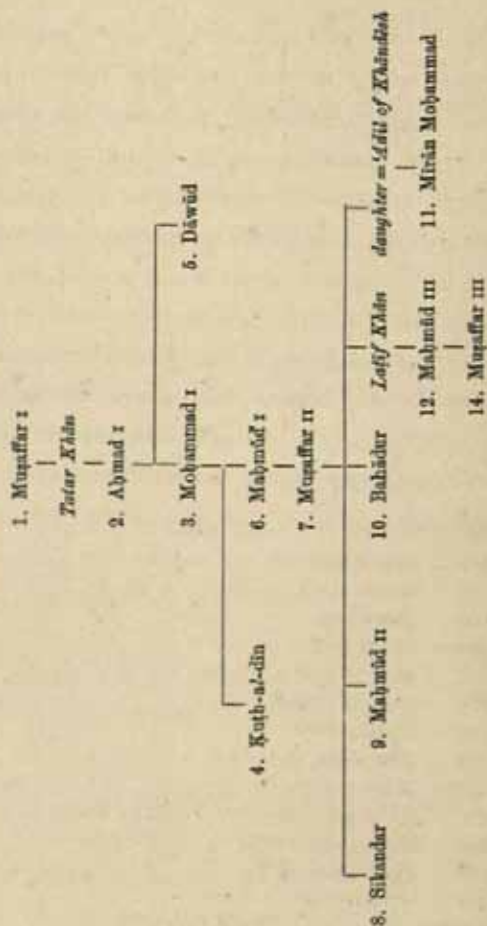
799—990 109. **KINGS OF GUJARĀT** 1396—1572

Gujarāt owed its long immunity from Moḥammadan subjection to its inaccessible position, beyond the great desert and the hills connecting the Vindhya with the Aravali range, which rendered it difficult to invade except by sea. It was not until the time of 'Alā-*al-dīn* of Dehli, at the close of the 13th century, that Gujarāt became a Moḥammadan province. At the end of the 14th century it became independent again, but its rulers were now Muslims instead of Hindūs. Zafar Khān, the son of a Rājput convert, was appointed to the government of Gujarāt in 794, and assumed independence in 1396 (799). He found himself surrounded by enemies, Rājput rājas and wild tribes of Bhīls, and possessed of but a narrow territory between the hills and the sea, including, however, a considerable stretch of the coast, as far as Sūrāt at least. He soon enlarged his dominions by the conquest of Īdar and Diu; plundered Jhalor; and even took possession of Mālwa for a space in 1407. Aḥmad Shāh I, his successor, founded Aḥmadābād, which became the capital of the dynasty and afterwards of the Mogul

province, and is still an important city. Maḥmūd Shāh I not only carried on the traditional wars of his family with Mālwa and Khāndēsh, but added the stronghold of Jūnagarh in Kattiāwār, and Champanīr, to his dominions, and kept a large fleet to subdue the pirates of the islands and to attack the Portuguese; to whom Bahādur Shāh, the conqueror of Mālwa, conceded the right to build a factory at Diu, and at whose hands he met his death. The last years of the dynasty were clouded by the intrigues of factious nobles, and the kings became mere puppets; until Akbar's conquest in 1572 (980) restored prosperity to the harassed province.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|--|-------|
| 799 | Muḥaffar Shāh I Zafar Khān | 1396 |
| 814 | Aḥmad Shāh I | 1411 |
| 816 | Moḥammad Ḳarīm Shāh | 1443 |
| 855 | Ḳuṭb-al-dīn | 1451 |
| 863 | Dāwūd Shāh | 1458 |
| 863 | Maḥmūd Shāh I Baykara | 1458 |
| 917 | Muḥaffar Shāh II | 1511 |
| 932 | Sikandar Shāh | 1525 |
| 932 | Nāṣir Khān Maḥmūd II | 1525 |
| 932 | Bahādur Shāh | 1526 |
| 943 | Mirān Moḥammad Shāh Fārūḳī (of Khāndēsh) | 1536 |
| 944 | Maḥmūd Shāh III | 1537 |
| 961 | Aḥmad Shāh II | 1553 |
| 969 | Muḥaffar Shāh III Ḥabīb | 1561 |
| —980 | [Mogul Emperors] | —1572 |

KINGS OF GUJARĀT



A.H. A.D.
801—1008 110. KINGS OF KHĀNDĒSH 1399—1599

Nāṣir Khān, the first Moḥammad ruler of Khāndēsh who asserted his independence of the kingdom of Dehli, claimed to be descended from the caliph 'Omar. He was related by marriage to the kings of Gujarāt, from whose dominions Khāndēsh (comprising the lower valley of the Taptī) was separated only by a belt of forest. The capital Burhānpūr was founded near the fortress of Asīrgarh. Akbar took Burhānpūr and received the homage of its king in 1562; but Khāndēsh was not fully incorporated in the Mogul Empire until 1599 (1008), when Asīrgarh fell after a six months' siege.

| A.D. | | A.H. |
|-------|---------------------------------|-------|
| 772 | <i>Malik Rāja</i> | 1370 |
| 801 | Nāṣir Khān | 1399 |
| 841 | Mīrān 'Adil Khān I | 1437 |
| 844 | Mīrān Mubārak I | 1441 |
| 861 | 'Adil Khān II | 1467 |
| 909 | Dāwūd Khān | 1503 |
| 916 | 'Adil Khān III | 1510 |
| 926 | Mīrān Moḥammad Shāh I | 1520 |
| 942 | Mīrān Mubārak II | 1535 |
| 974 | Mīrān Moḥammad II | 1566 |
| 984 | 'Alī Khān | 1576 |
| 1005 | Bahādur Shāh | 1596 |
| —1008 | [Mogul Emperors] | —1599 |

THE DECCAN

A.H.

748—933

A.D.

111. BAHMANIDS

1347—1526

(KINGS OF KULBARGA, ETC.)

The Deccan was partly conquered by Moḥammadans for the first time by 'Ala-*al*-dīn Moḥammad of Dehli, who in 1294 seized Deogīri and Elichpūr and thus formed a new province south of the Sātpura mountains. Moḥammad b. Taghlaḳ enlarged the Deccan province by an invasion of Telingana in 1322, and for a time made Deogīri (re-named Dawlatābād) the capital of his empire. Among the numerous revolts which disturbed his reign that of the recently organized province of the Deccan was the earliest to achieve independence. From 1347 for nearly two centuries the Bahmanid kings of Kulbarga, Warangal and Bidar, held sway over the northern half of the Deccan above the Kistna. Their founder was Ḥasan Gāngū, an Afghān in the employment of a Brahman at Dehli. He rose to high office under the Taghlaḳ Sultāns and received the title of Zafar Khān. When the revolt against Moḥammad b. Taghlaḳ broke out in the Deccan, Ḥasan placed himself at the head of

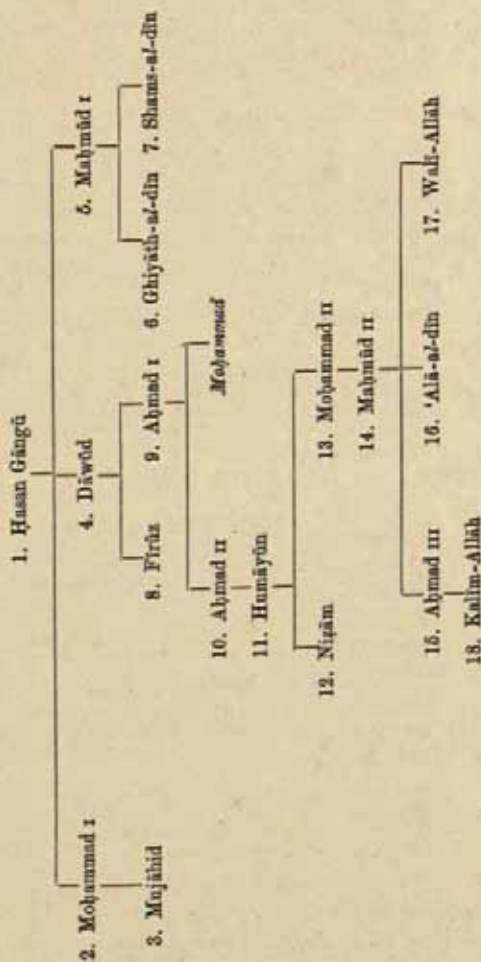
the insurgents, drove the royal troops from the country, and ascended the throne at Kulbarga under the style of 'Alā-*al*-dīn Ḥasan Gāngū Bahmanī.* His dominions marched on the north with Berār, on the east with Telingana, whilst the river Kistna and the sea formed the southern and western boundaries. They included the greater part of the modern Bombay Presidency south of Sūrāt and most of the Nizām's territory. In addition, the Rājas of Telingana and Vijāyanagar were from time to time compelled at the point of the sword to pay homage and tribute. Under 'Alā-*al*-dīn Aḥmad II the Konkan was reduced and the neighbouring kings of Khāndēsh and Gujarāt were defeated. In 1471 Moḥammad Shāh II carried his arms into Orīsa, seized Conjeveram, and made war in the south upon the Rāja of Belgāon; so that the Bahmanids' sway extended from sea to sea and included nearly the whole of the Deccan north of Mysore. The extension of territory was followed by a new division into provinces, and the division led to disintegration. Yūsuf 'Ādil Shāh, a successful general of Moḥammad Shāh II, declared the independence of the

* See an article by James Gibb in *Numismatic Chronicle*, III. I. 91-115; and my *Catalogue of the Coins of the Muhammadan States of India in the British Museum*, lxi-lxvi.

new province of Bijāpūr; Nizām-al-mulk prepared the way for the separation of Junayr; 'Imād-al-mulk was proclaimed king in Berār, and the loss of these provinces was speedily followed by the independence of the rest and the extinction of the parent dynasty. The *'Imād Shāhs* of Berār, *Nizām Shāhs* of Aḥmadnagar, *Barid Shāhs* of Bīdar, *Adil Shāhs* of Bijāpūr, and *Kuṣb Shāhs* of Golkonda divided the kingdom of the Bahmanids amongst them.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|------|--|-------|
| 748 | Ḥasan Gāngū 'Alā-al-dīn Zafar Khān | 1347 |
| 759 | Moḥammad Shāh I | 1358 |
| 776 | Mujāhid Shāh | 1375 |
| 780 | Dāwūd Shāh | 1378 |
| 780 | Maḥmūd Shāh I | 1378 |
| 799 | Ghiyāth-al-dīn | 1397 |
| 799 | Shams-al-dīn | 1397 |
| 800 | Tāj-al-dīn Firūz Shāh | 1397 |
| 825 | Aḥmad Shāh I | 1421 |
| 838 | 'Alā-al-dīn Aḥmad Shāh II | 1435 |
| 862 | 'Alā-al-dīn Humāyūn Shāh | 1457 |
| 865 | Nizām Shāh | 1461 |
| 867 | Moḥammad Shāh II | 1463 |
| 887 | Maḥmūd Shāh II | 1482 |
| 924 | Aḥmad Shāh III | 1518 |
| 927 | 'Alā-al-dīn Shāh | 1520 |
| 929 | Wālī-Allāh Shāh | 1522 |
| 932 | Kalīm-Allāh Shāh | 1525 |
| —933 | [Five Deccan Dynasties] | —1526 |

BAHMANIDS



| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|--------------------------------|-----------|
| 890—980 | 112. 'IMĀD SHĀHS | 1484—1572 |
| | (BERĀR) | |
| 890 | Fath-Allāh | 1484 |
| 910 | 'Alā- <i>aḷ</i> -dīn | 1504 |
| c. 936 | Daryā | c. 1529 |
| c. 968 | Burhān | c. 1560 |
| 976 | Tufāl (usurper) | 1568 |
| —980 | | —1572 |
| | [<i>Nizām Shāhs</i>] | |

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|----------|---------------------------------|-----------|
| 896—1004 | 113. NIZĀM SHĀHS | 1490—1595 |
| | (AḤMADNAGAR) | |
| 896 | Aḥmad r b. Nizām Shāh | 1490 |
| 914 | Burhān I | 1508 |
| 961 | Ḥosayn | 1553 |
| 972 | Murtaḍā | 1565 |
| 996 | Mirān Ḥosayn | 1588 |
| 997 | Ismā'īl | 1589 |
| 999 | Burhān II | 1590 |
| 1003 | Ibrāhīm | 1594 |
| 1004 | Aḥmad II | 1594 |
| 1004 | Bahādur* | 1595 |
| | [<i>Mogul Emperors</i>] | |

* Murtaḍa II reigned nominally from 1598-1607; and the province then came under the domination of Malik Amber.

'IMĀD SHĀHS

321

| A. H. | | A. D. |
|-------------|----------------------|--------------|
| 897—c. 1018 | 114. BARĪD SHĀHS | 1492—c. 1609 |
| | (BĪDAR) | |
| 897 | Kāsim I. | 1492 |
| 910 | Amir I | 1504 |
| 945 | 'Ali | 1549 |
| 990 | Ibrāhīm | 1562 |
| 997 | Kāsim II | 1569 |
| 1000 | Mirza 'Ali | 1572 |
| c. 1018 | Amir II | c. 1609 |

| | | |
|----------|---------------------------|-----------|
| 895—1097 | 115. 'ĀDIL SHĀHS | 1489—1686 |
| | (NIZĀRŪN) | |
| 895 | Yūsuf 'Ādil Shāh. | 1489 |
| 916 | Ismā'īl | 1511 |
| 941 | Maliū | 1534 |
| 941 | Ibrāhīm I | 1535 |
| 965 | 'Ali I | 1557 |
| 987 | Ibrāhīm II | 1579 |
| 1035 | Moḥammad | 1626 |
| 1070 | 'Ali II | 1660 |
| —1097 | [Mogul Emperors] | —1686 |

| | | |
|----------|-------------------------|-----------|
| 918—1098 | 116. KUTB SHĀHS | 1512—1687 |
| | (GOLKONDA) | |
| 918 | Sultān Quli. | 1512 |
| 940 | Jamshīd | 1543 |
| 957 | Subḥān Quli | 1550 |
| 957 | Ibrāhīm | 1550 |
| 989 | Moḥammad Quli | 1581 |
| 1020 | Abd.-Allāh | 1611 |
| 1083 | Abū-l-Ḥasan | 1672 |
| —1098 | [Mogul Emperors] | —1687 |

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|-----------|---------------------|------------|
| 932--1275 | 117. MOGUL EMPERORS | 1525--1857 |
| | OF HINDŪSTĀN | |

Bābar, the Mongol conqueror of Hindūstān, was descended in the fifth generation from Timūr (see the genealogical table p. 268) and was born in 1482, in Farghāna, where his father was governor. Driven from his native province by the Uzbeks of Shaybānī about 1504, Bābar sought his recompense in the subjection of Afghānistān. He took possession of Badakhshān in 1503 (909), occupied Kābul in the following year, and annexed Kandahār in 1507. For many years he meditated the invasion of India, but it was not until 1525 (932) that he felt himself strong enough to descend at the head of his Turks (he abhorred the name of Mongol*) upon the Panjāb and occupy Lahore. On the 20th April 1526 he signally defeated the army of Sulṭān Ibrāhīm Lōdī of Dehli on the historic plain of Pānīpat, and the victory was followed by the rapid

* In Arabic Mughal, whence the English Mogul or Moghul.

occupation of Dehli and Agra, and the submission of the northern parts of Hindūstān, from the Indus to the borders of Bengal. Bābar died in 1530 (937) before he could subdue the kingdoms of Bengal, Gujarāt and Mālwa; still less had he approached the Deccan.

His son Humāyūn, though but nineteen years of age, endeavoured to complete his father's work. His attempt to reduce the united kingdom of Gujarāt and Mālwa was, however, abortive; and the Afghāns of Bengal, led by the genius of Shīr Shāh, the usurping king of Bihār, succeeded after an obstinate struggle in driving Humāyūn step by step to the west. A treacherous attack on the Mogul camp at Chonsa in 1539 (946) banished them from Bengal; and a total defeat at Kanauj in the following year gave Shīr Shāh the command of all Hindūstān (but not Gujarāt), and compelled Humāyūn to seek refuge, first in Sind, and then in Persia. Fifteen years passed before the Mogul Emperor returned to re-conquer his empire. Meanwhile Shīr Shāh, after laying the foundations of the administrative organization which Akbar afterwards perfected, died, and the disunion among his successors paved the way for the invader. In 1555 Humāyūn recovered Dehli, and there died in January 1556 (963).

Humāyūn had only begun the work of reconquest; it was left to his son Akbar, a youth of fourteen, to finish it. The boy's guardian Bayrām Khān, a Turkomān, utterly defeated the Indian forces under Himū on the 5th November 1556 on the same plain of Pānīpat where Bābar had won his great victory. By this single blow Akbar found himself master of the better part of Hindūstān, and, young as he was, he soon took the reins of power into his own hands. Dehlī and Agra were his by the victory of Pānīpat; Gwālīōr fell in 1558 (966), Jaunpūr in 1559, and Mālwa and Khāndēsh were temporarily overrun in 1561-2. Rājputāna submitted after the storming of Chitōr in 1567 (975), and Gujarāt was reduced in 1572 (980). Bengal, which had nominally admitted the Mogul sovereignty, rose in rebellion, but was subdued in 1575-7 (983-4). Kashmīr was annexed in 1587 and Kāndahār six years later.*

‘Akbar was too wise to meddle seriously in Deccan politics. All he wanted was to secure himself against invasion from the south; and with this view he annexed the rugged borderland of Khāndēsh, and used its capital,

* See my *History of the Mogul Emperors of Hindustan illustrated by their Coins*, xii. ff.

Burhānpūr, with the rocky fastness of Aśīrgarh, [which had withstood his siege and his English gunners for six months before it succumbed in 1601 (1008),] as outposts to defend his southern frontier. He also subdued Berār and took the fortress of Aḥmadnagar (1600).^{*} The kings of Bījāpūr and Golkonda paid him homage and offered him tribute: but he never attempted annexation in the Deccan, beyond securing his frontier; nor had the Deccan *sūbah* or province, even in this limited sense, been organized as thoroughly as the rest of the empire at the time of his death in 1605 (1014).

The true successor of Moḥammad b. Taghlak in his dreams of Deccan conquest was Aurangzīb, the sixth Mogul Emperor. As governor during Shāh-Jahān's reign in 1636-43 he had organized the four divisions of the Deccan province — Dawlatābād (including Aḥmadnagar), Khāndēsh, Telingana, and Berār; and he made the king of Golkonda a vassal in 1656. The fratricidal struggle which preceded his accession to the throne at Dehli in 1659 (1069), and the work of ordering his administration, diverted his attention from the Deccan for some years; and it was not till 1681 that he began that long series

^{*} See my *Aurangzīb* (Rulers of India) pp. 144—204.

of campaigns in the south which did not end till his own death twenty-six years later. He besieged and took Bijāpūr in 1686 and Golkonda in 1687, and put an end to the dynasties of the 'Ādil and Ḳuṭb Shāhs. But against the new power of the Marāthas which had arisen in the Deccan in the middle of the 17th century he could make no head; and though his armies traversed the Deccan in all directions and took many forts, the country and its hardy mountaineers were never subdued. Yet when Aurangzīb died in 1707 his dominions stretched from Kābul to the mouths of the Hūgli, and from Sūrat across Haydarābād to Masulipatan and even Madras. All India, save the apex of the Deccan, was his in name; but except in forts and cities, the possession was nominal in the south.

The empire of the Great Moguls began to break up after the death of Aurangzīb. His successors were for the most part weak and debauched; and the rising powers of the Sikhs, Jāts, and Marāthas were young and strong. The invasions of Nādir Shāh in 1738, and Aḥmad Durrānī in 1748, 1757, etc., were signs of the feebleness of the empire. Fifty years after Aurangzīb's death the Marāthas were supreme in the south, except where the newly-

founded dynasty of the Nizām kept them at arm's length, and were pushing their way through Gujarāt up to Dehli; the Rājputs had ceased to acknowledge the Mogul supremacy; the Sikhs were gradually winning the mastery of the Panjāb from the Afghāns; the Jāts were practically independent near Agra; Oudh was virtually a separate kingdom, and so was Bengal; though the little patches of territory at Calcutta, Bombay and Madras scarcely portended the great future of the East India Company. The progress of the Company's arms need not be related here. The battle of Plassey (1757) and Buxar (1764) laid the ghost of the Mogul Empire, though the fiction of Mogul sovereignty was maintained till 1857. The last three emperors were pensioners of the British Crown; and Bahādur II, after upsetting his puppet-throne by joining in the Mutiny, died in exile at Rangoon in 1862.

| A.H. | | A.D. |
|---------|--|---------|
| 932 | Bābar, Zahir-al-din* | 1526 |
| 937 | Humāyūn, Naṣir-al-din | 1530 |
| 963 | Akbar, Jalāl-al-din | 1556 |
| 1014 | Jahāngir, Nūr-al-din | 1605 |
| 1037 | <i>Dāwar-Bakhsh</i> | 1627-8 |
| 1037 | Shāh-Jahān, Shihāb-al-din | 1628 |
| 1068 | <i>Murād-Bakhsh</i> (in Gujarāt) | 1658 |
| 1068-70 | <i>Shujā'</i> (in Bengal) | 1658-60 |
| 1069 | Aurangzib 'Ālamgīr, Muḥyi-al-din | 1659 |
| 1118 | <i>A'zam Shāh</i> | 1707 |
| 1119-20 | <i>Kām-Bakhsh</i> | 1708 |
| 1119 | Shāh-'Ālam Bahādur Shāh I, Ḳuṭb-al-din | 1707 |
| 1124 | Jahāndār, Mu'izz-al-din | 1712 |
| 1124 | Farrukh-siyar | 1713 |
| 1131 | Rafi'-al-darajāt, Shams-al-din | 1719 |
| 1131 | Rafi'-al-dawla Shāh-Jahān II | 1719 |
| 1131 | <i>Nikū-siyar</i> | 1719 |
| 1132 | <i>Ibrāhīm</i> | 1720 |
| 1131 | Moḥammad, Nāṣir-al-din | 1719 |
| 1161 | Aḥmad | 1748 |
| 1167 | 'Ālamgīr II, 'Aziz-al-din | 1754 |
| 1173-4 | <i>Shāh-Jāhan III</i> | 1759-60 |
| 1173 | Shāh-'Ālam, Jalāl-al-din | 1759 |
| 1202-3 | <i>Bīdar-Bakht</i> | 1788 |
| 1221 | Moḥammad Akbar II | 1806 |
| 1253 | Bahādur Shāh II | 1837 |
| -1275 | [Great Britain] | -1857 |

* Bābar and most of his successors had the Arabic name Moḥammad in addition to their Persian names. In the list, the names of usurpers and pretenders are printed in italics.

A.H.

A.D.

1160—1311 118. AMĪRS OF AFGHĀNISTĀN 1747—1893

The modern history of Afghānistān as an independent State begins in 1747. After the deposition of the Ghōrids, the country ceased to possess a dynasty of its own,* and merely formed part of a larger kingdom. It became a province of the Īl-khāns of Persia, and then of the Timūrid empire; and after the establishment of the Moguls in India, it was sometimes part of their dominions and sometimes belonged to the Shāhs of Persia; or, more often, was divided between the two. Kābul and Kandahār were generally in the possession of the Moguls until after the death of Aurangzīb, whilst Herāt belonged to Persia. In 1737 Nādir Shāh, the Afshārid ruler of Persia, seized Kābul and Kandahār and made his memorable descent upon India. After his assassination in 1747 the Afghāns resolved to be independent of Persia, and chose Aḥmad Khān the chief of the Abdālī or Durrānī tribe to be their Shāh. The post of vezīr, or second man in the state, was conferred

* The line of the Kart Maliks were a local exception at Herāt (p. 252).

upon Jamāl Khān the hereditary chief of the rival tribe of the Bārakzais. Henceforward for nearly a century this arrangement subsisted: the Shāh was a Durrānī and the Vezīr a Bārakzai.

Aḥmad Shāh reduced all Afghānistān, conquered Herāt and Khurāsān, invaded India repeatedly, occupied Dehli for a time, and annexed Kashmīr, Sind, and part of the Panjāb; but his Indian possessions gradually passed over to the growing power of the Sikhs, who had become masters of the Panjāb before the end of the 18th century. A massacre of the Bārakzais by Zamān Shāh, Aḥmad's grandson, instead of diminishing, increased the influence of the hereditary vezīrs, who exercised the chief power during the nominal reign of Maḥmūd Shāh and the early reign of Shāh Shujā'. Several attempts were made to oust them from their dominant position; but the blinding and murder of Faṭḥ Khān Bārakzai in 1818 was the signal for the deposition of the Durrānī dynasty, and after some years of anarchy Dost Moḥammad, the brother of the murdered Vezīr, took possession of the throne (1826), as the first Bārakzai Amīr of Afghānistān.

During the decline of the later Durrānīs the claim of Persia to the possession of Herāt had been pressed by force

of arms. Since its conquest by Aḥmad Shāh the city had been held by various Afghān princes, with little dependence upon the central government. In 1816 the Persians had attacked Herāt, but had been repulsed by Faṭḥ Khān the Bārakzai. In 1837, urged on by Russia, the Shāh of Persia again advanced upon the 'key of Afghānistān,' and again, after a ten months' siege, protracted by the splendid defence of Eldred Pottinger, was forced to retire (1838). When Dost Moḥammad showed signs of encouraging Russian overtures, the British Government of India, excited by the narrow escape of Herāt, and alarmed at the unfriendly attitude of the Amīr, declared war, and the Afghān campaigns and disasters of 1839-1842 ensued. Shāh-Shujā', the representative of the deposed Durrānīs, was in an evil day restored to the Amīrate, and Sir William Macnaghten was posted at Kābul as British Resident. Dost Moḥammad had surrendered and remained passive, but his son Akbar Khān continued the resistance of the Bārakzais. In Nov. 1841 Macnaghten and Burnes were treacherously murdered, and of the sixteen thousand British troops and camp followers who left Kābul under a safe-conduct only one escaped to tell the tale of slaughter. The massacre was avenged by Pollock's army

in 1842, and the Afghāns thenceforward, for nearly forty years, were allowed to manage their own internal affairs. Dost Moḥammad died in 1863, the subsidized ally of England; and the history of Afghānistān since his death has consisted chiefly in the struggles of his sons and grandsons for the throne. A second attempt to force a British Resident at Kābul upon the Amīr, as a check upon the envoys of Russia, led to the defeat and deposition of Shīr 'Alī, the murder of Cavagnari, and the campaigns of Stewart and Roberts in 1879-81. The Amīr 'Abd al-Raḥmān, then established by the British, has since, on the whole, succeeded in holding the mastery over his refractory subjects.

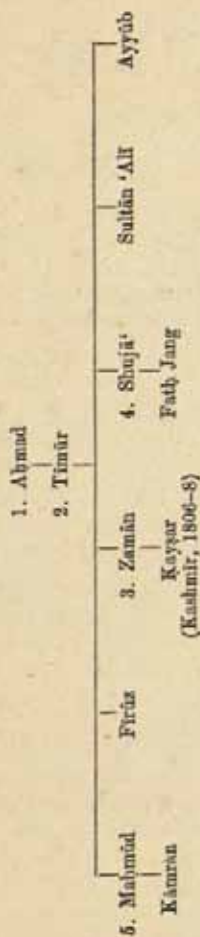
| A. H. | DURRĀNĪS* | A. D. |
|-------|---|-------|
| 1160 | Aḥmad Shāh | 1747 |
| 1187 | Timūr Shāh | 1773 |
| 1207 | Zamān Shāh | 1793 |
| 1216 | Shujā'-al-mulk (Shāh Shujā') | 1801 |
| 1216 | Maḥmūd Shāh | 1801 |
| 1218 | Shujā' (2nd reign) | 1803 |
| 1224 | Maḥmūd (2nd reign; latterly at Herāt, to 1245) | 1809 |
| 1233 | 'Alī Shāh (at Kābul) | 1817 |
| 1233 | Ayyūb Shāh (at Peshāwar and Kashmīr) | 1817 |
| 1245 | Kāmrān (at Herāt, to 1258) | 1829 |
| 1255 | Shujā' (3rd reign) | 1839 |
| 1258 | Faṭḥ Jang (fled the same year) | 1842 |

BĀRAKZAIS

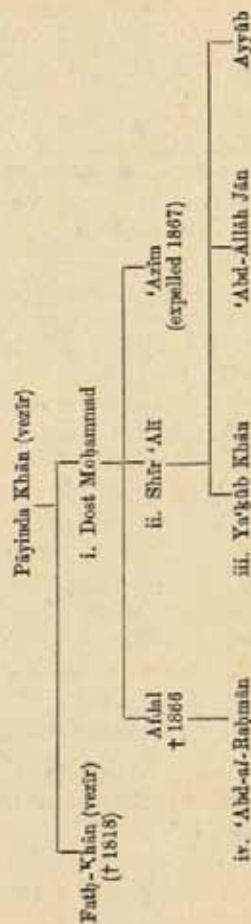
| | | |
|--------|---|---------|
| 1242 | Dost Moḥammad | 1826 |
| 1255-8 | Shujā' restored | 1839-42 |
| 1280 | Shīr Ali (Afḍal and 'Azīm at Balkh and Kābul 1865-7) | 1863 |
| 1296 | Ya'qūb Khān | 1879 |
| 1296 | 'Abd-ul-Raḥmān Khān <i>regnant</i> | 1879 |

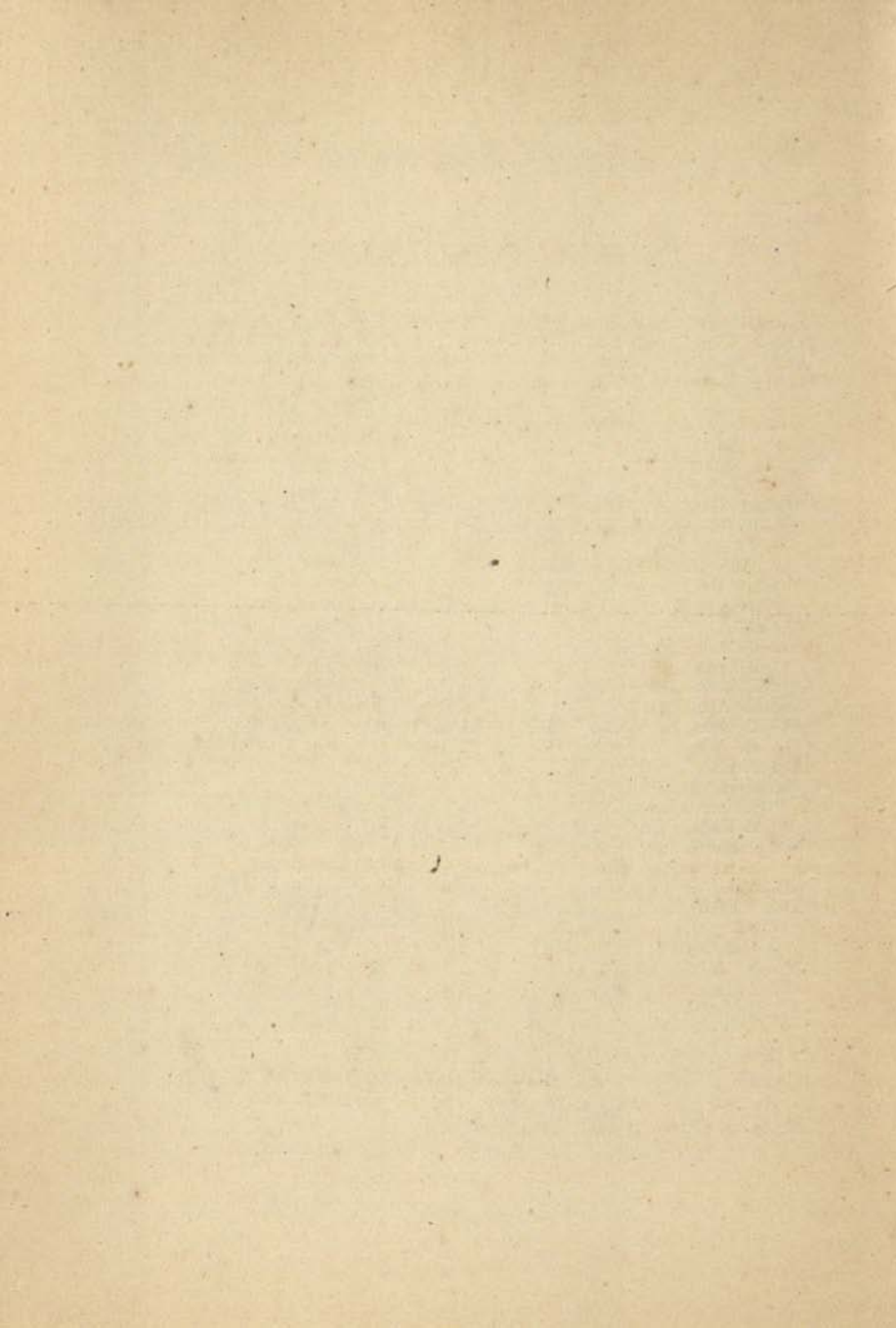
* The list and pedigree of the Durrānīs is adapted from an article by M. Longworth Dames in the *Numismatic Chronicle*, III. viii. 325-63 (1888).

DURRĀNĪS



BĀRAKZAIS





INDEX TO RULERS*

- 'Abd-al-Hamid, 'Othmānī, 195
- Abāgā, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220
- Abak, *Bārid*, 161
- 'Abbād - Mu'tadid, 'Abbādid, 25
- 'Abbādid, 25; 20, 27, 42
- 'Abbās, uncle of Moḥammad, 3
- 'Abbās, *Khedive*, 85
- 'Abbās, *Safavids*, 259
- 'Abbās, *Zuray'Id*, 97
- 'Abbāsīd CALIPHS, 12, 13; 3, 6, 7, 19, 34, 36, 42, 60, 67, 68, 69, 74, 89, 109, 111, 123, 140, 161, 165, 188, 217, 286, 296
- 'Abbāsīd CALIPHS OF EGYPT, 3
- 'Abd-al-'Azīz Maṣṣūr, 'Amīrīd, 26
- 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Du'afid*, 125
- 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Ḥafīd*, 50
- 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Jānīd*, 276
- 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Mamlūk*, 83
- 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Marīnīd*, 57
- 'Abd-al-'Azīz, 'Othmānī, 195
- 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Shaybānīd*, 272
- 'Abd-al-Ḥakīm, *Marīnīd*, 57
- 'Abd-al-Ḥalīm, *Marīnīd*, 57
- 'Abdālīs see DURRĀNĪS
- 'Abd-al-Kādir, *Fa'furīd*, 91
- 'Abd-al-Karīm Satak, *Ilak*, 135
- 'Abd-al-Karīm, *Khāṣṣand*, 280
- 'Abd-Allāh, *Aghlabīd*, 37
- 'Abd-Allāh b. Tāshfīn, *Almoravīd*, 41, 42
- 'Abd-Allāh -'Ādil, *Almohad*, 47
- 'Abd-Allāh, *Fāṭimīd*, 71
- 'Abd-Allāh, *Filālī Sharīf*, 61
- 'Abd-Allāh, *Golden Horde*, 230
- 'Abd-Allāh, *Hamdānīd (Yaman)*, 95
- 'Abd-Allāh Abū-l-Hayjā, *Hamdānīd of -Māṣīl*, 111
- 'Abd-Allāh, *Ḥasanī Sharīf*, 61
- 'Abd-Allāh, *Khiva*, 279
- 'Abd-Allāh, *Marīnīd*, 58
- 'Abd-Allāh, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21
- 'Abd-Allāh, *Rasūlīd*, 99
- 'Abd-Allāh, *Shaybānīd*, 271, 272
- 'Abd-Allāh, *Tūḥīrīd*, 128
- 'Abd-Allāh, *Timūrīd*, 268
- 'Abd-Allāh, *Zayrīd*, 25
- 'Abd-Allāh, *Fa'furīd*, 91
- 'Abd-Allāh, *Zaydīd*, 91
- 'Abd-al-Latīf, *Shaybānīd*, 271
- 'Abd-al-Latīf, *Timūrīd*, 268
- 'Abd-al-Majīd, *Fāṭimīd*, 71
- 'Abd-al-Majīd, 'Othmānī, 195
- 'Abd-al-Malik, 'Amīrīd, 26
- 'Abd-al-Malik, *Ḥasanī Sharīf*, 61
- 'Abd-al-Malik 'Imād-al-dawla, *Hūdīd*, 26
- 'Abd-al-Malik, *Jahwarīd*, 25
- 'Abd-al-Malik, *Omayyad*, 9
- 'Abd-al-Malik, *Sāmānīd*, 132
- 'Abd-al-Murīn, *Almohad*, 45, 47
- 'Abd-al-Murīn, *Jānīd*, 275
- 'Abd-al-Murīn, *Shaybānīd*, 271
- 'Abd-al-Nabī, *Mahdīd*, 96
- 'Abd-al-Raḥmān, *Afghān*, 334
- 'Abd-al-Raḥmān, *Filālī Sharīf*, 61
- 'Abd-al-Raḥmān, *Marīnīd*, 58

* The first number refers to the dynastic list in which the name occurs. In the case of identical names the alphabetical order of the dynasties is followed. Where two or more identical names occur in the same dynasty, the dynastic name is put in the plural. Prefixed words like Abū-, Banū, Ibn, must be sought under the second name.

- 'Abd-al-Rahmān, *Umayyads of Cordova*, 21; 6, 19, 20
 'Abd-al-Rahmān Abū-Tāshfin, *Ziyānids*, 51
 'Abd-al-Rashīd, *Ghaznavids*, 289
 'Abd-al-Razzāk, *Sarbadārid*, 251
 'Abd-al-Wahhāb, *Tahīrid* (Yaman), 101
 'Abd-al-Wāhid -Makhlu', *Almo-had*, 47
 Abd-al-Wāhid -Rashīd, *Almo-had*, 47
 'Abish, *Salgharid*, 173
 Abū-Bakr, *Almoravids*, 42, 43
 Abū-Bakr, 'Amīrid, 26
 Abū-Bakr, *Atābeg of Adharbījān*, 171
 Abū-Bakr, *Ayyūbids*, 77, 78
 Abū-Bakr Shāh, *Dehli*, 300
 Abū-Bakr I -Shadīd, *Hafsid*, 50
 Abū-Bakr II Abū-Yahyā -Muta-wakkil, *Hafsid*, 50
 Abū-Bakr, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Abū-Bakr Abū-Yahyā, *Marīnid*, 57
 Abū-Bakr, *Orthodox Caliph*, 3, 4, 9
 Abū-Bakr, *Salgharid*, 173
 Abū-l-Hasan, *Nasrid*, 28
 Abū-Sa'īd, see Sa'īd, Abū-ADHARNĪĀN, ATĀBEGS OF, 171; 160
 -'Adīd Abū-Mohammad 'Abd-Allāh, *Fātimid*, 71
 'Adīl, *Afshārid*, 259
 -'Adīl, *Almo-had*, 47
 -'Adīl Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr, (Saphadin), *Ayyūbid*, 76-8
 -'Adīl II Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr, *Ayyūbid*, 77
 -'Adīl Girāy, *Krim*, 236
 -'Adīl Zayn-al-dīn Kitbughā, *Mamlūk*, 81
 -'Adīl -Musta'in ('Abbāsīd Caliph), *Mamlūk*, 83
 -'Adīl Badr-al-dīn Salāmīsh, *Mamlūk*, 81
 -'Adīl, *Ortūkid*, 168
 'Adīl Khān, *Khāndīsh*, 315
 'Adīl Shāh, *Dehli*, 300
 'ADIL SHĀHS, 321; 318
 Adsal, *Mongol*, 215
 'Adud - al - dawla Abū - Shujā'
 Khusrū, *Bucayhid*, 141
 'Aḡud-al-dīn Alp-Arslān, *Seljuḡ*, 153; 151
 -Aḡdal Nūr-al-dīn 'Alī, *Ayyūbid*, 78
 Aḡdal, *Afghān*, 334
 -Aḡdal - 'Abbās, *Rasūlid*, 99
 AFGHĀNISTĀN, AMĪRS OF, 330-5
 AFGHĀNS OF DEHLĪ, 300, 303
 AFGHĀNS, SHĀHS OF PERSIA, 259
 Afrāsiyāb, *Hazāraspids*, 175; 174
 AFSHĀRIDS, SHĀHS OF PERSIA, 259
 -Aghlab Abū-'Akāl, *Aghlabid*, 37
 AGHLAIDS, 36, 37; 6, 70
 Ahmad Shāh, *Afghān*, 334; 257, 326, 330
 Ahmad, *Aghlabid*, 37
 Ahmad, *Āk-Kuyunlū*, 254
 Ahmad, *Armenia*, 170
 Ahmad Shāh, *Bahmanids*, 318
 Ahmad Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 Ahmad Mu'izz-al-dawla, *Bucay-hid*, 141; 139, 140
 Ahmad, *Dulafid*, 125
 Ahmad, *Fātimid*, 71
 Ahmad -Dhahabī, *Filālī Sharif*, 61
 Ahmad, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Ahmad Sayyid, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Ahmad Shuykh, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Ahmad Shāh, *Gujarāt*, 313
 Ahmad I -Fadl, *Hafsid*, 50
 Ahmad II -Mustansir, *Hafsid*, 50
 Ahmad, *Hasanī Sharifs*, 61
 Ahmad Nasrat-al-dīn, *Hazāraspid*, 175
 Ahmad Sayf-al-dawla, *Hūdīd*, 26
 Ahmad Sayf-al-dawla -Muḡtadir, *Hūdīd*, 26
 Ahmad -Musta'in, *Hūdīd*, 26
 Ahmad Abū-l-Fawāris, *Ikkshidid*, 69
 Ahmad Khān, *Ilak Khāns*, 135

- Aḥmad, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220
 Aḥmad Sultān, *Jalayr*, 246-8
 Aḥmad, *Mamlūks*, 83
 Aḥmad -Mustanṣir, *Marinid*, 58
 Aḥmad, *Marwānīd*, 118
 Aḥmad, *Mogul*, 328
 Aḥmad Sultān, *Muḥaffarīd*, 248
 Aḥmad -Manṣūr, *Ortukid*, 168
 Aḥmad, *Othmānīd*, 195
 Aḥmad, *Rasūlīd*, 99
 Aḥmad, *Sāmānīd*, 132
 Aḥmad, *Timūrīd*, 268
 Aḥmad, *Tūlūnīd*, 68, 67
 Aḥmad, *Wat'asīd*, 58
 Akā Moḥammad, *Kājār*, 260
 'Akāl, Abū-, *Aghlabīd*, 37
 Akatāy, *Khira*, 278
 Akbar, Jalāl-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328;
 305, 313, 315, 324-5
 Akbar II, *Mogul*, 328
 Akbarji, *Mongol*, 216
 -Akhras, *Selyūks of Syria*, 154
 ĀK-KUYUNLĪ (*Turkomāns of the White Sheep*), 254
 Āksunkur Badr-al-dīn, *Armen.*, 170
 'Alā-al-dawla Moḥammad, *Kāk-wayhid*, 145
 'Alā-al-dawla Mas'ūd, *Ghaznawīd*, 289; 288
 'Alā-al-dīn, *Bahmanīd*, 318
 'Alā-al-dīn 'Alī, *Bengal*, 307
 'Alā-al-dīn Firōz, *Bengal*, 308
 'Alā-al-dīn Hosayn, *Bengal*, 308
 'Alā-al-dīn Jānī, *Bengal*, 306
 'Alā-al-dīn Mardān, *Bengal*, 306
 'Alā-al-dīn Mas'ūd, *Dehlī*, 299
 'Alā-al-dīn Moḥammad, *Dehlī*, 299; 297, 316
 'Alā-al-dīn Hosayn Jahān-sōz, *Ghōrīd*, 292
 'Alā-al-dīn Moḥammad, *Khawārizm Shāh*, 177; 176, 179
 'Alā-al-dīn, *Selyūks of Rūm*, 155
 'Alam-al-dīn Abū-l-Ma'ālī Kū-raysh, *Okaylīd*, 117
 'Alamgīr Aurangzīb, *Mogul*, 325-8
 'Alamgīr II, 'Azīz-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328
 Alfonso of Leon, 27, 42
 Algū, *Chagatāy*, 242
 'Alī -Sa'id, *Almohad*, 47
 'Alī, *Almoravid*, 43
 'Alī -Afdal, *Ayyūbīd*, 78
 'Alī Kūehuk, *Begtinīd*, 165
 'Alī Fakhr-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 142
 'Alī 'Imād-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 141; 136, 139
 'Alī, *Carmathian*, 91
 'Alī, *Chagatāy*, 242; 241
 'Alī Ikbal-al-dawla, *Denia*, 26
 'Alī -Zāhir, *Fātimīd*, 71
 'Alī, *Ghaznawīd*, 289
 'Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan, *Hamdānīd*, 112
 'Alī Sayf-al-dawla, *Hamdānīd*, 112
 'Alī -Wahīd, *Hamdānīd* (Yam.), 95
 'Alī -Nāṣir, *Hamūdīd*, 21, 23
 'Alī, *Idrisīd*, 35
 'Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan, *Ikhshīdīd*, 69
 'Alī Gürkān Jalāl-al-dīn, *Ilak*, 135
 'Alī, *Pir*, *Kart*, 252
 'Alī Khān, *Khāndēsh*, 315
 'Alī, *Mahdīd*, 96
 'Alī, *Mamlūks*, 81
 'Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan, *Marinīd*, 57
 'Alī, Abū-, *Marwānīd*, 118
 'Alī Sanad-al-dawla, *Mazyadīd*, 119
 'Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan, *Naṣrīd*, 28
 'Alī, *Okaylīd*, 117
 'Alī, *Orthodox Caliph*, 9; 3, 6
 'Alī Alpī, *Ortukid*, 168
 'Alī b. Rasūl, *Rasūlīd*, 99
 'Alī -Mujāhid, *Rasūlīd*, 99
 'Alī -Mu'ayyad, *Sarbadārīd*, 251
 'Alī Shams-al-dīn, *Sarbadārīd*, 251
 'Alī Abū-Kāmil, *Ṣulayhīd*, 92, 94
 'Alī, *Tāhīrīd* (Yaman), 101
 'Alī Murād, *Zand*, 260
 'Alī, *Zayrīd*, 40
 'Alī, *Zuray'id*, 97
 'Alī -A'azz -Murtadā, *Zuray'id*, 97
 'Alī, 127; 6, 33, 35, 129, 136
 'Alīm, *Khokānd*, 280
 'Alīm Shāh, *Dehlī*, 300

- Allāh Qulī, *Khiva*, 279
 Almanzor (*Fatir*), 20
 ALMOHADES (-MUWAHHIDS), 45-47; 27, 39, 43, 49
 ALMORAVIDES (-MURĀMIDS), 41-43; 20, 27, 39, 45
 Alp-Arghū Shams-al-dīn, *Hazār-aspid*, 175
 Alp-Arslān 'Aqad-al-dīn, *Seljuk*, 153; 151
 Alp-Arslān -Akhras, *Seljuk*, 154
 Alpi, *Ortukids*, 168
 Alptigin, *Ghaznavid*, 289; 285
 Altamish, *Dehli*, 299; 295-6
 Alwand, *Al-Kuyunli*, 254
 -Amin, *'Abbāsid*, 12
 Amin Khān, *Bengal*, 306
 Amīn Moḥammad, *Khiva*, 279
 Amir-al-Umarā, 140, 171
 -Amir, Abū-'Alī-Manṣūr, *Fātimid*, 71
 'Amr Abū-Thābit, *Marinid*, 57
 'Amir, *Tāhirids* (Yaman), 101
 'AMIRIDS (Valencia), 25
 'Amr b. -Layth, *Saffārid*, 130
 Amurath, *'Othmāniya*, 195; 185
 Anax, *Burid*, 161
 Anusha, *Khiva*, 279
 Anūshīrwān, *Il-Khān*, 220
 Anūshīrwān, *Ziyārid*, 137
 Anushtigin, *Khacārizm Shāh*, 177
 Arab chiefs, 89, 109 ff.
 'Arab Shāh, *Gold Herd*, 230; 239
 'Arab Moḥammad, *Khiva*, 279
 Arām Shāh, *Dehli*, 299
 Arank, *Khiva*, 279
 Arank Moḥammad, *Khiva*, 279
 Arghūn, *Il-Khān Persia*, 220; 174
 Arikbuka, *Mongol*, 211
 ARMENIA, *Suāhs or*, 170
 Arpā, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220
 Arslān, *see* Alp-Arslān, Karā-Arslān, Kipch-Arslān, etc.
 Arslān Tatar Khān, *Bengal*, 306
 Arslān, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 Arslān Khān, *Ilak Khāns*, 135
 Arslān Girāy, *Krim*, 237
 Arslān, *Seljuk of -Irāk*, 154
 Arslān, *Seljuks of Kirmān*, 153
 Arslān, *Zangids*, 163
 As'ad, *Yafurid*, 91
 Ashraf, *Shāh of Persia*, 259
 -Ashraf Mūsā, *Ayyūbid*, 77
 -Ashraf Muḥaffar -al-dīn Mūsā, *Ayyūbid*, 78
 -Ashraf Chūpāni, 220
 -Ashraf Sayf -al-dīn Bars-bey, *Mamlūk*, 83 [83]
 -Ashraf Sayf -al-dīn Ināl, *Mamlūk*,
 -Ashraf Jānbalāt, *Mamlūk*, 83
 -Ashraf Sayf -af -dīn Kāit-Bey, *Mamlūk*, 83
 -Ashraf Kānshūh -Ghūrī, *Mamlūk*, 83
 -Ashraf Salāh -al-dīn Khalil, *Mamlūk*, 81
 -Ashraf 'Alā -al-dīn Kājūk, *Mamlūk*, 81
 -Ashraf Nāṣir -al-dīn Sha'bān, *Mamlūk*, 81
 -Ashraf Tūmān-Bey, *Mamlūk*, 83
 -Ashraf Ismā'il, *Rasūlids*, 99
 -Ashraf 'Omar, *Rasūlids*, 99
 ATĀKES, 157 ff.
 'Atiya Abū-Du'āba, *Mirdāsids*, 116
 Atsiz, *Khacārizm Shāh*, 177
 Aurangzib 'Alamgir, *Mogul*, 325-8
 Avanak, *Khiva*, 278
 -Awḥad Najm -al-dīn Ayyūb, *Ayyūbid*, 78
 Aybak, *Bengal*, 306
 Aybak, *Ḳutb -al-dīn, Dehli*, 298; 294-5
 Aybak, *Mamlūk*, 81
 AYDIN AMIRS, 184-5
 Aynān, Abū-, *Marinid*, 57
 Ay-Timūr, *Sarbadārid*, 251
 Ayyūb Shāh, *Afghān*, 334
 Ayyūb, *Ayyūbids*, 77, 78, 80, 98
 AYŪBIDS, 74-79; 67, 80, 167, 170
 AYŪBIDS of the Yaman, 98
 A'zam Shāh, *Bengal*, 307

- A'zam Shāh, *Mogul*, 328
 'Azīm, *Afghān*, 334
 -'Azīz Ghiyāth-al-dīn Moḥammad, *Ayyūbid*, 78
 -'Azīz 'Imād-al-dīn 'Othmān, *Ayyūbid*, 77
 -'Azīz Abū-Manṣūr Nazār, *Fātimid*, 71
 -'Azīz, *Hamādīd*, 40
 - Azīz Jamāl-al-dīn Yūsuf, *Mamlūk*, 83 [328
 'Azīz-al-dīn 'Alamgīr II, *Mogul*,
 'Azīz Shaykh, *Golden Horde*, 230

 BĀBAR, Zahir-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328;
 257, 298, 322
 Bād of Kayfā, 118
 Bādīs, *Hamādīd*, 40
 Bādīs, *Zayrid*, 25, 40 [138
 Badr Naṣīr-al-dīn, *Hasanwayhid*,
 Badr-al-dīn Aksunkur, *Armen*. 170
 Badr-al-dīn Lu'lu', *Zangid*, 162-3
 Bahā-al-dawla Firūz, *Buwayhid*,
 141, 117
 Bahā-al-dawla, *Ghaznawid*, 289
 Bahā-al-dawla, *Mazyadīd*, 119
 Bahādur Girāy, *Krim*, 236
 Bahādur Shāh, *Bengal*, 306
 Bahādur Shāh Khidr, *Bengal*, 308
 Bahādur Shāh, *Gujarāt*, 313
 Bahādur Shāh, *Khāndesh*, 315
 Bahādur Shāh, *Mogul*, 328; 327
 Bahlōl Lōdī, *Dehlī*, 300
 BAHMANIDS, 316-319
 Bahrām Shāh, *Bengal*, 306
 Bahrām Shāh, *Dehlī*, 299
 Bahrām Shāh, *Ghaznawid*, 289
 Bahrām, *Seljuk* of *Kirmān*, 153
 BARRI MAMLŪKS, 80-82
 Bajazet (Bāyazīd), *'Othmānī*, 195;
 184, 187, 266
 Bakhtiyār Khaljī, *Bengal*, 306
 Bakhtiyār, *Buwayhid*, 141
 Bākī Moḥammad, *Jānīd*, 275
 Balak, *Ortukid*, 167
 Balban 'Izz-al-dīn, *Armenia*, 170
 Balban, *Bengal*, 306
 Balban, *Dehlī*, 299; 296, 306n
 Balkātin, *Ghaznawid*, 289; 176
 BANŪ-Naṣr, etc. See NAṢRIDS, etc.
 Baraka, *Golden Horde*, 230; 225
 Baraka Khān, *Mamlūk*, 81
 BĀRAKZAYS, 334; 331-3
 Bārbak, *Bengal*, 307
 Barbarossa, *Khayr-al-dīn*, 49, 55,
 189; *Urūj*, 55
 Bargiyārūk Rukn-al-dīn, *Seljuk*, 153
 BARID SHĀHS, 321; 318
 Barqūk, *Mamlūk*, 81, 83; 247
 Bars-Bey, *Mamlūk*, 83
 Bātū, *Golden Horde*, 230; 208-9,
 222-4, 226, 233, 238
 Bāyān, *Golden Horde*, 231
 Bāyazīd Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 Bāyazīd, *Jalayr*, 248
 Bāyazīd (Bajazet), *'Othmānī*, 195;
 184, 187, 266
 Baybars, *Mamlūks*, 81
 Baydū, *Īl-Khān of Persia*, 220
 Baysunkur, *Āk-Kuyunlū*, 254
 Beg Pālād, *Golden Horde*, 232
 BEGTIGINIDS, 165
 Begtimur Sayf-al-dīn, *Armenia*, 170
 BENGAL, GOVERNORS OF, 306
 BENGAL, KINGS OF, 307
 Berbers, 33, 39, 41, 70
 Beys of Tunis, 56
 Bīdar-Bakht, *Mogul*, 328
 Bilbey, *Mamlūk*, 83
 Biliktu, *Mongol*, 216
 Birdi-Beg, *Golden Horde*, 230; 224
 Bīstūn, *Ziyārid*, 137
 BLUE HORDE, 224, 230
 Bōabdīl of Granada, 28; 27
 Bodi, *Mongol*, 216
 Bughra Khān, *Bengal*, 306
 Bughra Khān Maḥmūd, *Īlak*, 135
 Bughra Khān Hārūn, *Īlak*, 135
 Bughra Shāh, *Bengal*, 306
 Bujuḡha, *Khiva*, 278
 Bulukkin, *Hamādīd*, 40
 Bulukkin Yūsuf, *Zayrid*, 39, 40

- Bundukdāri Baybars, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Burāk Khān, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Burāk, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Burāk Hajīb, *Kutluğh Khān*, 179
 Burhān Sultān, *Shaybānīd*, 272
 BŪRIDS, 161
 BURJĪ MAMLŪKS, 83
 BUWAYHIDS, 139-144; 109, 112, 117, 118, 132, 136, 137, 138, 288
 Būyān Kulī, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Buyantu, *Mongol*, 215
 Būzūn, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Buzurg Hasan, *Jalayr*, 248

 CALIPHS, 3-15; see 'ABBĀSĪD
 CARMATHIANS, 90, 91, 126
 Chagar Beg Dāwūd, *Seljūk*, 151, 287
 CHAGATĀY KHĀNS, 241-2; 205, 210
 Chaghratigin, *Ilak Khān*, 135
 Chakra, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Charles Martel, 5
 Charles V, 49, 55
 Chintāy, *Golden Horde*, 231
 Chingiz Khān, *Mongol*, 215; 77, 177, 179, 202-4, 296
 Chūpān, 218-220
 Cid, 42
 COKDOVA, OMAYYADS OF, 21, 22
 COISAIRS, 49, 55-6
 CRIMEA, KHĀNS OF, 236
 Crusaders, 75-6, 80, 166-7

 DĀMIGHĀNĪ, *Sarbaddārid*, 251
 DĀNISHMANDIDS, 156
 Dānishmandja, *Chagatāy*, 242; 241
 Dārā, *Mogul*, 329
 Dārā, *Ziyārid*, 137
 Darwish, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Dāwar-Bakhsh, *Mogul*, 328
 Dawlat Birdī, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Dawlat Girāy, *Krim*, 236, 237
 Dawlat Khān Lōdī, *Dehli*, 300
 Dāwūd -Nāsir, *Ayyubid*, 78
 Dāwūd Shāh, *Bahmanid*, 318
 Dāwūd Shāh, *Bengal*, 308
 Dāwūd Shāh, *Gujarāt*, 313

 Dāwūd Khān, *Khāndesh*, 315
 Dāwūd, *Ortukids*, 168
 Dāwūd, *Rasulid*, 99
 Dāwūd Chagar Beg, *Seljūk*, 151, 287
 Dāwūd Ghiyāth-al-dīn, *Seljūk of -'Irāk*, 154
 Dayan, *Mongol*, 216; 213
 Daylami, *Rassid Imām*, 102
 DAYLAMIDS, see BUWAYHIDS
 DEHLĪ, SULTĀNS OF, 299-301
 Delbek, *Mongol*, 215
 DENIA, KINGS OF, 26
 Deys of Algiers, 56
 Dhahabi, *Filālī Sharif*, 61
 Dhū-l-Nūn, *Dānishmandid*, 156
 DHŪ-L-NŪNIDS, 25
 Dhū-l-Yamīdayn, *Tāhirid*, 128
 Dilāwar Khān Ghōrī, *Māheca*, 311
 Dost, *Khiva*, 278
 Dost Mohammad, *Afghān*, 331 4
 Dragut (Totghūd), *Corsair*, 56, 189
 Dubays, *Nūr-al-dawla Mazyad*, 119
 Dukāk, *Seljūk of Syria*, 154
 Dulaf, *Dulafid*, 125
 Dulaf Abū-Kāsim, *Dulafid*, 125
 DULAFIDS, 125
 DURRĀNĪS, 330-5
 Duwā Khān, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Duwā Tīmūr, *Chagatāy*, 242

 ELBEK, *Mongol*, 215
 Engke Soriktu, *Mongol*, 215
 Erdani, *Khokand*, 280

 FADĀ'IL, Abū-l-, *Mirdāsīd*, 115
 Fadl, *Hafsid*, 50
 Fadl-Allāh, *Sarbaddārid*, 251
 -Fāiz Abū-l-Kāsim 'Isā, *Fātimid*, 71
 Fakhr-al-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī, *Bucayhid*, 142
 Fakhr-al-dīn Mubārak Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 Fakhr-al-dīn, *Kart*, 252
 Fakhr-al-dīn Karā-Arslān, *Ortukids*, 168

-Fakih Muhammad, *Nagrid*, 28
 Faraj, *Mamluk*, 83
 Faramarz Zahir-al-din, *Kakwayhid*, 145
 Fāris, Abū-, *Hasani Sharif*, 61
 Fāris, Abū-, *Hafsid*, 50
 Fāris, Abū-, *Ma'inid*, 58
 Fāris - Mutawakkil, *Marinid*, 58
 Farrukh-nivar, *Mogul*, 328
 Farrukhzād, *Ghaznawid*, 289
 FARUKI KINGS OF KHANDĀSH, 315
 Fārūki Shāh, *Gujarat*, 313
 Fath Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 Fath 'Alī, *Kājar*, 260
 Fath Girāy, *Krim*, 236, 237
 Fath, Abū-l-, *Zand*, 260
 -Fātik, *Najāshid*, 92
 Fātima, 60, 70
 FĀTIMIDS, 70, 73; 39, 41, 67, 74, 112, 114, 118
 Fawāris, Abū-l-, *Ikhshidid*, 69
 Fayd, Abū-l-, *Jānid*, 275
 Fiḍā, Abū-l-, *Ayyūbid*, 77, 79
 FILALI SHARIPS, 61
 Firūz, Tāj-al-din, *Bahmanid*, 318
 Firūz Shāh, *Bengal*, 306
 Firūz, *Bucayhid*, 141
 Firūz Shāh, *Dehli*, 299
 Fullād Sattūn Abū-Mansūr, *Bucayhid*, 141
 GANGU, HASEN, *Bahmanid*, 316-8
 Gaykhātū, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220
 Gegen, *Mongol*, 215
 -Ghādanfūr, *Hamādānid*, 112
 -Ghālib, *Nagrid*, 28
 -Ghānī, *Nagrid*, 28
 Gharāt, Abū-l-, *Zuray'id*, 97
 Ghāzi, *Ayyūbid*, 78
 Ghāzi Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 Ghāzi, *Dānishmandid*, 156
 Ghāzi Girāy, *Krim*, 236, 237
 Ghāzi, *Zangid*, 163
 Ghāzi, Abū-l-, *Jānid*, 275
 Ghāzi, Abū-l-, *Khiva*, 279
 GHAZNAWIDS, 289; 7, 132, 137

Ghiyāth-al-din Ghāzi, *Ayyūbid*, 78
 Ghiyāth-al-din Moḥammad, *Ayyūbid*, 78
 Ghiyāth-al-din, *Bahmanid*, 318
 Ghiyāth-al-din 'Iwaz, *Bengal*, 306
 Ghiyāth-al-din A'ṣam Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 Ghiyāth-al-din Bahādur Shāh, *Bengal*, 306 [308]
 Ghiyāth-al-din Jalāl Shāh, *Bengal*, 308
 Ghiyāth-al-din Maḥmūd Shāh, *Bengal*, 308
 Ghiyāth-al-din Balban, *Dehli*, 299
 Ghiyāth-al-din Taghlaq, *Dehli*, 300
 Ghiyāth-al-din b. Sām, *Ghōrid*, 292
 Ghiyāth-al-din Tōktāmish, *Golden Horde*, 231
 Ghiyāth-al-din, *Hasdraspid*, 175
 Ghiyāth-al-din, *Kart*, 252
 Ghiyāth-al-din Pīr 'Alī, *Kart*, 252
 Ghiyāth Shāh, *Māleca*, 311
 Ghiyāth-al-din Moḥammad, *Seljuq*, 183 [154]
 Ghiyāth-al-din, *Seljuqs of -Irāk*, 155
 Ghiyāth-al-din, *Seljuqs of -Rūm*, 155
 GHŌRIDS, 291-4; 176, 289
 GHŌRIS (KINGS OF MĀLWA), 311
 -Ghūrī, *Mamluk*, 83
 Ghuzz, 183, 292
 Girāy, *Krim*, 236
 GOLDEN HORDE KHĀNS, 222-231
 GUJARĀT, KINGS OF, 312
 Gumishtigin, *Dānishmandid*, 156
 Gun-Timūr, *Mongol*, 215
 Gürkān 'Alī, *Ilak Khān*, 135
 GURKHĀNS, 176, 293-4

HABBS, Zayrid, 25
 HADSHI KINGS OF BENGAL, 308
 -Hādī, *Abbāsid*, 12 [103]
 -Hādī Moḥammad, *Imām of San'a*, 103
 -Hādī -Majīd, *Imām of San'a*, 103
 -Hādī Najm-al-din Yahyā, *Rassid Imām*, 102

- Hādī Yāhyā, *Rassid*, 91, 102
 -Hāfiz Abū-l-Maymūn 'Abd-al-Majid, *Fātimid*, 71
 Hāfiz, *Kart*, 252
 Hāfiz, Abū, *Almohad*, 47
 Hāfiz, Abū-, *Hafsid*, 50
 HAFSIDS, 49, 50; 46, 55
 Hajjāj, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179
 Hājji, *Mamlūks*, 81
 Hājji Girāy, *Krim*, 235, 237
 Hājji Moḥammad, *Khiva*, 279
 -Hakam I, *Omayyads of Cordova*, 21
 -Hākim Abū -'Alī -Manṣūr, *Fātimid*, 71
 Hākim Girāy, *Krim*, 237
 -Hamās, *Hamdānid* (Yaman), 95
 HAMDĀNIDS, 111-113
 HAMDĀNIDS of the Yaman, 95
 HAMĪD AMĪRS, 184-5
 Hammād, *Hammādīd*, 40
 HAMMĀDIDS, 39, 40; 43, 46
 Hammū, Abū-, *Ziyānids*, 51
 HAMMŪDIDS, 23, 24, 25; 21
 Hamza, *Ak-Kuyunlū*, 254
 Hārūn a'-Rashid, *Abbāsīd*, 12, 36
 Hārūn, *Ilak Khāns*, 135
 Hārūn, *Tulunīd*, 68
 -Hasan, *Alids*, 127, 129
 Hasan, Uzun, *Ak-Kuyunlū*, 253-5
 Hasan Gāngū, *Bahmanīd*, 316-8
 Hasan Rukn-al-dawla, *Bucayhid*, 142; 139
 Hasan Kūchuk Chūpānī, 219, 220
 Hasan, *Golden Horde*, 230
 -Hasan, *Hafsid*, 50
 Hasan Buzurg, *Jalayr*, 248; 219, 220, 246
 -Hasan, *Idrīdīd*, 35
 -Hasan Tigīn, *Ilak Khān*, 135
 -Hasan Abū -'Alī, *Marwānīd*, 118
 Hasan Kulī, *Khiva*, 278
 Hasan 'Alī, *Karā-Kuyunlū*, 253
 -Hasan Abū-Hāshim, *Rassid*, 102
 -Hasan Nāsir - al - dawla, *Hamdānīd*, 112
 Hasan -Mustanṣir, *Hammūdīd*, 23
 -Hasan -Dāmighānī, *Sarbadārid*, 251
 -Hasan, *Zayrid*, 40
 Hasan, Abū-l-, *Ikhshīdīd*, 69
 HASANĪ SHARĪFS, 61
 HASANWAYHIDS, 138
 Hātim, *Hamdānīd* (Yaman), 95
 Haydar -Kaṣṣāb, *Sarbadārid*, 251
 Haydar Tora, *Mangit*, 277
 Haydar, *Safavid*, 255
 Hazam, Abū-l-, *Jahwarīd*, 25
 HAZĀRASPID, 174, 175
 Hasan, *Filālī Sharīf*, 61
 Himyar, Abū-Sabā, *Ṣulayhid*, 94
 Hishām, *Filālī Sharīf*, 61
 Hishām, *Hamdānīd* (Yaman), 95
 Hishām, *Omayyad*, 9; 19
 Hishām, *Omayyads of Cordova*, 21
 HOEIH KHĀNS, TURKISTĀN, 134-5
 HORDE, GOLDEN, 222-231
 Hosayn Shāh, *Bengal*, 308
 Hosayn Jahān-sōz, *Ghōrid*, 292
 -Hosayn, *Hamdānīd*, 112
 Hosayn, *Hazāraspid*, 175 [253
 Hosayn, *Jalayr*, 248; 219, 246,
 Hosayn Shāh, *Jaunpūr*, 309
 Hosayn, *Mangit*, 277
 -Hosayn, *Rasūlīd*, 99
 Hosayn, *Safavid*, 259, 257
 Hosayn, *Seljuk of Kirmān*, 153
 -Hosayn (Vezir), *Ziyādid*, 91
 HŪDIDS, 26; 43 [217
 Hūlagū, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220;
 Humāyūn Alā-al-dīn, *Bahmanīd*, 318
 Humāyūn Nāsir-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328; 257, 298, 305, 323
 Husām-al-dawla -Muḥallad, *'Okay-ūid*, 117
 Husām-al-dīn Timurtāsh, *Ortuḡid*, 168
 Husām - al - dīn Yūluḡ-Arslān, *Ortuḡid*, 168
 Hūshang Shams-al-dīn, *Hazāraspid*, 175
 Hūshang Alp Khān, *Māwca*, 311

IBISAN, *Golden Horde*, 231
 Ibrāhīm, *Aghlabids*, 37
 Ibrāhīm, *Almoravid*, 43
 Ibrāhīm Zahir-al-dīn, *Armenia*, 170
 Ibrāhīm, *Bukhārā*, 239
 Ibrāhīm, *Dānishmandid*, 156
 Ibrāhīm Shāh, *Dehli*, 299, 300, 322
 Ibrāhīm, *Ghaznawid*, 289
 Ibrāhīm I Abū - Ishāk, *Hafsid*, 50
 Ibrāhīm II - Mustanşir, *Hafsid*, 50
 Ibrāhīm Abū-Tāhir, *Hamdānid*, 112
 Ibrāhīm, *Hamdānid*, 111
 Ibrāhīm Tufghāj, *Ilak Khān*, 135
 Ibrāhīm Shāh Sharķi, *Shams-al-dīn*, *Jamnpūr*, 309
 Ibrāhīm, *Khedive*, 85; 67
 Ibrāhīm Abū-Sālim, *Marinid*, 57
 Ibrāhīm, *Mogul*, 328
 Ibrāhīm, 'Okaylid, 117
 Ibrāhīm, *Omayyad*, 9
 Ibrāhīm, *Ortukid*, 168
 Ibrāhīm, 'Othmānid, 195
 Ibrāhīm, *Sāmānid*, 132
 Ibrāhīm, *Timūrid*, 175
 Ibrāhīm, *Ya'furid*, 91
 Ibrāhīm, *Ziyādid*, 91
 Idiku, 229
 Idris - Ma'mūn, *Almoḥad*, 47
 Idris, *Hammūdids*, 23
 Idris, *Idrisids*, 35; 6
 IDRISIDS, 35; 6, 36, 39, 70
 'Ikbāl-al-dawla, *Hūdīd*, 26
 IKHSHĪDIDS, 69; 6, 67, 112
 Ikhtiyār-al-dīn Ghāzī, *Bengal*, 307
 Ikhtiyār-al-dīn Yūsbak, *Bengal*, 306
 ILAK KHĀNS OF TURKISTĀN (HÖEHE), 134, 135; 132, 286
 İl-Arslān, *Khvārizm Shāh*, 177
 Ilbān, *Golden Horde*, 230
 Ilbars, *Khiva*, 278, 279
 Ilchikadāy, *Chagatāy*, 242
 İldigiz Shams-al-dīn, *Atābeg of Adhārbājan*, 171

İl-Ghāzī, *Ortukids*, 166-8
 İL-KHĀNS OF PERSIA, 217-221;
 156, 172, 205, 330
 İltazar, *Khiva*, 279
 İltutmish, *Dehli*, 299
 İlyās Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 'Imād-al-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī, *Bucayhid*, 141; 136, 139
 'Imād-al-dawla, *Hūdīd*, 26
 'Imād - al - dawla, *Ilak Khān*, 135
 'Imād-al-dīn 'Othmān, *Ayyūbid*, 77
 'Imād-al-dīn Abū-Kālīnjār - Marzubān, *Bucayhid*, 141
 'Imād - al - dīn 'Alī Alpī - 'Adil, *Ortukid*, 168
 'Imād-al-dīn Kāward, *Seljuk of Kirmān*, 153
 'Imād-al-dīn Shāhānshāh, *Zangid*, 163
 'Imād-al-dīn Zangī, *Zangids*, 163
 'Imād-al-mulk, *Berār*, 318
 'IMĀD SHĀHS, 320; 318
 Imām Kulī, *Jānid*, 275
 IMĀMS, the Twelve, and the Seven, 72, 255
 IMĀMS OF SA'DA AND SAN'Ā, 102-3
 'Imrān, *Zuray'id*, 97
 İnāl, *Mamluk*, 83
 İnāyat Girāy, *Krim*, 236
 İnjū, 245, 249
 İrān Shāh, *Seljuk of Kirmān*, 153
 'İsā, *Ayyūbid*, 78
 'İsā, *Fatimid*, 71
 'İsā, *Ortukid*, 168
 İsfandiyār, *Khiva*, 279
 İsfandiyār, *Sarbadārid*, 251
 İshāk, *Almoravid*, 43
 İshāk, *Ghaznawid*, 289; 286
 İshāk Akā Niyāz, *Khiva*, 279
 İshāk Abū-l-Jaysh, *Ziyādid*, 91
 İshāk, Abū-, İnjū, 245, 249
 Iskandar, *Karā-Kuyunli*, 253
 Iskandar, *Shaybānid*, 271
 İslām Girāy, *Krim*, 236
 İslām Shāh, *Dehli*, 300
 İsmā'il, *Ayyūbids*, 78, 79, 98

- Ismā'il, *Būrid*, 161
 Ismā'il -Zāfir, *Dhū-l-Nūnid*, 25
 Ismā'il, *Fātimids*, 71
 Ismā'il -Samīn, *Filālī Sharīf*, 61
 Ismā'il, *Ghaznawid*, 289
 Ismā'il, *Khedive*, 84, 85
 Ismā'il -Sāliḥ, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Ismā'il, *Naṣrīds*, 28
 Ismā'il, *Rasūlīds*, 99
 Ismā'il, *Safavids*, 259; 245, 254-6
 Ismā'il, *Sāmānid*, 132
 Ismā'il -Sāliḥ, *Zangid*, 163
 Ismā'il Kuṭb-al-dīn, 170
 'Iwaz, *Bengal*, 306
 'Izz-al-dawla Bakhtiyār, *Buwayhid*, 141
 'Izz-al-dawla 'Abd-al-Rashīd, *Ghaznawid*, 289
 'Izz-al-dīn, *Seljuks of Rum*, 155
 'Izz-al-dīn A'zam-al-mulk, *Bengal*, 306
 'Izz-al-dīn Aybak, *Mamlūk*, 81
 'Izz-al-dīn Balban, *Armenia*, 170
 'Izz-al-dīn Balban, *Bengal*, 306
 'Izz-al-dīn Mas'ūd, *Zangids*, 163
 'Izz-al-dīn Shirān, *Bengal*, 306
 'Izz-al-dīn Tughril Tughān Khān, *Bengal*, 306
 JABAR Birdī, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Ja'far, *Zand*, 260
 Jahāndār, *Mogul*, 328
 Jahāngīr, *Āk-Kuyuntū*, 254
 Jahāngīr Nūr-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328
 Jahān-Shāh, *Karā-Kuyuntū*, 253
 Jahān-sōz, *Ghōrid*, 292
 Jahān-Timūr, *Īl-Khān*, 220
 Jahwar Abū-l-Ḥazam, 25
 JAHWARIDS, 25
 Jakmak, *Mamlūk*, 83
 Jalāl-al-dawla, *Bucayhid*, 141
 Jalāl-al-dawla, *Ghaznawid*, 289
 Jalāl-al-dawla Naṣr, *Mi'dāsīd*, 115
 Jalāl-al-dīn Fath Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 Jalāl-al-dīn Mas'ūd Malik Jānī, *Bengal*, 306
 Jalāl-al-dīn Moḥammad Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 Jalāl-al-dīn Firūz, *Dehlī*, 299
 Jalāl-al-dīn, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Jalāl-al-dīn, *Īlak Khān*, 135
 Jalāl-al-dīn Moḥammad Shāh, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179
 Jalāl-al-dīn Suyurghātmish, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179
 Jalāl-al-dīn Mangbartī, *Khawārizm Shah*, 177; 208, 296
 Jalāl-al-dīn, *see Akbar, Mogul*
 Jalāl-al-dīn Shāh Shujā', *Muzaffarid*, 250
 Jalāl-al-dīn Malik Shāh, *Seljuks*, 153; 151, 160, 162, 176
 JALAYRS, 246-248; 219, 220
 Jamāl-al-dawla Farrukh-zād, *Ghaznawid*, 289
 Jamāl-al-dīn Moḥam., *Būrid*, 161
 Jān, 273-4
 Jānbalāt, *Mamlūk*, 83
 Jānī, *Bengal*, 306
 Jānī-Beg Maḥmūd, *Golden Horde*, 230; 224
 Jānī-Beg Girāy, *Krim*, 236
 JĀNIDS (ASTRAKHĀN), 274
 -Jāshankīr, *Mamlūk*, 81
 JAUNPŪR, KINGS OF, 309
 Jawhar, 70
 Jaysh Abū-l-'Asākīr, *Tūlūnid*, 68
 Jaysh, Abū-l-, *Ziyādid*, 91
 Jayyāsh, *Najāhid*, 92
 Jingishay, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Jiyaghatu, *Mongol*, 215
 John, St., *Knights of*, 56, 188
 Jūjī, *Mongol*, 205, 222 ff.
 Juvanmard 'Alī, *Shaybānid*, 272
 KĀBŪS Shams-al-ma'ālī, *Ziyārid*, 137
 -Kādi, *Āmirid*, 26
 -Kādir, *Abbāsīd*, 12
 -Kādir, *Āmirid*, 26
 -Kādir, *Dhū-l-Nūnid*, 25
 Qadr Khān, *Bengal*, 306

Kādr Khān, *Ilak Khāns*, 135
 Kāfūr Abū-l-Misk, *Ikhshidid*, 69
 -Kāhīr, *'Abbāsīd*, 12
 -Kāid, *Hammādīd*, 40
 -Kā'im, *'Abbāsīd*, 12
 -Kā'im Abū-l-Kāsim Moḥammad,
Fātimīd, 71
 Kā'imāz, 165
 Kaip, *Khiva*, 279
 Kāit-Bey, *Mamlūk*, 83
 KĀJĀRS (SHĀHS OF PERSIA), 260
 KĀKWAYHIDS, 145
 Kal, *Khiva*, 278
 Kalā'ūn, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Kalīm-Allāh Shāh, *Bahmanīd*, 318
 Kālīnjār, Abū-, *Buwayhids*, 141
 Kām-Bukhsh, *Mogul*, 328
 Kamāl-al-dawla Shīrīzād, *Ghaz-
 navīd*, 289
 Kamar-al-dīn Tamar, *Bengal*,
 -Kāmil Moḥammad, *Ayyūbīd*, 77,
 78; 167
 -Kāmil Sayf-al-dīn-Sha'bān, *Mam-
 lūk*, 81
 Kāmil, Abū-, *Okayīd*, 117; *Maz-
 yādīd*, 119; *Mirdāsīd*, 115
 Kamrān, *Afghān*, 334
 Kānšūh, *Mamlūks*, 83
 Kaplan Girāy, *Krim*, 237
 Karā-Arslān, *Ortukīd*, 168
 Karā-Arslān, *Seljuks of Kirmān*, 153
 Karā-dawlat Girāy, *Krim*, 237
 Karā-Hūlāgū, *Chagatāy*, 242
 KARĀ-KUYUNLĪ (Turkomāns of the
Black Sheep), 253; 167
 Karā-Moḥammad, *K-Kuyunlī*, 253
 Karā-Yūluk, *Ak-Kuyunlī*, 254
 Karā-Yūsuf, *K-Kuyunlī*, 253; 247
 KARAMĀN AMĪRS, 184-5
 Karārānī Sulaymān, *Bengal*, 308
 KARĀSTI AMĪRS, 184-5
 Karbukā, 117
 Karīm Birdī, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Karīm Khān, *Zand*, 260
 KARMAṬHIANS, 90, 91, 126
 KARMIYĀN AMĪRS, 184-5

KART MALIKS, 252; 245, 294
 KASHMĪR, KINGS OF, 304, 311n
 -Kāsim, *Dulafīd*, 125
 -Kāsim -Ma'mūn, *Hammūdīd*, 21-3
 -Kāsim -Wāthik, *Hammūdīd*, 25
 Kāsim, *Kazimof*, 234
 -Kāsim -Manšūr, *San'ā*, 103
 -Kāsim -Manšūr, *Rassīd*, 102
 -Kāsim -Mukhtār, *Rassīd*, 102
 Kāsim -Rassī Tarjumān-al-dīn,
Rassīd Imām, 102
 Kāsim, Abū-l-, *Ikhshidīd*, 69
 Kāsim, *Mongol*, 229
 -Kaṣṣāb, *Sarbadārīd*, 251
 Kāwām-al-dawla, *Buwayhīd*, 141
 Kāwām-al-dawla Karbukā, 117
 Kāward Beg 'Imād-al-dīn Karā-
 Arslān, *Seljuks of Kirmān*, 153
 Kaydū, *Mongol*, 209, 212
 Kay-Kāwus, *Bengal*, 306
 Kay-Kāwus 'Izz-al-dīn, *Seljuks
 of -Rūm*, 155
 Kay -Khusru Ghiyāth - al - dīn,
Seljuks of -Rūm, 155
 Kay-Kubād, *Dehlī*, 299
 Kay-Kubād 'Alā-al-dīn, *Seljuks of
 -Rūm*, 155
 Kazan, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Khāghān, *Golden Horde*, 230
 Khālid, Abū-l-Bakā, *Ḥafṣīd*, 50
 KHALĪFA, 3; see CALIPHS
 Khalīl, *Ak-Kuyunlī*, 254
 Khalīl, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Khalīl, *Timūrid*, 268
 Khaljī, Moḥammad Bakhtiyār,
Bengal, 306
 KHALJIS, SULTĀNS OF DEHLĪ, 299,
 302; 296-7
 KHALJIS, KINGS OF MĀLWA, 311
 KHĀNDESH, KINGS OF, 315
 Khayr-al-dīn Barbarossa, 49, 55, 189
 KHEDIVES, 84, 85
 Khidr Khān, *Dehlī*, 300
 Khidr, *Golden Horde*, 230
 Khidr Khān, *Ilak Khān*, 135
 KHIVA, KHĀNS OF, 278; 239

- KHOĠAND, KHĀNS OF, 280
 Khubilāy, *Mongol*, 215; 211, 212
 Khudabanda Moḥammad, *Ṣafavid*, 259
 Khudāyār, *Khoḡand*, 280
 Khumārawayh, *Tālūnid*, 68
 Khūshkadam, *Mamlūk*, 83
 Khusrū, *Buwayhids*, 141
 Khusrū Firūz Abū-Naṣr -Raḥīm, *Buwayhid*, 141
 Khusrū Malik, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 Khusrū Shāh, *Dehlī*, 299
 Khusrū Shāh, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 Khusrū Sultān, *Shaybānid*, 272
 Khwājā-Jahān, *Jauṣpūr*, 309
 KHWĀRIZM SHĀHS, 176-178; 171-2, 204, 217, 294-6
 Kibak, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Kibak, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Kildī Beg, *Golden Horde*, 230
 Kilij-Arslān, *Seljuks of -Rūm*, 155
 Kilij Taḡhāj Khān, *Ilak*, 135
 Kīrwāsh, *Okayid*, 117
 Kirmān Shāh, *Seljuks*, 163
 Kitbughā, *Mamlūk*, 81
 KIZIL-AḤMADĪ AMĪRS, 184-5
 Kizil-Arslān 'Othmān, *Atābeg of Adharbijān*, 171
 Köchkünji, *Shaybānid*, 271
 Koirijak, *Golden Horde*, 232
 KRIM KHĀNS, 233-236
 Krim Girāy, *Krim*, 237
 Kubācha, *Nāzir-al-dīn*, 294-5
 Kubla Khān, 212
 Kūchi, *Golden Horde*, 231
 Kūchuk Moḥammad, *Golden Horde*, 232; 229
 Kudang, *Mongol*, 216
 Kūjūk, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Kūkburi Muzaḥfar-al-dīn, *Beg-tiginid*, 165
 Kūli, *Chagatāy*, 242; *Jānids*, 275; *Khiva*, 278
 Kūlnā, *Golden Horde*, 230
 Kuluk, *Mongol*, 215
 Kunjuk Khān, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Kurds, 74, 138
 Kushala, *Mongol*, 215
 Kuṭb al-dawla Aḥmad, *Ilak*, 135
 Kuṭb-al-dīn Aybak, *Dehlī*, 299; 294-5
 Kuṭb-al-dīn Mubārak, *Dehlī*, 299
 Kuṭb-al-dīn, *Gujarāt*, 313
 Kuṭb-al-dīn Moḥammad, *Khawārizm Shāh*, 177
 Kuṭb-al-dīn Moḥammad, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179
 Kuṭb-al-dīn Shāh-Jahān, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179
 Kuṭb-al-dīn Īl-Ghāzī, *Ortukid*, 168
 Kuṭb-al-dīn Sukmān, *Ortukid*, 168
 Kuṭb-al-dīn, *Seljuks of -Rūm*, 155
 Kuṭb-al-dīn Mōdūd, *Zangid*, 163
 Kuṭb-al-dīn Moḥamm. Zangid, 163
 Kuṭb-al-dīn Ismā'il, 170
 KUṬB SHĀHS, 321; 318
 KUTLUGH KHĀNS, 179, 180
 Kutlugh Khātūn, 179
 Kutlugh Khōja, *Golden Horde*, 230
 Kutlugh Moḥammad, *Khiva*, 279
 Kuṭuz, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Kuyuk, *Mongol*, 215; 208-9
 LĀJĪN, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Lamtuna Berbers, 41, 42
 Layth, *Ṣaffārid*, 129
 Lingdan, *Mongol*, 216
 Lōdis, 300
 Lu'lu Badr-al-dīn, *Zangid*, 162-3
 Luṭf 'Alī, *Zand*, 260
 Luṭf-Allāh *Sarbadārīd*, 251
 MA'ADD, *Fātimids*, 71
 Maghrawa Berbers, 39
 -Mahdī, *Abbāsīd*, 12
 -Mahdī Moḥammad, *Almoḥad*, 45
 -Mahdī Abū-Moḥammad 'Obayd-Allāh, *Fātimid*, 70, 71
 -Mahdī, *Hammūdīd*, 23, 25
 -Mahdī, *Imāms of Ṣan'a*, 103
 -Mahdī, *Rassīd Imāms*, 102
 -Mahdī, *Mahdīd*, 96

- Mahdī, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21
 MAHDIDS, 96
 Maḥmūd, *Afghān*, 334; 331
 Maḥmūd, *Afghān Shāh of Persia*, 259; 257
 Maḥmūd Shāh, *Bahmanids*, 318
 Maḥmūd, *Bengal*, 306
 Maḥmūd Shāh, *Bengal*, 307-8
 Maḥmūd Shihāb-al-dīn, *Būrid*, 161
 Maḥmūd Shāh, *Dehli*, 299, 300
 Maḥmūd, *Ghaznawid*, 289; 286-8, 291
 Maḥmūd, *Ghōrid*, 294
 Maḥmūd, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Maḥmūd Shāh, *Gujarāt*, 313
 Maḥmūd, *Ilak Khāns*, 135
 Maḥmūd Ghāzān, *Il-Khān*, 220
 Maḥmūd Shāh Injū, 245, 249
 Maḥmūd Shāh, *Jauṣpūr*, 309
 Maḥmūd Sultān, *Khwarizm*, 177
 Maḥmūd Shāh Khalji, *Mālwa*, 311
 Maḥmūd, *Mirdāsīd*, 115
 Maḥmūd, *Mongol*, 210, 265
 Maḥmūd, *Muzaffarid*, 250
 Maḥmūd -Sālih, *Ortukid*, 168
 Maḥmūd, *Othmānīs*, 195; 193
 Maḥmūd Mughith-al-dīn, *Seljūk of -'Irāk*, 154; 167
 Maḥmūd Naṣir-al-dīn, *Seljūk*, 153
 Maḥmūd, *Timūrids*, 268
 Maḥmūd, *Zangids*, 163
 Maḥmūdak, *Kazan*, 234
 Majd-al-dawla Abū-Tālib Rustam, *Buwayhid*, 142; 145 [163]
 Majd-al-dīn 'Isā -Zāhir, *Ortukid*,
 -Majid Moḥammad, *San'ā*, 103
 -Makhlū, *Almohad*, 47
 Makḥṣūd Girāy, *Krim*, 237
 Malik Rājā, *Khāndesh*, 315
 Malik Shāh Jalāl-al-dīn, *Seljuks*, 153; 151, 160, 162, 176
 Malik Shāh Mu'in-al-dīn, *Seljūk of -'Irāk*, 154
 Malik Shāh, *Seljuks of -Rūm*, 155
 Malla, *Khoḳand*, 280
 MĀLWA, *KINGS OF*, 310, 311
 Mamāy, 227
 MAMLŪK SULTĀNS, 80-85; 77, 101, 217, 226
 -Ma'mūn, *Abbāsīd*, 12, 123
 -Ma'mūn, *Almohad*, 47
 -Ma'mūn, *Dhū-l-Nūnid*, 25
 -Ma'mūn, *Hammūdīd*, 21, 23
 Ma'n, *Hamdānid (Yaman)*, 95
 Manchus, 214
 Mandaghol, *Mongol*, 216
 Mangbarti Jalāl-al-dīn, *Khwarizm Shāh*, 177; 208, 296
 MANGITS, 277
 Mangli Girāy, *Krim*, 236, 237
 Mangū, *Mongol*, 215; 211
 Mangū-Timūr, *Golden Horde*, 230; 233, 238-9
 -Manşūr, *Abbāsīd*, 12
 -Manşūr, *Amirid*, 26
 -Manşūr, *Armenia*, 170
 -Manşūr Moḥammad, *Ayyūbid*, 77
 -Manşūr Ismā'il, *Fātimid*, 71
 -Manşūr, *Fātimids*, 71
 -Manşūr, *Hammādīd*, 40
 -Manşūr, *Imāms of San'ā*, 103
 -Manşūr 'Izz-al-dīn 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Mamlūk*, 83
 -Manşūr Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr, *Mamlūk*, 81
 -Manşūr 'Alā-al-dīn-'Alī, *Mamlūk*, 81
 -Manşūr Nūr-al-dīn-'Alī, *Mamlūk*, 81
 -Manşūr Sayf - al - dīn Qalā'ūn, *Mamlūk*, 81
 -Manşūr Ḥusām - al - dīn - Lājīn, *Mamlūk*, 81
 -Manşūr Salāh-al-dīn-Moḥammad, *Mamlūk*, 81
 -Manşūr Fakhr-al-dīn 'Othmān, *Mamlūk*, 83
 Manşūr, *Marwānid*, 118
 Manşūr, *Bāhā - al - dawla Abū-Kāmil, Mazyadīd*, 119
 Manşūr Shāh, *Muzaffarid*, 250
 -Manşūr, *Najāhid*, 92

- Manšūr (Almanzor), 20
- Manšūr Ahmad, *Ortuķid*, 168
- Manšūr Ortuķ-Arslān, *Ortuķid*, 168
- Manšūr 'Abd-Allāh, *Rassid*, 102
- Manšūr 'Abd-Allāh, *Rasūlid*, 99
- Manšūr 'Omar, *Kasūlid*, 99
- Manšūr, *Sāmānids*, 132
- Mansūr Sabā, *Šulayhid*, 94
- Manšūr Tāj - al - dīn 'Abd - al Wahhāb, *Tāhirid* (Yaman), 101
- Manšūr, *Tojibid*, 26
- Manšūr, *Zayrid*, 40
- Manšūr, *Zuray'id*, 97
- Manuchahr, *Ziyārid*, 137
- Mardān, *Bengal*, 306
- Mardāwīj, *Ziyārid*, 136, 137
- Mardūd, *Golden Horde*, 230
- MARĪNIDS, 57-59; 47, 51
- Marjān (*Vezir*), *Ziyādid*, 91
- Marwān, *Omayyads*, 9
- Marwān, Abū-, *Hasani Sharīfs*, 61
- MARWĀNIDS, 118
- Marzubān, *Bucayhids*, 141
- Masmuda Berbers, 42, 45
- Mas'ūd Yūsuf, *Ayyubid*, 98
- Mas'ūd, *Bengal*, 306
- Mas'ūd Shāh, *Dehlī*, 299
- Mas'ūd, *Ghaznavids*, 289
- Mas'ūd, *Rasūlid*, 99
- Mas'ūd Wajih-al-dīn, *Sarbadārid*, 251
- Mas'ūd Ghiyāth-al-dīn, *Seljuk of -Irāk*, 154; 160; of -Rum, 155
- Mas'ūd, *Zangids*, 163
- MAS'UD, BANU, 97
- Ma'sūm Shāh Murād, *Mangit*, 277
- MAZYADIDS, 119, 120
- Miknasa Berbers, 39
- Ming, 213
- Mirān Moḥammad Shāh Fārūki, *Gujarāt and Khāndesh*, 313, 315
- MIRDĀSIDS, 114, 115
- Misk, Abū-l-, Kāfūr, *Ikhshidid*, 69
- Mo'āwiya, *Omayyads*, 9; 3
- Mōdūd, *Ghaznavid*, 289
- Mōdūd, *Ortuķid*, 168
- Mōdūd, *Zangid*, 163
- MOGUL EMPERORS, 328; 298, 305, 313, 315, 322-7
- Moḥammad, the Prophet, 3, 188
- Moḥammad, *'Abbāsids*, 25
- Moḥammad, Dost, *Afghān*, 331-4
- Moḥammad, *Aghlabids*, 37
- Moḥammad, *Āk-Kuyunlī*, 254
- Moḥammad, *'Alid*, 127
- Moḥammad b. Tūmart, *Almohad*, 45
- Moḥammad -Nāṣir, *Almohad*, 47
- Moḥammad -Mansūr, *Armenia*, 170
- Moḥammad -Pahlawān Jahān, *Atābeg of Adharbījān*, 171
- Moḥammad, *Ayyūbids*, 77, 78
- Moḥammad Shāh, *Bahmanids*, 318
- Moḥammad Šūr, *Bengal*, 308
- Moḥammad, *Būrid*, 161
- Moḥammad, *Chaghtāy*, 242
- Moḥammad Gumishtigin, *Dānish-mandid*, 156 [316]
- Moḥammad Shāh, *Dehlī*, 299, 300,
- Moḥammad b. Taghlaq, *Dehlī*, 300; 297, 316
- Moḥammad, *Fātimid*, 71
- Moḥammad, *Filālī Sharīfs*, 61
- Moḥammad, *Ghaznavid*, 289
- Moḥammad b. Sām, *Ghōrid*, 292-4
- Moḥammad Būlak, *Gold. Horde*, 230
- Moḥammad Karīm, *Gujarāt*, 313
- Moḥammad Kūchuk, *Golden Horde*, 232; 229
- Moḥammad, *Hafsid*, 50
- Moḥammad, *Hamdānid*, 111
- Moḥammad -Mahdī, *Ḥammūdids*, 23, 25 [23]
- Moḥammad -Musta'li, *Ḥammūdīd*, 23
- Moḥammad, *Hasanī Sharīfs*, 61
- Moḥammad, *Idrīsīd*, 35
- Moḥammad, *Ikhshidid*, 69
- Moḥammad, *Il-Khān*, 220
- Moḥammad Abū-l-Walid, *Jah-warid*, 25
- Moḥammad Shāh, *Jaunpūr*, 309
- Moḥammad, *Kājār*, 260; 258

Moḥammad 'Alā-al-dawla Abū-Ja'far, *Kakwayhid*, 145
 Moḥammad Amīn, *Kazan*, 234
 Moḥammad, Ulugh, *Kazan*, 234-5
 Moḥammad Mirān, *Khāndēsh*, 313, 315
 Moḥammad 'Alī, *Khedive*, 84, 85; 67
 Moḥammad Raḥīm, *Khiva*, 275,
 Moḥammad 'Alī, *Khokand*, 280
 Moḥammad 'Omar, *Khokand*, 280
 Moḥammad 'Alā-al-dīn, *Khucārizm Shāh*, 177; 176, 179
 Moḥammad Kuṭb-al-dīn, *Khucārizm Shāh*, 177
 Moḥammad Girāy, *Krim*, 236
 Moḥammad, *Kutluḡ Khāns*, 179
 Moḥammad Ghazūi, *Mālwa*, 311
 Moḥammad, *Mamlūks*, 81, 83
 Moḥammad, *Marīids*, 57-8
 Moḥammad, *Mazyadīd*, 119
 Moḥammad Akbar II, *Mogul*, 328
 Moḥammad Nāsir-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328
 Moḥammad, *Muzaffarīd*, 250; 249
 Moḥammad, *Nagrids*, 28
 Moḥammad, 'Oḡaylīd, 116
 Moḥammad, *Omayyad* (Cordova), 21
 Moḥammad, 'Ortukīd, 168
 Moḥammad, 'Othmānīs, 195; 185-7
 Moḥammad, *Rasūlīd*, 99
 Moḥammad, *Salgharīds*, 173 [259
 Moḥammad Khudabanda, *Safavid*,
 Moḥammad Ghiyath-al-dīn, *Seljūk*, 153; 166
 Moḥammad Mughith-al-dīn, *Seljūks of Kirmān*, 163
 Moḥammad, *Seljūk of -'Irāk*, 164
 Moḥammad, *Shaybānīd*, 271; 239
 Moḥammad Kāsim, *Sind*, 283
 Moḥammad, *Tāhīrīd*, 128
 Moḥammad, *Wat'asīds*, 58
 Moḥammad, *Ya'furīds*, 91
 Moḥammad 'Alī, *Zand*, 260
 Moḥammad, *Zangīd*, 163
 Moḥammad, *Ziyādīd*, 91
 Moḥammad, *Zuray'īds*, 97

Moḥammad, Abū-, *Khiva*, 279
 Molon, *Mongol*, 215
 MONGOLS, 199-242; 3, 7, 77, 155, 172, 174, 177, 179, 183, 296;
 see MOGULS
 -Mu'ayyad Shihāb-al-dīn Aḥmad, *Mamlūk*, 83
 -Mu'ayyad Shaykh, *Mamlūk*, 83
 -Mu'ayyad Najāh, *Najāhid*, 92
 -Mu'ayyad, *Omayyad* (Cordova), 21
 -Mu'ayyad Dāwūd, *Rasūlīd*, 99
 -Ma'ayyad -Hosayn, *Rasūlīd*, 99
 -Mu'ayyad Moḥammad, *San'ā*, 103
 -Mu'ayyad, *Sarbadārīd*, 251
 Mu'ayyid-al-dawla Abū-Manṣūr, *Buwayhid*, 142
 -Mu'azzam Sharaf-al-dīn 'Isā, *Ayyūbīd*, 78
 -Mu'azzam Tūrān-Shāh, *Ayyūbīd*, 77, 78, 98
 Mubārak Khōja, *Golden Horde*, 231
 Mubārak Mirān, *Khāndēsh*, 315
 Mubārak Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 Mubārak Shāh, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Mubārak Shāh, *Dahlī*, 299, 300
 Mubārak Shāh, *Jaunpūr*, 309
 Mubārīz-al-dīn, *Muzaffarīd*, 250
 -Mufaddal Moḥammad, *Rasūlīd*, 99
 Muṭlīh, 126
 MUGHAL, see MOGUL
 Mughith-al-dīn, *Seljūk of -'Irāk*, 154; of Kirmān, 153 [306
 Mughith-al-dīn Tughril, *Bengal*,
 Muḥassin, *Hammādīd*, 40
 -Muhtadī, 'Abbāsīd, 12
 -Muḥyi-al-dīn, *Seljūk Kirmān*, 153
 Mu'in-al-dawla Sukmānī, *Ortukīd*, 168; 166
 Mu'in-al-dīn, *Seljūk of -'Irāk*, 154
 -Mu'izz Abū - Tamīm Ma'add, *Fātimīd*, 71
 -Mu'izz 'Izz-al-dīn Aybak, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Mu'izz, *Zayrīd*, 40
 Mu'izz-al-dawla Khusrū Shāh, *Ghaznawīd*, 289

- Mu'izz-al-dawla Abū-'Ulwān Tamāl, *Mu'dāsīd*, 115
 Mu'izz-al-dawla Abu-l-Hosayn Ahmad, *Buwayhid*, 141; 139-40
 Mu'izz-al-dīn Ismā'il, *Ayyubid*, 98
 Mu'izz-al-dīn Bahrām, *Dehlī*, 299
 Mu'izz-al-dīn K. Kubād, *Dehlī*, 299
 Mu'izz-al-dīn b. Sām, *Ghōrid*, 292-4
 Mu'izz-al-dīn, *Kart*, 252
 Mu'izz-al-dīn Jahandār, *Mogul*, 328
 Mu'izz-al-dīn Sinjar, *Seljuk*, 153; 152, 292
 Mu'izz-al-dīn Maḥmūd, *Zangid*, 163
 Mu'izz-al-dīn Sinjēr Shāh, *Zangid*, 163
 Mujaḥid Shāh, *Bahmanid*, 318
 -Mujaḥid, *Denia*, 26
 -Mujaḥid 'Alī, *Rasūlid*, 99
 -Mujaḥid Shams-al-dīn 'Alī, *Tāhirid* (Yaman), 101
 -Mujaḥid-al-dīn 'Alī Zayn-al-'Abidin, *Muzaffarid*, 250
 Mujaḥid-al-dīn Kā'imāz, 165
 Muḥir-al-dīn Abak, *Burid*, 161
 -Muḥallad, *Oḡaylid*, 117
 -Mukarram Ahmad, *Ṣulayhid*, 94
 -Muḥtaḍi, *Abbāsīd*, 12
 -Muḥtadīr, *Abbāsīd*, 12
 -Muḥtadīr, *Hūdīd*, 26
 -Muḥtafi, *Abbāsīd*, 12
 -Muḥtafi, *Abbāsīd*, 12
 -Mumahhid-al-dawla Abū-Manṣūr, *Marwānid*, 118
 -Mundhir, *Omayyad* (Cordova), 21
 -Mundhir, *Tujībīd*, 26
 -Muntaḥik, Banū-, 116, 119
 -Muntaṣir, *Abbāsīd*, 12
 -Muntaṣir, *Marīnid*, 58
 -Muntaṣir Dāwūd, *Rassīd*, 102
 -MURABITS, 41-3; 20, 27, 39, 45
 -Murād, *Ak-Kuyunlū*, 254
 -Murād, *Khāns of Khokand*, 280
 -Murād (Amurath), *Othmānīs*, 195; 185, 187, 192, 256
 -Murād-Bakhsh, *Mogul*, 328
 -Murād Girāy, *Krim*, 237
 -Murād Shāh Ma'sūm, *Mangit*, 277
 -Murid Khōja, *Golden Horde*, 230
 -Murtadā, *Golden Horde*, 232
 -Murtadā, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21
 -Murtadā Moḥammad, *Rassīd*, 102
 -Mūsā, *Ayyūbīd*, 77, 78
 -Mūsā, *Ilak Khān*, 135
 -Mūsā, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220
 -Mūsā, *Marīnid*, 58
 -Mūsā Abū-Hammū, *Ziyānīd*, 51
 -Musharraf-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 141
 -Muslim, *Oḡaylid*, 117
 -Mustadī, *Abbāsīd*, 13
 -Muṣṭafā, *Othmānīs*, 195
 -Musta'in, *Abbāsīd*, 12
 -Musta'in, *Abbāsīd of Egypt*, 83
 -Musta'in, *Hūdīd*, 26
 -Musta'in, *Omayyad* (Cordova), 21
 -Mustakfi, *Abbāsīd*, 12
 -Mustakfi, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21
 -Musta'li, Abū-l-Ḳasim Ahmad, *Fātimīd*, 71
 -Musta'li, *Hammūdīd*, 23
 -Mustanḡid, *Abbāsīd*, 13, 119
 -Mustanṣir, *Abbāsīd*, 13
 -Mustanṣir, *Almohad*, 47
 -Mustanṣir Abū-Tamīm Ma'add, *Fātimīd*, 71
 -Mustanṣir, *Hofṣīd*, 50
 -Mustanṣir, *Hammūdīd*, 23
 -Mustanṣir, *Marīnid*, 58
 -Mustanṣir, *Omayyad* (Cordova), 21
 -Mustarshid, *Abbāsīd*, 12
 -Musta'sim, *Abbāsīd*, 13
 -Mustaḡhir, *Abbāsīd*, 12
 -Mustaḡhir, *Omayyad* (Cordova), 21
 -Muta'ayyad, *Hammūdīd*, 23
 -Mu'tadd, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21
 -Mu'taqīd, *Abbāsīd*, 25
 -Mu'taqīd, *Abbāsīd*, 12, 111
 -Mu'tali, *Hammūdīd*, 21, 23
 -Mutaman, *Hūdīd*, 26
 -Mutamaṣṣik, *Naḡrid*, 28
 -Mu'tamid, *Abbāsīd*, 25

-Mu'tamid, 'Abbāsīd, 12, 129
 Mu'tamid-al-dawla Kirwāsh, 'Oḡay-
 līd, 117
 -Mu'taṣīm, 'Abbāsīd, 12
 -Mu'taṣīm, Almohad, 47
 -Mutawakkil, 'Abbāsīd, 12
 -Mutawakkil, Imāms of San'a, 103
 -Mutawakkil, Marīnīd, 58
 -Mutawakkil, Rassiḍ Imāms, 102
 -Mu'tazz, 'Abbāsīd, 12
 -Muṭī', 'Abbāsīd, 12
 -Muttakī, 'Abbāsīd, 12
 -Muwaffak, 'Abbāsīd, 129
 -Muwaffak, Hammūdīd, 23
 MUWAḤḤIDS, 45-7; 27, 39, 43,
 49
 -Muẓaffar, 'Amīrīd, 26
 -Muẓaffar Ghāzī, Ayyūbīd, 78
 -Muẓaffar 'Omar, Ayyūbīd, 79, 165
 -Muẓaffar Sulaymān, Ayyūbīd, 98
 Muẓaffar Shāh, Bengal, 308
 Muẓaffar Shāh, Gujarāt, 313
 Muẓaffar Aḥmad, Mamlūk, 83
 -Muẓaffar Rukn-al-dīn Baybars
 -Jāshankīr, Mamlūk, 81
 -Muẓaffar Sayf - al - dīn - Ḥājī,
 Mamlūk, 81
 -Muẓaffar Sayf - al - dīn Qūṭuz,
 Mamlūk, 81
 -Muẓaffar Dāwūd, Ortukīd, 168
 -Muẓaffar Yūsuf, Lāsūlīd, 99
 -Muẓaffar, Tojībīd, 26
 Muẓaffar-al-dīn Ūzbeḡ, Atābeg of
 Adharbijān, 171
 Muẓaffar-al-dīn Mūsā, Ayyūbīd, 78
 Muẓaffar-al-dīn Kūkbūrī, Beg-
 tiginīd, 165
 Muẓaffar-al-dīn, Mangit, 277
 MUẒAFFARIDS, 249-50; 179, 219,
 245
 NĀDIR, Afshārīd, 259; 257-8,
 278, 326, 330
 Nādir Moḥammad, Jānīd, 275
 Nafīs, 91
 Najāh, 90, 92

NĀJĀHIDS, 92, 93
 Najm-al-dīn, Ayyūbīd, 77, 78
 Najm-al-dīn Alpī, Ortukīd, 168
 Najm - al - dīn Ghāzī 1 - Sa'id,
 Ortukīd, 168
 Najm-al-dīn Īl-Ghāzī, Ortukīd,
 166-8
 Najm, Abū-I, Badr, Ḥasanwayhid,
 138
 Narbuta, Khokānd, 280
 -Nāṣir, 'Abbāsīd, 13; 7
 -Nāṣir Hasan, Alīd, 127
 -Nāṣir, Almohad, 47
 -Nāṣir Ayyūb, Ayyūbīd, 98
 -Nāṣir Ṣalāh - al - dīn Dāwūd,
 Ayyūbīd, 78
 -Nāṣir Ṣalāh-al-dīn, 77; see Saladin
 -Nāṣir, Hammūdīd, 40
 -Nāṣir, Hammūdīd, 21, 23
 -Nāṣir, Omayyad of Cordova, 21
 -Nāṣir Aḥmad, Mamlūk, 81
 -Nāṣir Faraj, Mamlūk, 83
 -Nāṣir Hasan, Mamlūk, 81
 -Nāṣir Moḥammad, Mamlūka, 81-3
 -Nāṣir, Naḡrīd, 28
 -Nāṣir Aḥmad, Rassiḍ Imām, 102
 -Nāṣir - Daylamī, Rassiḍ, 102
 -Nāṣir Moḥammad, Rassiḍ, 102
 -Nāṣir 'Abd-Allāh, Rasūlīd, 99
 -Nāṣir Aḥmad, Rasūlīd, 99
 -Nāṣir Moḥammad, San'a, 103
 Nāṣir-al-dawla Abū - Moḥammad
 - Ḥasan, Hamdānīd, 111, 112
 Nāṣir-al-dīn, Armēnīa, 170
 Nāṣir-al-dīn, Bengal, 306
 Nāṣir-al-dīn, Kājār, 260
 Nāṣir-al-dīn, Khokānd, 280
 Nāṣir-al-dīn Badr, Ḥasanwayhid,
 138
 Nāṣir-al-dīn Bughrā, Bengal, 306
 Nāṣir-al-dīn Humāyūn, Mogul,
 329
 Nāṣir-al-dīn Khusrū, Dehlī, 299
 Nāṣir-al-dīn, Kubācha, Sind, 294-5
 Nāṣir - al - dīn Maḥmūd, Bengal,
 307-8

- Nāsir-al-dīn Maḥmūd Shāh, *Dehli*, 299
 Nāsir-al-dīn Maḥmūd, *Ortuḳid*, 168
 Nāsir-al-dīn Maḥmūd, *Seljuḳ*, 153
 Nāsir-al-dīn Maḥmūd, *Zangid*, 163
 Nāsir-al-dīn Moḥammad, *Mogul*, 328
 Nāsir-al-dīn Naṣrat, *Bengal*, 308
 Nāsir-al-dīn Ortuḳ-Arslān-Manṣūr *Ortuḳid*, 168
 Nāsir-dīn-Allāh Mas'ūd, *Ghazna-wid*, 289
 Nāsir Khān Maḥmūd, *Gujarāt*, 313
 Nāsir Khān, *Khāndēsh*, 315
 Nāsir Shāh, *Mālwa*, 311
 Naṣr, *Ilak Khāns*, 135
 Naṣr, *Marwānīd*, 118
 Naṣr, *Mirdāsids*, 115
 Naṣr, Abū-l-Juyūsh, *Naṣrid*, 28
 Naṣr, *Sāmānids*, 132
 Naṣr, Abū-, *Marwānīd*, 118
 Naṣr-al-dawla Abū Naṣr Aḥmad, *Marwānīd*, 118
 Naṣr-Allāh, *Mangit*, 277
 Naṣrat Shāh, *Bengal*, 308
 Naṣrat Shāh, *Dehli*, 300
 NAṢRID, 27-29; 46
 Nazār, *Fātimid*, 71
 Nikpāy, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Nikū-siyar, *Mogul*, 328 [118]
 Nizām-al-dawla Naṣr, *Marwānīd*,
 Nizām-al-mulk, 318
 Nizām Shāh, *Bahmanīd*, 318
 NIZAM SHĀHS, 320; 318
 Normans, 36, 40, 41, 71, 75
 Nouredin, 163
 Nūh, *Sāmānids*, 132; 286
 Nūr-al-dawla, *Ilak Khān*, 135
 Nūr-al-dawla Dubays, *Mazyad*, 119
 Nūr-dawlat, *Krim*, 236
 Nūr-al-dīn 'Alī, *Ayyūbid*, 78
 Nūr-al-dīn 'Alī, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Nūr-al-dīn Arslān, *Zangids*, 163
 Nūr-al-dīn Maḥmūd (Nouredin), *Zangid*, 163; 74-5
 Nūr-al-dīn Moḥammad, *Ortuḳid*, 168
 Nūr-al-Ward, *Hazārāspid*, 175
 Nūshirwān, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220
 Nūrūz Aḥmad, *Shaybānīd*, 271
 Nūrūz-Beg, *Golden Horde*, 230
 'OBAYD-ALLĀH, *Fātimid*, 70, 71
 'Obayd-Allāh, *Jānids*, 275
 'Obayd-Allāh, *Shaybānīd*, 271
 Ochiali, *Corsair*, 56
 Ogotāy, *Mongol*, 215; 172, 179, 205, 207-10, 241
 'OKAYLIDS, 116-117; 115
 'Omar Abū-Hafṣ -Murtaḍa, *Almohad*, 47 [165]
 'Omar, Takī-al-dīn, *Ayyūbid*, 79,
 'Omar Shāh, *Dehli*, 299
 'Omar, *Dulafid*, 125
 'Omar Abū-Hafṣ, *Hafṣids*, 50
 'Omar, *Mangit*, 277
 'Omar, *Omayyad*, 9
 'Omar, *Orthodox Caliph*, 3, 9
 'Omar, *Rasūlids*, 99
 'Omar, *Zangid*, 163
 'Omar, Abū-, *Marinid*, 57
 Omayya, 3
 OMAYYAD CALIPHS, 3-6, 9, 10, 11, 67
 OMAYYADS OF CORDOVA, 19-22; 6
 Orda, *Golden Horde*, 231
 Orgāna Khātun, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Orkhān, 'Othmānī, 195
 ORTHODOX CALIPHS, 3, 9
 Ortuḳ, 160, 166
 Ortuḳ-Arslān, *Ortuḳid*, 168
 ORTUḲIDS, 166-169
 'Othmān -Kādī, *Amirid*, 26
 'Othmān, *Atābeg Adharbijān*, 171
 'Othmān -'Aziz, *Ayyūbid*, 77
 'Othmān Abū-'Amr, *Hafṣid*, 50
 'Othmān, *Mamlūk*, 83
 'Othmān, *Marinids*, 57
 'Othmān, *Orthodox Caliph*, 3, 9
 'Othmān, 'Othmānī, 195
 'Othmān, *Ziyānids*, 51

- 'OTHMANLI or Ottoman SULTANS,
 186-197; 4, 49, 55, 56, 67, 84,
 101, 103, 108, 152, 183, 256, 266
 Oways, *Jalayrs*, 246-8
- PAHLAWĀN JAHĀN, *Atābeg of Ad-
 harbijān*, 171
 PERSIA, SHĀHS OF, 258-62
 Persians, 123, 245
 Pir 'Ali, *Kart*, 252
 Pir Moḥammad, *Shaybānids*, 271
 Piri, *Ghaznawid*,
 Prithwī Rāja, 293
 Pülād, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Pülād Khōja, *Golden Horde*, 230
- RABĪ', Abū-l-, *Marinid*, 57
 -Rāḍi, *'Abbāsīd*, 12
 Rafi' al-darajāt, *Mogul*, 328
 Rafi' al-dawla Shāh-Jahān II,
Mogul, 328
 -Raḥīm Khusrū Firūz, *Bucayhid*,
 141
 Raḥīm, *Khoḡand*, 280
 Raḥīm Kulī, *Khiva*, 279
 Rāja Kāns, *Bengal*, 307
 Rajipeka, *Mongol*, 215
 -Rāshid, *'Abbāsīd*, 12
 -Rāshid, *'Abbāsīd*, 12
 -Rāshid, *Almohad*, 47
 -Rāshid, *Filālī Sharif*, 61
 Rāshid-al-dawla Maḥmūd, *Mir-
 dāsīd*, 115
 -Rāshidūn, *Khalīfs*, 3
 RASSID IMĀMS, 102
 RASŪLIDS 99-100; 77
 REYES DE TAIPAS, 23-27; 20
 Rhodes, Knights of, 56, 188
 Ridiya, *Dehlī*, 299; 296
 Riqwān, *Seljūk of Syria*, 154
 Rintshenpal, *Mongol*, 215
 Roger of Sicily, 40
 Rukh, Shāh, *Afshārid*, 259
 Rukh, Shāh, *Khoḡand*, 280
 Rukh, Shāh, *Timūrid*, 267-8
- Rukn-al-dawla Abū-'Alī Ḥasan,
Bucayhid, 142
 Rukn-al-dawla Dāwūd, *Ortūḡid*,
 168
 Rukn-al-dīn K-Kāwus, *Bengal*, 306
 Rukn-al-dīn Bārbak, *Bengal*, 307
 Rukn-al-dīn Firūz, *Dehlī*, 299
 Rukn-al-dīn Ibrāhīm, *Dehlī*, 299
 Rukn-al-dīn, *Ilak Khān*, 135
 Rukn-al-dīn, *Kart*, 252
 Rukn-al-dīn Khōjat-al-Ḥaḡḡ,
Kutlugh Khān, 179
 Rukn-al-dīn Baybars, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Rukn-al-dīn Mōdūd, *Ortūḡid*, 168
 Rukn-al-dīn Bargiyārūḡ, *Seljūk*,
 163
 Rukn-al-dīn Tughril Beg, *Seljūk*,
 153; 145, 151, 172
 Rukn-al-dīn Sultān Shāh, *Seljūk
 of Kirmān*, 153
 Rukn-al-dīn, *Seljūks of -Rūm*, 155
 Rushd (vezir), *Ziyādīd*, 91
 Rustam, *Āk-Kuyunlū*, 254
 Rustam, *Bucayhid*, 142
- SA'ĀDAT GIRĀY, *Krim*, 236, 237
 Sabā, *Sulayhid*, 94
 Sabā, *Zuray'id*, 97
 Sabaktigīn, *Ghaznawid*, 289; 285-6
 Sābik Abū-l-Faḡā-il, *Mirdāsīd*,
 115
 Sa'd-Musta'in, *Nasrid*, 28
 Sa'd, *Salgharid*, 173; 172
 Sa'd-al-dawla Abū-l-Ma'ālī Sharif,
Hamdānid, 112
 SA'DA, IMĀMS OF, 102
 Šadaḡa Sayf-al-dawla, *Mazyadids*,
 119
 Šadik, *Zand*, 260
 Šafā Girāy, *Krim*, 237
 ŠAFAVIDS (SHĀHS OF PERSIA), 259;
 245, 254, 255-7, 268
 -Saffāh, *'Abbāsīd*, 12
 ŠAFFĀRIDS, 129, 130; 7, 284
 Šafi, *Safavid*, 259
 Šafwat-al-dīn, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179

- Saghir, *Nagrid*, 28
 Şahib Girāy, *Krim*, 236, 237
 -Sa'id, *Almohad*, 47
 Sa'id, *Hamdānid*, 111, 112
 Sa'id, *Khedive*, 85
 -Sa'id Baraka Khān, *Mamlūk*, 81
 -Sa'id, *Marinid*, 57, 58
 Sa'id - Abūwal, *Najāhid*, 92
 -Sa'id Ghāzi, *Ortukid*, 168
 Sa'id Sultān, *Shaybānid*, 272
 -Sa'id Shaykh Wat'as, *Wat'asid*, 58
 Sa'id-al-dawla, *Hamdānid*, 112
 Sa'id, Abū-, *Hazraspid*, 175
 Sa'id, Abū-, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220; 218, 249, 251
 Sa'id, Abū-, *Marinid*, 68
 Sa'id, Abū-, *Shaybānid*, 271
 Sa'id, Abū-, *Timūrid*, 268
 Saladin, 77; 46, 67, 71, 74-5, 165
 Şalāh-al-dīn Dāwūd, *Ayyūbid*, 78
 Şalāh-al-dīn Yūsuf - Nāṣir, *Ayyūbid*, 77; see Saladin
 Şalāh-al-dīn Yūsuf, *Ayyūbid*, 78
 Sulāmat Girāy, *Krim*, 236-7
 Salāmish, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Salghar, 160, 172
 SALGHARIDS, 172, 173
 -Şālih Najm - al - dīn Ayyūb, *Ayyūbid*, 77, 78, 80
 -Şālih Ismā'il, *Ayyūbid*, 78
 -Şālih Hajji, *Mamlūk*, 81
 -Şālih Ismā'il, *Mamlūk*, 81
 -Şālih Moḥammad, *Mamlūk*, 83
 -Şālih Şālih, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Şālih, *Mirdasid*, 115
 Şālih, *Ortukid*, 168
 -Şālih, Ismā'il, *Zangid*, 163
 Sālim, Abū-, *Marinid*, 57
 Samā-al-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan, *Buwayhid*, 142
 SĀMĀNIDS, 131-133; 7, 127, 129
 -Samīn, *Filālī Sharif*, 61
 Samṣām-al-dawla Abū - Kālīnjār - Marzubān, *Bucayhid*, 141
 Samṣām-al-dawla, *Mirdasid*, 116
 ŞAN'Ā, IMĀMS OF, 103
 Sanad-al-dawla, *Mazyadid*, 119
 Sanhāja Berbers, 39
 Saphadin, 76-78
 SAKRADĀRID, 250; 219, 245
 Sartak, *Golden Horde*, 230
 SARŪ-KHĀN AMĪRS, 184-5
 Sasaktu, *Mongol*, 216
 Sāsūnids, 4, 5
 Sāsibūka, *Golden Horde*, 231
 Sāti-Beg, *Il-Khān*, 220; 219
 Sattān, *Bucayhid*, 141
 Sayf-al-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī, *Hamdānid*, 111, 112
 Sayf-al-dawla, *Hūdīd*, 26
 Sayf-al-dīn, *Ayyūbid*, 77, 78
 Sayf-al-dīn Begtimur, *Armen.*, 170
 Sayf-al-dīn Aybak, *Bengal*, 306
 Sayf-al-dīn Firūz, *Bengal*, 306
 Sayf-al-dīn Hamza, *Bengal*, 308
 Sayf-al-dīn Şūrī, *Ḡhōrid*, 291
 Sayf-al-dīn Ghāzī, *Zangid*, 163
 Sayf-al-Islām Tuḡtigin, *Ayyūbid*, 79, 98
 Sayf-al-Islām Tuḡtigin, *Būrid*, 161; 160
 Sayyid Aḥmad, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Sayyid Moḥammad, *Khiva*, 279
 Sayyid Sultān, *Khokand*, 280
 SAYYIDS, 300, 303
 Selim, *Othmānīs*, 195; 3, 84, 188, 256
 Selim Girāy, *Krim*, 236, 237
 Seljūk Shāh, *Salgharid*, 173
 SĪRŪQS, 149-155; 134, 140, 145, 156, 158-62, 166, 167, 170-2, 176, 183-6, 287-8, 292
 Setzen, *Mongol*, 216
 Shu'bān, *Mamlūks*, 81
 Shādī Beg, *Golden Horde*, 232
 -Shadid, *Hafsid*, 50
 Shāhānshāh, *Zangid*, 163
 Shāh-'Alam Bahādūr Shāh, *Mogul*, 328
 Shāh-'Alam, Jalāl-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328

- Shāh-Jahān, *Kutluğ Khān*, 179
 Shāh-Jahān, *Moguls*, 328
 Shāh Rukh, *Afghān*, 259
 Shāh Rukh, *Khokand*, 280
 Shāh Rukh, *Timūrid*, 268
 Shāh Shujā', *Afghān*, 334
 Shāh Shujā', *Muzaffarid*, 250
 Shāhin Girāy, *Krim*, 237
 SHĀHS OF ARMENIA, 170
 SHĀHS OF PERSIA, 258-262
 Shajar-al-durr, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Shams-al-dawla Abū-Tāhir, *Buwayhid*, 142
 Shams-al-dīn Ildigiz, *Atābeg of Adharbījān*, 171
 Shams-al-dīn, *Bahmanid*, 318
 Shams-al-dīn, *Bengal*, 307
 Shams-al-dīn Ahmad, *Bengal*, 307
 Shams-al-dīn Firūz, *Bengal*, 306
 Shams-al-dīn Ilyās, *Bengal*, 307
 Shams-al-dīn Moḥammad Sūr Ghāzi Shāh, *Bengal*, 308
 Shams-al-dīn Muḥaffar, *Bengal*, 308
 Shams-al-dīn Yūsuf, *Bengal*, 307
 Shams-al-dīn Altamish, *Dehlī*, 299
 Shams-al-dīn, *Kart*, 282
 Shams-al-dīn Salih, *Ortukid*, 168
 Shams-al-dīn, *Rassid Indm*, 102
 Shams-al-dīn 'Alī, *Sarbadārīd*, 251
 Shams-al-ma'ālī, *Siyārid*, 137
 Shams-al-mulk, *Ilak Khān*, 135
 Shams-al-mulūk Ismā'il, *Bārid*, 161
 Sharaf-al-dawla Shīr Zayd, *Buwayhid*, 141
 Sharaf-al-dawla, *Ilak Khān*, 135
 Sharaf-al-dawla Abū-l-Makārim Muḥim, *Okayid*, 117
 Sharaf-al-dīn Isā, *Ayyubid*, 78
 Sharaf-al-dīn, *Ilak Khān*, 135
 Sharif Abū-l-Ma'ālī, *Hamdānid*, 112
 Sharif, *Marinid*, 58
 SHARIFS OF MOROCCO, 60-63
 SHARḤI KINGS OF JAUNPŪR, 309
 Shaybān, *Mongol*, 222-3, 225, 230, 232, 238-240
 Shaybān, *Tātunid*, 68
 SHAYBĀNIDS, 269-273; 239, 268, 278, 322
 Shaykh, *Hasani Sharif*, 61
 Shaykh, *Mamlūk*, 83
 SHEEP, TURKOMĀNS OF THE BLACK AND WHITE, 252-4
 Shihāb-al-dawla Abū-Kāmil Naṣr, *Mirdāsīd*, 115
 Shihāb-al-dawla Mōdūd, *Ghasnawid*, 289
 Shihāb-al-dawla, *Ilak Khān*, 135
 Shihāb-al-dīn Bāyazīd, *Bengal*, 307
 Shihāb-al-dīn Bughrā, *Bengal*, 306
 Shihāb-al-dīn Mahmūd, *Bārid*, 161
 Shihāb-al-dīn 'Omar, *Dehlī*, 299
 Shihāb-al-dīn Moḥammad, *Ghōrid*, 292-4
 Shī'ites, 37, 70, 102, 112, 124, 140, 149, 256
 Shīr 'Alī, *Afghān*, 333-4
 Shīr 'Alī, *Khān of Khokand*, 280
 Shīr Ghāzi, *Khān of Khiva*, 279
 Shīr Khān, *Bengal*, 306
 Shīr Shāh, *Dehlī*, 300; 294, 305, 322
 Shīrzād, *Ghasnawid*, 289
 Shīr Zayd, *Buwayhid*, 141
 Shirān, *Bengal*, 306
 Shujā'-al-mulk, *Afghān*, 334; 331-3
 Shujā', *Mogul*, 328
 Sikandar Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 Sikandar Shāh, *Dehlī*, 300
 Sikandar Shāh, *Gujarāt*, 313
 Sinjar, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Sinjar Mu'izz-al-dīn, *Seljuḥ*, 153; 152, 292
 Sinjar Shāh, *Zangid*, 163
 SLAVE KINGS OF DEHLI, 299, 301; 294-6
 Subhān Kulī, *Jānid*, 275
 Sufyān, *Khira*, 278
 Sukmān-Ḳutḡbī, *Armenia*, 170

- Sukmān Nāsir-al dīn, *Armenia*, 170
 Sukmān, *Ortukids*, 168 ; 166
 SULAYYIDS, 94
 Sulaymān, *Ayyūbids*, 98
 Sulaymān Karārānī, *Bengal*, 308
 Sulaymān, *Filālī Sharīf*, 61
 Sulaymān -Musta'in. *Hūdīd*, 26
 Sulaymān, *Īl-Khān of Persia*, 220
 Sulaymān, *Khojand*, 280
 Sulaymān Abū-l-Rabī', *Marīnid*, 57
 Sulaymān, *Omayyad*, 9
 Sulaymān -Musta'in, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21
 Sulaymān, *Othmānīs*, 195 ; 188-9
 Sulaymān, *Safavid*, 259
 Sulaymān, *Seljūks of -Irāk*, 154
 Sulaymān, *Seljūks of -Rūm*, 155
 Sultān, 140, 286 n
 Sultān-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 141
 Sultān -al-dawla Arslān, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 Sultān Hājī, *Khiva*, 278
 Sultān Sa'īd, *Shaybānid*, 272
 Sultān Shāh Rukn-al-dīn, *Seljūk of Kirmān*, 163
 Sultān Shāh, *Seljūk of Syria*, 154
 Sunkur, *Salgharid*, 173 ; 172
 Sūrī, Sayf-al-dīn, *Ghōrid*, 291
 Su'ūd, Abū-, *Zurayids*, 97
 Suyūrghātmish, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179
 Suyūrghātmish, *Mongol*, 268 ; 210, 265
 TAFKAJ Khān, *Īlak Khān*, 135
 Taghlaq Shāh, *Dehlī*, 300
 TAGHLAKIDS, 300, 302
 Taghlib, Abū-, *Hamdānid*, 112
 Tagir, *Khiva*, 279
 Tāhīr, Abū-, *Hazāraspid*, 175
 Tāhīr, *Saffarid*, 130
 Tāhīr Dhū-l-Yamīnayn, *Tāhīrid*, 128 ; 7
 TĀHIRIDS, 128, 129
 TĀHIRIDS of the Yaman, 101
 Tāhīr, Abū-, *Buwayhid*, 142
 Tāhīr, Abū-, *Hamdānid*, 112
 Tahmāsp, *Saffavids*, 259
 -Tā-i', *Abbāsīd*, 12
 Taifas, Reyes de, 23-7
 Taisong, *Mongol*, 215
 Tāj-al-dawla Khusrū Malik, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 Tāj-al-mulūk Būrī, *Būrid*, 161
 Takī-al-dīn 'Omar, *Ayyūbid*, 79, 165
 TAKKA AMĪRS, 184-5
 Takla, *Hazāraspid*, 175
 Takla, *Salgharid*, 173
 Tālib, Abū-, *Buwayhid*, 142
 Talha, *Tāhīrid*, 128
 Tālikū, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Tamāl, *Mirdāsīd*, 115
 Tamar Khān-Kirān, *Bengal*, 306
 Tamerlane, *see* Timūr
 Tamīm, *Zayrid*, 25
 Tamīm, *Zayrid*, 40
 Tamīm, Abū-, *Fātimids*, 71
 Tandū, *Jalayr*, 247
 Tarjumān-al-dīn, *Rassīd*, 102
 Tāshfīn, *Almoravid*, 43
 Tāshfīn, Abū-'Omar, *Marīnid*, 57
 Tāshfīn, Abū-, *Ziyānids*, 51
 Tatar Khān, *Bengal*,
 Tatār, *Mamlūk*, 83
 Tawfīq, *Khedive*, 85
 Thābit, Abū-, *Marīnid*, 57
 Thābit, Abū-, *Ziyānids*, 51
 -Thā'ir, *Alid*, 127
 Temujin (Chingiz), 202
 Teval, *Mongol*, 222, 240
 Timūr (Tamerlane), 265-8 ; 185, 227-8, 242, 247-53, 297, 322
 Timurbughā, *Mamlūk*, 83
 Timūr, *Golden Horde*, 232
 TIMURIDS, 265-268 ; 175, 255, 330
 Timūr Khōja, *Golden Horde*, 230
 Timūr Kutlugh, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Timūr Malik, *Golden Horde*, 231
 Timūr Shāh, *Afghān*, 334
 Timurtāsh, *Ortukid*, 168
 Tīnī-Beg, *Golden Horde*, 230

Tirmasharin, *Chagatây*, 242
 TIUMEN, CZARS OF, 239
 TOJIBIDS, 26
 Töktakya, *Golden Horde*, 231
 Töktämish Ghiyâth-al-din, *Golden Horde*, 231; 225, 227-9, 265
 Töktü, *Golden Horde*, 230
 Torghüd (Dragut), *Corsair*, 56
 Töda-Mangü, *Golden Horde*, 230
 Tufghâj 'Imâd-al-dawla Ibrâhim, *Ilak Khân*, 135
 Tughâ-Timür, *Il-Khân*, 220, 265
 Tughân Khân, *Bengal*, 306
 Tughân Sharaf-al-din, *Ilak*, 135
 Tughân-Timür, *Mongol*, 215; 213
 Tughril, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 Tughril Khân, *Ilak Khân*, 135
 Tughj, *Ikhshidid*, 69
 Tughril, *Bengal*, 306
 Tughril, *Seljuks of -Irâk*, 154
 Tughril Beg, Rukn-al-din, *Seljuks*, 153; 145, 151, 172, 287
 Tughril Shâh Muhyi-al-din, *Seljuks of Kirmân*, 153
 Tughtigin, *Ayyûbid*, 79, 98
 Tughtigin Sayf-al-Islâm Zahir-al-din, *Bûrid*, 161
 Tûka-Timür, *Chagatây*, 242
 Tûka-Timür, *Mongol*, 222-3, 225, 230, 232, 233 ff.
 Tukush, *Khvârizm Shâh*, 177
 Tûla-Bughâ, *Golden Horde*, 230
 Tûlûn-Beg, *Golden Horde*, 230
 TÛLÛNIDS, 68; 6
 Tulûy, *Mongol*, 205, 211-217
 Tûmân-Bey, *Mamluk*, 83
 Turakina, *Mongol*, 215
 Tûrân-Shâh, *Ayyûbid*, 74, 77, 78, 98
 Tûrân Shâh, *Seljuks of Kirmân*, 153
 TURKISTÂN, KHÂNS OF, 134-5
 Turkomâns, 245-7, 253-4
 Turks, 7, 49, 150 ff., 159
 Tutush, *Seljuks of Syria*, 154; 160, 162, 166

'UDDAT-al-dawla Abû-Taghlib
 -Ghazanfir, *Hamdânid*, 112
 Ukektu, *Mongol*, 216
 'Ulâ, Abû-l-, *Almohad*, 47
 Uljai-Timür, *Mongol*, 215
 'Uljai-tû, *Mongol*, 215
 Uljai-tû, *Il-Khân of Persia*, 220
 Ulugh Beg, *Timûrid*, 268
 Ulugh Moḥammad, *Kazan*, 334-5
 Ulâj 'Alî (Ochiali), *Corsair*, 56
 'Ungür Abû-l-Kâsim, *Ikhshidid*, 69
 Urang Timür, *Krim*, 233
 Urûj Barbarossa, 55
 'Ûrâs, *Golden Horde*, 231; 227, 229
 Ussukhal, *Mongol*, 215
 'Ûzbek, Muḥaffar-al-din, *Atâbeg of Adharbijân*, 171
 'Ûzbek, *Golden Horde*, 230; 238
 Uzun Ḥasan, *Ak-Kuyunî*, 253-5
 Wajîh-al-din Mas'ûd, *Sarba-dârid*, 251
 Walad, Shâh, *Jalayr*, 247-8
 Walî-Allâh Shâh, *Bahmanid*, 318
 Wâlî Moḥammad, *Jânîd*, 275
 Walid, *Hasanî Sharif*, 61
 -Walid, *Omayyad*, 9
 Washmagir Zahir-al-dawla, *Zi-yârid*, 137
 Wat'asids, 58
 -Wâthik, *Abbâsid*, 12
 -Wâthik Abû-l-'Ulâ, *Almohad*, 47
 -Wâthik, *Hammûdid*, 25
 -Wâthik, *Marînid*, 58
 WHITE HORDE, 231; 226
 YADIGHÂR, *Khiva*, 279
 YA'FURIDS, 90, 91
 Yaghi (or Ya'kûb) Arslân, *Dânish-mandid*, 156
 Yagmorasan, *Ziyânîd*, 51
 Yahyâ -Mu'tasim, *Almohad*, 47
 Yahyâ -Kâdir, *Dhû-l-Nûnid*, 25, 26
 Yahyâ -Ma'mûn, *Dhû-l-Nûnid*, 25, 26

- Yahyā Abū-Zakaryā, *Hafsid*, 60
 Yahyā, *Hammādid*, 40
 Yahya - Mu'tali, *Hammādid*, 21, 23
 Yahyā, *Idrisid*, 35
 Yahyā Shāh, *Muḥaffarid*, 248
 Yahyā, *Rasūlid*, 99
 Yahyā, *Sarbadārid*, 261
 Yahyā - Muḥaffar, *Tajīdid*, 26
 Yahyā, *Zayrid*, 40
 Yahyā, Abū-, *Hafsid*, 60
 Yahyā, Abū-, *Marinid*, 67
 Ya'kūb, *Afghān*, 334
 Ya'kūb, *Al-Kayūmī*, 254
 Ya'kūb Abū - Yūsuf - Manṣūr, *Almohad*, 47
 Ya'kūb, Abū Yūsuf, *Marinid*, 67
 Ya'kūb, *Marinid*, 68
 Ya'kūb b. - Layth, *Ṣaffarid*, 128-130; 284
 Ya'kūb, Abū-, *Almohad*, 47
 Yamin-al-dawla, see Mahmūd and Bahrām, *Ghaznavid* [274]
 Yār Moḥammad, *Shaybānid*, 272;
 - Yazid, *Filālī Sharif*, 61
 Yazid, *Omāyyad*, 9
 Yazid b. Hātim, 34, 36
 Yildiz, 294-5
 Yissugāy, 202
 Yisūnbughā, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Yisū Mangū, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Yisūn-Timūr, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Yisūn-Timūr, *Mongol*, 215
 YUKN, 213
 Yulūk-Arlān, *Ortūkid*, 168
 Yūsuf, *Adil Shāh*, 317, 321
 Yūsuf Abū-Ya'kūb, *Almohad*, 47
 Yūsuf b. Tāshfin, *Almoravid*, 42, 43
 Yūsuf, *Ayyūbid*, 77, 78, 98
 Yūsuf Zayn-al-dīn, *Bektiginid*, 165
 Yūsuf Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 Yūsuf Shāh, *Hazraspid*, 175
 Yūsuf - Mu'taman, *Hūdīd*, 26
 Yūsuf, *Ilak Khān*, 135
 Yūsuf, *Mamlūk*, 83
 Yūsuf Abū-Ya'kūb, *Marinid*, 67
 Yūsuf - Nāṣir, *Nayrid*, 28
 - Yūsuf-Dā'i, *Rasūlid*, 102, 103
 Yūsuf, *Rasūlid*, 99
 Yūsuf Bulukkin, *Zayrid*, 40
 Yūsuf, Abū-, *Almohad*, 47
 Yūsuf, Abū, *Marinid*, 67
 Yūzbak, *Bengal*, 306
 ZAFAR KHĀN, *Bahmanid*, 318
 Zafar Khān, *Gujarāt*, 313
 - Zāfir, *Dhul-Nāṣid*, 25
 - Zāfir Abū-l-Manṣūr Ismā'il, *Fāṭimid*, 71
 - Zāfir Ṣalāh-al-dīn 'Amir, *Ṭahirid* (Yaman), 101
 Zaghal, *Nayrid*, 28
 - Zāhir, *Abbāsid*, 13
 - Zāhir Ghiyāth-al-dīn Ghāzi, *Ayyūbid*, 78
 - Zāhir Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī, *Fāṭimid*, 71
 Zāhir, *Hasanwayhid*, 138
 - Zāhir Barkūk, *Mamlūk*, 81, 83
 - Zāhir Baybars - Bundukdārī, *Mamlūk*, 81
 - Zāhir Bilbey, *Mamlūk*, 83
 - Zāhir Jaḥmak, *Mamlūk*, 83
 - Zāhir Kānsūh, *Mamlūk*, 83
 - Zāhir Khūshkadam, *Mamlūk*, 83
 - Zāhir Tatār, *Mamlūk*, 83
 - Zāhir Timurbughā, *Mamlūk*, 83
 - Zāhir, *Ortūkid*, 168
 - Zāhir, Yahyā, *Rasūlid*, 99
 Zāhir-al-dawla, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 Zāhir-al-dawla, *Ziyārid*, 137
 Zāhir-al-dīn Ibrahim, *Armenia*, 170
 Zāhir-al-dīn, *Kākwayhid*, 145
 Zāhir-al-dīn see Bābar
 Zāhir-al-dīn, *Sarbadārid*, 251
 - Zāim Abū-Thābit, *Ziyārid*, 61
 Za'im - al - dawla Abū - Kāmil Baraka, *Okaylid*, 117
 Zakaryā Abū-Yahyā, *Hafsid*, 60
 Zakaryā, Abū-, *Hafsid*, 60
 Zaman Shāh, *Afghān*, 334; 331

- | | |
|--|--|
| ZANDS (SHĀHS OF PERSIA), 260; 258 | Zayn-al-dīn Yūsuf, <i>Begtinid</i> , 165 |
| Zangī, <i>Salgharid</i> , 173 | ZAYRIDS (Granada), 25 |
| Zangī, <i>Zangids</i> , 163 | ZAYRIDS (Tunis), 39, 40, 41, 43 |
| ZANGIDS, Atābegs, 162-4; 74-5, | Ziyād, <i>Ziyādid</i> , 91 |
| 160, 165 | Ziyādat-Allāh, <i>Aghlabids</i> , 37 |
| Zāwī, <i>Zayrid</i> , 25 | ZIYĀDIDS, 89, 90, 91 |
| Zaydān, <i>Hasanī Sharīf</i> , | Ziyān, Abū-, <i>Marinid</i> , 57 |
| Zaydites, 102, 127 | Ziyān, Abū-, <i>Ziyānids</i> , 51 |
| Zayn-al-'Ābidīn, <i>Muẓaffarid</i> , 250 | ZIYĀNIDS, 51; 46, 57 |
| Zayn-al-dīn 'Alī Kūchuk, <i>Beg-</i> | ZIYĀRIDS, 136, 137 |
| <i>iginid</i> , 165 | ZURAY'IDS, 97 |

THE END



BY STANLEY LANE-POOLE

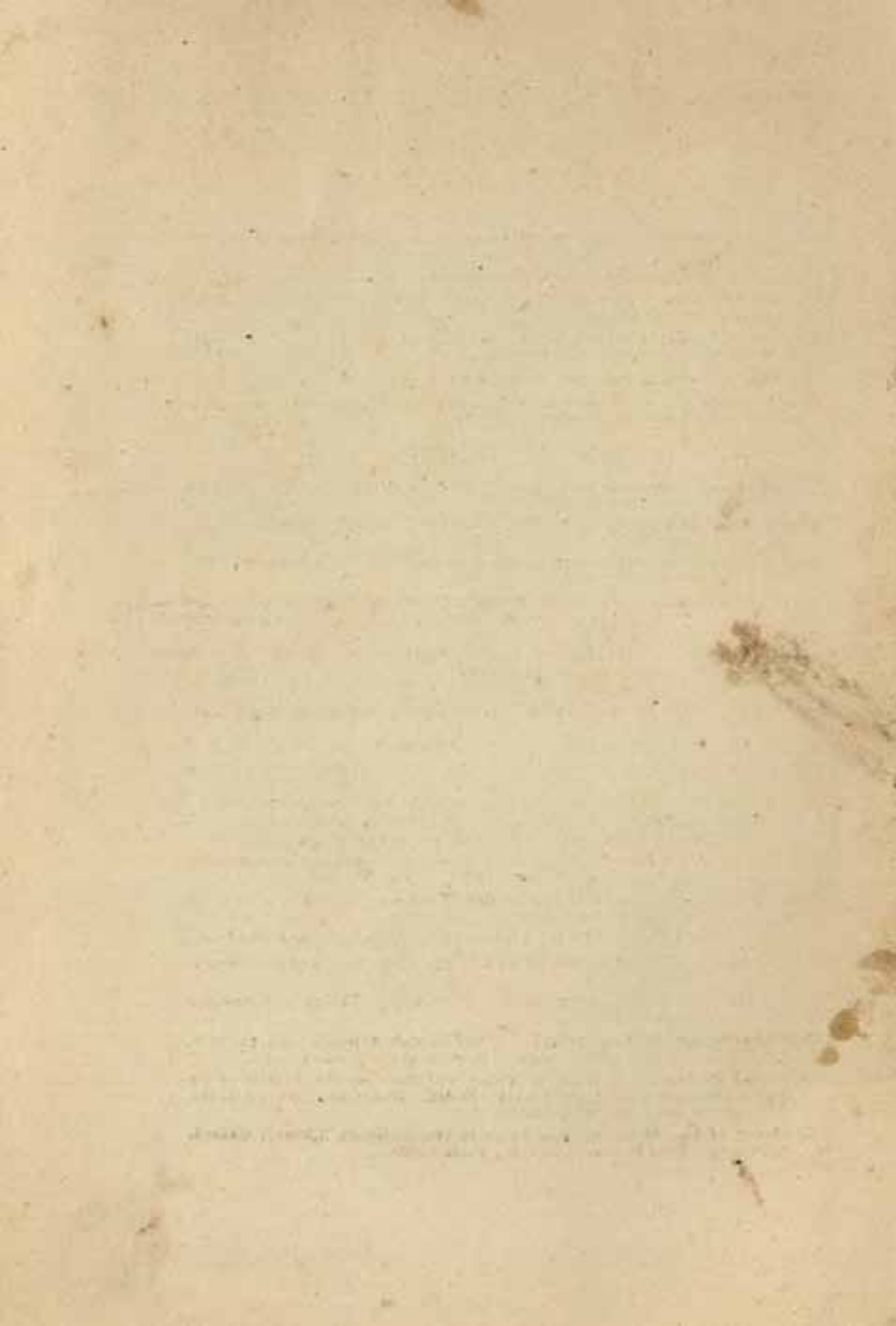
- The Life of Edward William Lane.** 8vo, pp. 138. Williams and Norgate. 1877.
- The People of Turkey.** By a Consul's Daughter. Edited. Two vols. 8vo, pp. xxii, 281; x, 352. Murray. 1878.
- Lane's Selections from the Kuran.** Edited with Introduction. 8vo. Frontispiece. pp. cxii, 173, 2. Trübner's Oriental Series. 1879.
- Egypt.** Illustrated. Fcp. 8vo, pp. xii, 200. Sampson Low. 1881.
- The Speeches and Table-Talk of the Prophet Mohammad.** 18mo, pp. lxiii, 196. Macmillan's Golden Treasury Series. 1882; reissue, 1893.
- Le Koran, sa Poésie et ses Lois.** 24mo, pp. vi, 112. Leroux. 1882.
- Studies in a Mosque.** 1883. *Second Edition.* 8vo, pp. viii, 326. Remington. 1893.
- Arabian Society in the Middle Ages.** Edited. 8vo, pp. xvi, 283. Chatto. 1883.
- Pictureque Palestine, Sinai, and Egypt.** Vol. IV.—Egypt. 4to, pp. 121-234. Illustrated. Virtue. 1883.
- Social Life in Egypt: a Description of the Country and its People.** (Supplement to *Pictureque Palestine*.) 4to. Illustrated. pp. vi, 138. Virtue. 1883.
- Selections from the Prose Writings of Jonathan Swift.** Portrait. Preface, and Notes. 8vo, pp. xxx, 284. Paul and Trench's Parchment Library. 1884.
- Notes for a Bibliography of Swift.** 8vo, pp. 36. Elliot Stock. 1884.
- Letters and Journals of Jonathan Swift.** With Commentary and Notes. 8vo, pp. xv, 292. Paul and Trench's Parchment Library. 1885.
- The Life of General F. R. Chesney, R.A.** By his Wife and Daughter. Edited, with Preface. Portrait. 8vo, pp. xxiii, 279. Allen. 1885; reissue, 1893.
- The Art of the Saracens in Egypt.** Illustrated. 8vo, pp. xviii, 264. Published for the Committee of Council on Education by Chapman and Hall. 1886.
- The Moors in Spain.** Illustrated. 8vo, pp. xi, 285. Unwin. 1887.
- Turkey.** Illustrated. 8vo, pp. xiz, 373. Unwin. 1888.
- The Life of the Rt. Hon. Stratford Canning, Viscount Stratford de Redcliffe, K.G.** From his Memoirs and Papers. Three Portraits. Library Edition. 2 vols. 8vo, pp. xxix, 519; xviii, 475. Longmans. 1888.
- Popular Edition.* pp. xi, 377. Longmans. 1890.
- Thirty Years of Colonial Government.** From Papers of the Rt. Hon. Sir G. F. Bowen, G.C.M.G. Portrait. 2 vols. pp. viii, 450; viii, 467. Longmans. 1889.
- The Barbary Corsairs.** Illustrated. 8vo, pp. xviii, 316. Unwin. 1890.
- Sir Richard Church, C.B., G.C.H., Commander-in-Chief of the Greeks in the War of Independence.** With two Plans. 8vo, pp. iv, 73. Longmans. 1890.
- Stories from the Arabian Nights.** 16mo. 3 vols. pp. vii, 318, 317, 346. Six Illustrations. Putnam. 1891.
- The History of the Moghul Emperors illustrated by their Coins.** pp. cixxvii. Constable. 1892.

BY STANLEY LANE-POOLE

- Cairo: Sketches of its History, Monuments, and Social Life. Numerous Illustrations. 8vo, pp. xiv, 320. Virtue, 1892.
- Aurangzeb. Rulers of India Series. 8vo, pp. 212. Clarendon Press. 1893.
- The Mohammadan Dynasties: Chronological and Genealogical Tables. 8vo, pp. xxviii, 361. Constable. 1893.
- The Life of Sir Harry Parkes, K.C.B., late H.M. Minister in Japan and China. 2 vols. 8vo. Macmillan. *In the Press*.
- The Life of Saladin. Putnam. *In preparation*.
- Lane's Arabic-English Lexicon. Vols. 6-8. Imp. 4to, pp. xxxix, 2221-3064. Edited. Williams and Norgate. 1877-1893.

NUMISMATIC WORKS

- Catalogue of the Guthrie Collection of Oriental Coins. pp. viii, 38. Five Autotype Plates. Austin. 1874.
- International Numismata Orientalia. Part II.—Coins of the Turkumans. 4to, pp. xii, 44. Six Plates. Trübner. 1875.
- Essays in Oriental Numismatics. First, Second, and Third Series. Plates. 8vo. 3 vols. 1874, 1877, 1892.
- Catalogue of Oriental Coins in the British Museum. Printed by order of the Trustees. 8vo. 10 vols. (Ouvrage couronné par l'Institut de France, 1881.)
- Vol. I. THE KHALIFS. pp. xx, 263. Eight Autotype Plates. 1875.
- II. MOHAMMADAN DYNASTIES. pp. xii, 279. Eight Autotype Plates. 1876.
- III. THE TURKUMANS. pp. xxvi, 305. Twelve Autotype Plates. 1877.
- IV. EGYPT. pp. xxx, 279. Eight Autotype Plates. 1879.
- V. THE MOORS and ARABIA. pp. lii, 173. Seven Autotype Plates. 1880.
- VI. THE MONGOLS. pp. lxxv, 300. Nine Autotype Plates. 1881.
- VII. BUKHARA. pp. xlviii, 131. Five Autotype Plates. 1882.
- VIII. THE TURKS. pp. li, 431. Twelve Autotype Plates. 1883.
- IX., X. ADDITIONS: 1875-1889. 2 vols. pp. 420, 460. Twenty Autotype Plates, and General Index. 1889, 1890.
- Catalogue of Indian Coins in the British Museum. Printed by order of the Trustees. 8vo. 3 vols.
- Vol. I. SULTANS of DEHLI. pp. xiv, 199. Nine Autotype Plates. 1884.
- II. MOHAMMADAN STATES. pp. lxxx, 239. Twelve Autotype Plates. 1885.
- III. MOGHUL EMPERORS. pp. cliii, 401. Thirty-three Autotype Plates. 1892.
- Catalogue of Arabic Glass Weights in the British Museum. 8vo, pp. xxxv, 127. Nine Autotype Plates. Printed by order of the Trustees. 1891.
- Coins and Medals: their Place in History and Art. By the Authors of the British Museum Official Catalogues. Edited. Illustrated. 8vo, pp. x, 286. Elliot Stock, 1885. *Second Edition*. 1892.
- Catalogue of the Mohammadan Coins in the Bodleian Library, Oxford. pp. xvi, 55. Four Plates. Clarendon Press. 1888.



ci

Col
N 29/13/76

N.º

